



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Genesis

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	12
Genesis	12
Introduction to Genesis	13
Genesis 1	16
Genesis 2	50
Genesis 3	76
Genesis 4	101
Genesis 5	128
Genesis 6	161
Genesis 7	184
Genesis 8	209
Genesis 9	232
Genesis 10	263
Genesis 11	296
Genesis 12	329
Genesis 13	350
Genesis 14	369
Genesis 15	394
Genesis 16	416
Genesis 17	433
Genesis 18	461
Genesis 19	495
Genesis 20	535
Genesis 21	554
Genesis 22	589
Genesis 23	614
Genesis 24	635
Genesis 25	705
Genesis 26	740
Genesis 27	776
Genesis 28	824
Genesis 29	847
Genesis 30	883
Genesis 31	927
Genesis 32	983
Genesis 33	1016
Genesis 34	1037
Genesis 35	1069
Genesis 36	1099
Genesis 37	1143
Genesis 38	1181
Genesis 39	1212
Genesis 40	1237

Genesis 41	1261
Genesis 42	1319
Genesis 43	1358
Genesis 44	1393
Genesis 45	1428
Genesis 46	1457
Genesis 47	1492
Genesis 48	1525
Genesis 49	1548
Genesis 50	1583
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	1612
Abstract Nouns	1613
Active or Passive	1615
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1618
Background Information	1621
Biblical Distance	1624
Biblical Volume	1627
Biblical Weight	1631
Connecting Words and Phrases	1633
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1637
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	1639
Double Negatives	1642
Doublet	1644
Ellipsis	1646
Euphemism	1648
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1650
First, Second or Third Person	1652
Forms of You	1654
Fractions	1655
Go and Come	1658
Hebrew Months	1660
Hendiadys	1663
How to Translate Names	1666
Hyperbole	1670
Hypothetical Situations	1674
Idiom	1677
Imperatives - Other Uses	1679
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	1682
Introduction of a New Event	1684
Introduction of New and Old Participants	1687
Irony	1690
Litotes	1693
Merism	1695
Metaphor	1697
Metonymy	1703
Nominal Adjectives	1705

Numbers	1707
Order of Events	1710
Ordinal Numbers	1712
Parallelism	1714
Personification	1717
Poetry	1719
Predictive Past	1722
Pronouns	1724
Proverbs	1726
Quotes within Quotes	1728
Reflexive Pronouns	1731
Rhetorical Question	1734
Sentence Structure	1737
Simile	1739
Symbolic Action	1742
Symbolic Language	1744
Synecdoche	1746
Textual Variants	1748
Translate Unknowns	1750
When Masculine Words Include Women	1753
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1755
Abraham, Abram	1756
adversary, enemy	1757
afflict, affliction, distress	1758
Ai	1759
alien, foreign, foreigner	1760
Almighty	1761
altar	1762
Amorite	1763
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1764
angel, archangel	1766
appoint, appointed	1768
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	1769
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1770
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1771
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1772
beast	1773
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	1774
Benjamin, Benjamite	1776
Bethel	1777
bind, bond, bound	1778
birthright	1779
bless, blessed, blessing	1780
blood	1782
blot out, wipe out	1783
bow and arrow, a bow	1784

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	1785
bread	1786
bridegroom	1787
bronze	1788
brother	1789
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1791
burnt offering, offering by fire	1792
bury, buried, burial	1793
call, call out	1794
camel	1796
Canaan, Canaanite	1797
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1798
Chaldea, Chaldean	1799
chariot, charioteers	1800
chief	1801
children, child, offspring	1802
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1804
clan	1806
clean, wash	1807
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	1809
command, commandment	1810
concubine	1811
confirm, confirmation, legal	1812
consume, devour	1813
covenant	1814
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1816
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1817
cry, cry out, outcry	1818
cupbearer	1819
curse, cursed, cursing	1820
cut off	1821
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	1822
declare, proclaim, announce	1823
delight	1824
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1825
descend, descendant	1826
desert, wilderness	1827
devour	1828
die, dead, deadly, death,	1829
dominion	1831
donkey, mule	1832
dream	1833
earth, earthen, earthly	1834
Egypt, Egyptian	1835
elder, older, old	1836
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1837

Esau	1838
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1839
Euphrates River, the River	1840
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1841
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1843
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1844
exile, exiled	1845
face, facial	1846
faith	1847
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1848
family, household	1850
famine	1851
favor, favorable, favoritism	1852
fear, afraid, dread	1853
feast, feasting	1854
fig	1855
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1856
firstborn	1857
firstfruits	1858
flesh	1859
flock, herd	1860
fool, foolish, folly	1861
forsake, forsaken, leave	1862
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1863
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1865
Gad	1866
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1867
generation	1868
Gilead, Gileadite	1869
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1870
Girgashites	1871
glean, gleanings	1872
glory, glorious, glorify	1873
God	1875
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1877
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1879
gold, golden	1880
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1881
grace, gracious	1883
grain offering	1884
grain, grainfields	1885
grape, grapevine	1886
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1887
hand	1888
hang, hung	1890
harp, harpist	1891

harvest, reap	1892
head	1893
heart	1894
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1895
Hittite	1897
Hivite	1898
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1899
horse, warhorse, horseback	1901
house	1902
inherit, inheritance, heir	1903
iniquity	1905
innocent	1906
instruct, instruction, instructors	1907
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1908
Israel, Israelites	1910
jealous, jealousy	1911
Jebus, Jebusite	1912
Jordan River, Jordan	1913
Joseph (OT)	1914
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1915
Judah	1917
Judea	1918
judge, judgment	1919
king, kingdom, kingship	1921
kingdom	1922
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1924
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1926
life, live, living, alive	1927
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten	1929
lion, lioness	1930
livestock, animals	1931
lord, Lord, master, sir	1932
love, beloved	1934
Mede, Medes, Media	1936
messenger	1937
might, mighty, mighty works	1938
Moab, Moabite	1939
mourn, mourner, weeping	1940
name	1941
nation	1942
Negev	1943
new moon	1944
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1945
olive	1946
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor	1947
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1948

oversee, overseer	1949
patient, patience, impatient	1950
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1951
people of God	1952
people, people group,	1953
Perizzite	1955
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	1956
Philistines	1957
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1958
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1959
pray, prayer	1960
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1961
priest, priesthood	1963
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1965
profane, profaned	1966
promise, promised	1967
Promised Land	1968
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1969
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1971
prostitute, harlot, whored	1972
prostrate, worship	1973
proud, pride, prideful	1974
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1975
pure, purify, purification	1976
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1977
rebuke	1978
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1979
reign, rule	1980
remnant	1981
rest, rested, restless	1982
restore, restoration	1983
return	1984
Reuben	1985
reward, prize, deserve,	1986
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1987
robe, robed	1989
sackcloth	1990
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1991
sandal	1993
Satan, devil, evil one	1994
save, saved, safe, salvation	1996
seed, semen	1998
seek, search, look for	1999
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	2000
set apart	2002
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	2003

Shinar	2005
sign, proof, reminder	2006
silver	2007
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	2008
slaughter, slaughtered	2010
son	2011
spirit, spiritual	2013
statute	2015
strength, strengthen, strong	2016
sword, swordsmen	2018
Tamar	2019
temple	2020
tempt, temptation	2022
terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic	2023
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	2024
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	2025
thresh	2027
tongue, language	2028
tremble, stagger	2029
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	2030
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	2031
true, truth	2032
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	2034
understand, understanding, thinking	2035
vine	2036
vineyard	2037
virgin, virginity	2038
voice	2039
walk, walked	2040
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	2041
wheat	2042
wine, wineskin, new wine	2043
wise men, advisor	2044
wise, wisdom	2045
wrath, fury	2046
Yahweh	2047
zeal, zealous	2049
Contributors	2050
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	2050
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	2056
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	2057
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	2057
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	2058



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Genesis

Introduction to Genesis

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Genesis

1. From the Creation to the Tower of Babel
2. The account of the creation of the heavens and the earth (1:1–4:26)
3. The account of Adam (5:1–6:8)
4. The account of Noah (6:9–11:9)
5. The account of Shem (11:10–11:26)
6. The account of Terah (11:27–11:32)
7. The accounts of the Patriarchs
8. The account of Abraham (12:1–25:11)
9. The account of Ishmael (25:12–25:18)
10. The account of Isaac, focusing on Jacob (25:19–35:29)
11. The account of Esau (36:1–37:1)
12. The account of Jacob, focusing on Joseph (37:2–50:26)

What is Genesis about?

Genesis begins with the early years of creation. It tells about God creating heaven, earth, and the first humans. It also tells about the first time humans sinned. This caused humans to be separated from God and to eventually die. Genesis 1-11 briefly tells about other important events that occurred over many hundreds of years. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#).)

Genesis is also about the beginning of God's people. Genesis 12-50 tells about how God remained faithful to Abraham and his descendants. Abraham's descendants became known as the Hebrews and later as the Israelites. These people would worship Yahweh and be his people.

Genesis ends with Abraham's descendants living in Egypt with the hope of returning one day to the Promised Land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

"Genesis" means "beginning," so translators should express this idea in their title. Titles such as "The Beginning of Things" may be suitable. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote Genesis?

The writers of both the Old and New Testaments presented Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Genesis. Since ancient times, both Jews and Christians have thought that Moses wrote Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What are the covenants mentioned in Genesis?

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

God made three covenants in Genesis. In the covenant with Adam, God promised to bless Adam and cause him to prosper. Adam was not allowed to eat fruit from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. God promised that Adam would die if he disobeyed what he commanded.

In the covenant with Noah, God promised to never again destroy the world with a flood.

In the covenant with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect them and to give them a land of their own.

What was God's purpose for the book of Genesis?

The book of Genesis says that God created a very good world. However, the world became cursed because human beings began to sin. But Genesis shows that God continues to have complete control over the world.

Genesis also describes the start of God's plan to bless the whole world again. This is shown when God makes a covenant with Abraham. With this covenant, God chose Abraham and his descendants to be his people. God promised to bless the world through Abraham's descendants.

What was the custom for inheritance as described by Genesis?

There are several passages in Genesis that show the customs of a father who is about to die passing on a blessing to his son. Abraham blessed his son, Isaac, and made him the ancestor of the people of Israel. However, Ishmael, Abraham's other son, did not receive that same divine blessing. Likewise, Isaac's older son Esau did not receive the blessing. Isaac's younger son, Jacob, received it instead. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Also, it was the custom for a man to divide among his sons his material wealth and land. All his sons received equal portions except the oldest son. The firstborn son received twice as much. His portion was called a double portion. Esau gave up his right to receive the double portion.

How does Genesis present sin and evil?

Genesis presents sin as doing things that are against God's word and God's ways. It presents evil as the opposite of good.

Sin and evil have affected all people. This started when Adam disobeyed God in the Garden of Eden.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is one way in which Genesis marks the beginning of important sections?

Genesis uses one Hebrew phrase that the ULT translates as "this is the record of," "these were the events concerning," or "these were the descendants of." The information in these sections may have come from sources much older than Moses. These passages are 2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10, 27; 25:12, 19; 36:1, 9; 37:2.

If the translator wants to translate in only two ways, we recommend for most passages a phrase such as, "this is the record about" or "this is information about." Some passages will be better translated, however, as "These were the descendants of."

Why are the beginnings of some narrative sections in Genesis difficult to translate?

Often in Genesis, the author first summarizes what is about to happen. Then in the following verses, the author tells the details of what happened. Probable examples of this style occur in Gen. 1:1, 6:22, 18:1, 21:1 and 22:1.

However, in many languages, it is preferred to write summaries at the end of a narrative. In this case, translators may choose a different approach. For example, in Gen. 1:1 ("In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth"), translators may decide to translate like this: "This is about how God made the heavens and the earth in the beginning."

What is the difference between “people,” “peoples,” and “people groups”?

The word “people” refers to all the individuals who belong to a group, such as “the people of Israel.” The word “peoples” (used in the ULT) refers to multiple groups of people. Each people group might speak their own language, have their own customs, and worship their own gods. Some different peoples in the ancient Near East were those of Israel, Egypt, Edom, Moab, and Ammon.

The expression “people groups” (used in the UST) means the same thing as “peoples” in the ULT. The translator should use the most equivalent term that is common in the project language.

What is the relationship between individuals and peoples that have similar names?

Many individuals in Genesis eventually had large numbers of descendants who were called after their ancestor’s name. For example, Cush was the name of an individual. But, “Cush” also became the name of nation that his descendants formed. They were called “Cushites.” If possible, when translating these names, the translator should make the individual’s name and the nation’s name similar. Examples of this are “Cush” and “Cushite” or “Moab” and “Moabite.” Otherwise, the translator may say, “the descendants of Cush” or “the descendants of Moab.”

What do the phrases “to this day” or “of today” mean?

These phrases were used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” and “of today” refer to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in Gen. 19:37, 19:38, 22:14, 26:33, 32:32, 35:20, 47:26, 48:18.

Genesis 1

Genesis 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter presents the first account of God creating the world. There is a pattern to this account: “God said...God saw that it was good...This was evening and morning, the first day.” Translators should preserve this pattern in their versions.

Special concepts in this chapter

The universe

This account of creation is told within the framework of ancient Hebrew ideas about the universe: the earth was resting with water around it and below it. Over the earth was something like a vast dome, called “an expanse between the waters” (1:6), on top of which was more water. Translators should try to keep these original images in their work, even though readers in their project language might have a completely different idea of what the universe is like.

Evening and morning

Genesis 1 presents the ancient Hebrew idea of a day: it begins with sunset, lasts through the night and continues through the daylight hours until the next sunset. This pattern should be preserved in translation, even if readers in the project language define “day” differently.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“In the beginning”

Some languages and cultures speak of the world as if it has always existed, as if it had no beginning. But “very long ago” is different from “in the beginning,” and you need to be sure that your translation communicates correctly.

“God said, ‘Let there be’”

This expression occurs often in this chapter. It can be difficult to translate, because God is not shown as talking to a particular person. If God is talking to a thing, it is something not yet in existence. Translators should find the most natural way in the project language to signal the idea that God spoke things into existence; he created the world and the things in it by simply commanding that they should exist.

Genesis 1:1

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth

"This is about how God made the heavens and the earth in the beginning." This statement summarizes the rest of the chapter. Some languages translate it as "A very long time ago God created the heavens and the earth." Translate it in a way that shows this actually happened and is not just a folk story.

In the beginning

This refers to the start of the world and everything in it.

the heavens and the earth

"the sky, the ground, and everything in them"

heavens

This refers here to the sky.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹ In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth.

UST

¹ In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth.

Genesis 1:2

without form and empty

God had not yet put the world in order.

the deep

“the water” or “the deep water” or “the vast water”

the surface of the waters

“the surface of the water” or “the water”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

² The earth was without form and empty. Darkness was upon the surface of the deep. The Spirit of God was moving above the surface of the waters.

UST

² When he began to create the earth, it was shapeless and completely desolate. Darkness covered the surface of the deep water. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the water.

Genesis 1:3

Let there be light

This is a command. By commanding that light should exist, God made it exist. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

³ God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.

UST

³ God said, "I command there to be light," and there was light.

Genesis 1:4

God saw the light, that it was good

"God considered the light and was pleased with it." "Good" here means "pleasing" or "suitable."

divided the light from the darkness

"separated the light and the darkness" or "made it light at one time and dark at another." This refers to God creating the daytime and the night time.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- set apart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- set apart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

⁴ God saw the light, that it was good. He divided the light from the darkness.

UST

⁴ God was pleased with the light. Then he made the light shine in some places at certain times, while in other places there was still darkness.

Genesis 1:5

This was evening and morning, the first day

God did these things on the first day that the universe existed.

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁵ God called the light “day,” and the darkness he called “night.” This was evening and morning, the first day.

UST

⁵ He named the light “day,” and he named the darkness “night.” This was an evening and morning, the first day.

Genesis 1:6

Let there be an expanse...let it divide

These are commands. By commanding that the expanse should exist and that it divide the waters, God made it exist and divide the waters. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

expanse

large empty space. The Jewish people thought of this space as being shaped like the inside of dome or the inside of a bowl that is turned upside down.

between the waters

"in the water"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

⁶ God said, "Let there be an expanse between the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters."

UST

⁶ Then God said, "I command that there be an empty space like a huge dome to separate the water into two parts."

Genesis 1:7

God made the expanse and divided the waters

“In this way God made the expanse and divided the waters.” When God spoke, it happened. This sentence explains what God did when he spoke.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- set apart

Translation Words - UST

- God
- set apart

ULT

⁷ God made the expanse and divided the waters which were under the expanse from the waters which were above the expanse. It was so.

UST

⁷ And that is what happened. God made the empty space like a huge dome and it separated the water that is above it from the water on the earth that is below it.

Genesis 1:8

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the second day

This refers to the second day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁸ God called the expanse “sky.” This was evening and morning, the second day.

UST

⁸ God named the space like a huge dome “sky.” This was an evening and morning, the second day.

Genesis 1:9

Let the waters...be gathered

This can be translated with an active verb. This is a command. By commanding that the waters gather together, God made them gather together. Alternate translation: "Let the waters...gather" or "Let the waters...come together" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

let the dry land appear

The water had covered the land. Now the water would move aside and some of the land would be uncovered. This is a command. By commanding that dry land should appear, God made it appear.

Alternate translation: "let dry land become visible" or "let the dry land become clear" or "let the land be uncovered" (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

dry land

This refers to land that is not covered with water. It does not refer to land that is too dry for farming.

It was so

"It happened like that" or "That is what happened." What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears. See how you translated it in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁹ God said, "Let the waters under the sky be gathered together to one place, and let the dry land appear." It was so.

UST

⁹ Then God said, "I command the water that is below the sky to come together, and dry ground to appear and rise above it." And that is what happened.

Genesis 1:10

the dry land “earth,” and

“the part that was dry ‘earth,’ and”

He saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the land and the sea. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

10 God called the dry land “earth,” and the gathered waters he called “seas.” He saw that it was good.

UST

10 God gave to the ground the name “earth,” and he gave to the water that came together the name “oceans.” God was pleased with the earth and the oceans.

Genesis 1:11

Let the earth sprout vegetation

This is a command. By commanding that vegetation should sprout on the earth, God made it sprout. Alternate translation: “Let vegetation sprout up on the earth” or “Let vegetation grow on the earth” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

vegetation: plants yielding seed and fruit trees bearing fruit

“vegetation, each plant that bears seed and each tree that bears fruit” or “vegetation. Let them be plants that produce seeds and fruit trees that produce fruit.” Here “vegetation” is used here as a general term that includes all plants and trees.

plants

These are kinds of vegetation that have soft stems, rather than woody stems.

fruit trees bearing fruit whose seed is in the fruit

“trees that bear fruit with seeds in them”

each according to its own kind

The seeds would produce plants and trees that would be like the ones they came from. In this way, the plants and trees would “reproduce themselves”.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- God
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

11 God said, “Let the earth sprout vegetation: plants yielding seed and fruit trees bearing fruit whose seed is in the fruit, each according to its own kind.” It was so.

UST

11 Then God said, “I command the earth to produce many kinds of plants that reproduce themselves—plants that will produce seeds and trees that will produce fruit with their seed in it.” And that is what happened.

- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Genesis 1:12

God saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the vegetation, plants, and trees. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

12 The earth produced vegetation, plants producing seed after their kind, and trees bearing fruit whose seed was in it, after their kind. God saw that it was good.

UST

12 Then plants grew on the earth. Each kind of plant began to produce its own kind of seed, and each kind of tree produced fruit with its seed in it. God was pleased with the plants and trees.

Genesis 1:13

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the third day

This refers to the third day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

ULT

¹³ This was evening and morning, the third day.

UST

¹³ This was an evening and morning, the third day.

Genesis 1:14

Let there be lights in the sky

This is a command. By commanding that lights should exist, God made them exist. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

lights in the sky

“things that shine in the sky” or “things that give light in the sky.” This refers to the sun, moon, and stars.

in the sky

“in the expanse of the sky” or “in the large space of the sky”

to divide the day from the night

“to separate the day from the night.” This means “to help us tell the difference between day and night.” The sun means it is daytime, and the moon and stars mean it is nighttime.

let them be as signs

This is a command. By commanding that they should serve as signs, God made them serve as signs. Alternate translation: “Let them serve as signs” or “let them show” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

signs

Here this means something that reveals or points to something.

for seasons, for days and years

The sun, moon, and stars show the passing of time. This enables us to know when it is time for events that happen each week, month, or year.

seasons

times that are set aside for festivals and other things that people do

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

14 God said, “Let there be lights in the sky to divide the day from the night and let them be as signs, for seasons, for days and years.

UST

14 Then God said, “I command many lights to shine in the sky. They will distinguish day from night. By the changes in their appearance they will indicate the time for various festivals and other things that people do at certain times and in certain years.

Genesis 1:15

Let them be lights in the sky to give light upon the earth

This is a command. By commanding that they should light the earth, God made them light the earth. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

to give light upon the earth

“to shine light on the earth” or “to brighten the earth.” The earth does not self-shine but it is lit and so reflects light.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁵ Let them be lights in the sky to give light upon the earth.” It was so.

UST

¹⁵ I also want these lights in the sky to shine down on the earth.” And that is what happened.

Genesis 1:16

God made the two great lights

"In this way God made the two great lights." This sentence explains what God did when he spoke.

the two great lights

"the two large lights" or "the two bright lights." The two great lights are the sun and the moon.

to rule the day

The lights that controlled the day are spoken of as if they were a human ruler that controlled what people do. Alternate translation: "to direct the daytime as a ruler directs a group of people" or "to mark the times of the day" (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

day

This refers only to the daylight hours.

the lesser light

"the smaller light" or "the dimmer light"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

16 God made the two great lights, the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night. He made the stars also.

UST

16 God made two of them to be very big lights. The biggest one, the sun, he made to govern the day and the smaller one, the moon, he made to govern the night. He also made the stars.

Genesis 1:17

in the sky

“in the heavens” or “in the open space of the sky”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

17 God set them in the sky to give light upon the earth,

UST

17 God set all of them in the sky to shine on the earth,

Genesis 1:18

to divide the light from the darkness

“to separate the light from the darkness” or “to make it light at one time and dark at another.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

God saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the sun, moon, and stars. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

ULT

18 to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness. God saw that it was good.

UST

18 to govern the day and the night, and to separate the light of the daytime from the darkness of the nighttime. God was pleased with the lights.

Genesis 1:19

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the fourth day

This refers to the fourth day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

ULT

¹⁹ This was evening and morning, the fourth day.

UST

¹⁹ This was an evening and morning, the fourth day.

Genesis 1:20

Let the waters be filled with great numbers of living creatures

This is a command. By commanding that living creatures should fill the waters, God made them exist. Some languages may have one word that refers to all kinds of fish and sea animals. Alternate translation: "Let the waters be full of many living things" or "Let many animals that swim live in the oceans" (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

let birds fly

This is a command. By commanding that birds should fly, God made them fly. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

birds

"animals that fly" or "flying things"

the expanse of the sky

"the open space of the sky" or "the sky"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁰ God said, "Let the waters be filled with great numbers of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the expanse of the sky."

UST

²⁰ Then God said, "Fill the waters with all kinds of living things that I have made, and fill the sky with birds that fly above the earth."

Genesis 1:21

God created

"In this way God created"

great sea creatures

"large animals that live in the sea"

after its kind

Living things of the same "kind" are like the ones they came from. See how you translated "kind" in [Genesis 1:11,12](#).

every winged bird

"every flying thing that has wings." If the word for birds is used, it may be more natural in some languages to simply say "every bird," since all birds have wings.

God saw that it was good

Here "it" refers to the birds and the fish. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

21 God created the great sea creatures, as well as every living creature after its kind, creatures that move and which fill the waters everywhere, and every winged bird after its kind. God saw that it was good.

UST

21 So God created the very large creatures that live in the sea, and he created all the other living things that are found, in very great numbers, in the waters. He also created every kind of bird that has wings. All these creatures would be able to produce their own offspring. God looked at all that he had made and he was pleased with them.

Genesis 1:22

blessed them

“blessed the animals that he had made”

Be fruitful and multiply

This is God’s blessing. He told the sea animals to produce more sea animals like themselves, so that there would be many of them in the seas. The word “multiply” explains how they are to be “fruitful.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

multiply

increase greatly in number

Let birds multiply

This is a command. By commanding that birds should multiply, God made birds multiply. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

birds

“animals that fly” or “flying things.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:20](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

22 God blessed them, saying, “Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas. Let birds multiply on the earth.”

UST

22 So God blessed them. He said, “Produce offspring and become very numerous. I want the creatures in the water to live throughout all the bodies of water, and the birds also to become very numerous.”

Genesis 1:23

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the fifth day

This refers to the fifth day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

ULT

²³ This was evening and morning, the fifth day.

UST

²³ This was an evening and morning, the fifth day.

Genesis 1:24

Let the earth produce living creatures

“Let the earth produce living things” or “Let many living animals live on the earth.” This is a command. By commanding that the earth should produce living creatures, God made the earth produce living creatures. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

each according to its own kind

“so that each kind of animal will produce more of its own kind”

livestock, creeping things, and beasts of the earth

This shows that God created all kinds of animals. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups.

livestock

animals that people look after

creeping things

“small animals”

beasts of the earth

“wild animals” or “dangerous animals”

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

24 God said, “Let the earth produce living creatures, each according to its own kind, livestock, creeping things, and beasts of the earth, each according to its own kind.” It was so.

UST

24 Then God said, “I command the earth to produce various kinds of animals that reproduce themselves to live on the earth. There will be many kinds of domestic animals, creatures that crawl on the ground, and large wild animals.” And that is what happened.

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Genesis 1:25

God made the beasts

"In this way God made the beasts"

He saw that it was good

Here "it" refers to the living creatures on the earth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

²⁵ God made the beasts of the earth after their kind, the livestock after their kinds, and everything that creeps upon the ground after its kind. He saw that it was good.

UST

²⁵ God made all kinds of wild animals and domestic animals and all kinds of creatures that crawl on the ground. They could all produce more animals of their same kind. God was pleased with them.

Genesis 1:26

Let us make

The word “us” here refers to God. God was saying what he intended to do. The pronoun “us” is plural. Possible reasons for the plural use are 1) the plural form suggests that God is discussing something with the angels that make up his heavenly court or 2) the plural form foreshadows the later New Testament implications that God exists in the form of the Holy Trinity. Some translate it as “Let me make” or “I will make.” If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the word is plural. (See: [Pronouns](#))

man

human beings

in our image, after our likeness

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God made mankind to be like him. This verse does not tell in what ways God made people to be like himself. God does not have a body, so it does not mean that people would look like God. Alternate translation: “to truly be like us” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

have dominion over

“rule over” or “have authority over”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [God](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [God](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

26 God said, “Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. Let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.” ^[1]

UST

26 Then God said, “Let us make human beings to be like us. I want them to rule over the fish in the sea, over the birds in the sky, over all the domestic animals, and over all the other creatures that move across the surface of the ground.”

Genesis 1:27

God created man...he created him

These two sentences mean the same thing and emphasize that God created people in his own image. (See: [Parallelism](#))

God created man

The way that God created man was different from the way he created everything else. Do not specify that he created man by simply speaking, as in the preceding verses.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²⁷ God created man in his own image. In his own image he created him. Male and female he created them.

UST

²⁷ So God created human beings that were like him in many ways. He made them to be like himself. He created them as male and female.

Genesis 1:28

God blessed them

The word “them” refers to the man and woman God had created.

Be fruitful, and multiply

God told the man and the woman to produce more people like themselves so that there would be many of them. The word “multiply” explains how they are to be “fruitful.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:22](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Fill the earth

Fill the earth with people.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- dominion
- God
- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- dominion
- God
- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

28 God blessed them and said to them, “Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

UST

28 God blessed them, saying, “Produce many children, who should live all over the earth and rule over it. I want you to rule over the fish in the sea and the birds in the sky and over all the creatures that move across the surface of the ground.”

Genesis 1:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- God
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁹ God said, "See, I have given you every plant yielding seed which is upon the surface of all the earth, and every tree with fruit which has seed in it. They will be food to you.

UST

²⁹ God said, "Look! I have given you all the plants that produce seeds all over the earth, and all the trees that produce fruit. All these things are for you to eat.

Genesis 1:30

General Information:

God continues speaking.

every bird of the heavens

“all the birds that fly in the sky”

that has the breath of life

“that breathes.” This phrase emphasizes that these animals had a different kind of life than the plants. Plants do not breathe, and were to be used as food for the animals. Here “life” means physical life.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated it in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³⁰ To every beast of the earth, to every bird of the heavens, and to everything that creeps upon the earth, and to every creature that has the breath of life I have given every green plant for food.” It was so.

UST

³⁰ I have given all the green plants to be food for all the wild animals, for the birds, and for all the creatures that move across the surface of the ground, that is, for everything that has life-giving breath in it.” And that is what happened.

Genesis 1:31

Behold, it

"This is true and important: it"

it was very good

Now when God looked at everything he had made, it was "very good."
"See how you translated "it was good" in [Genesis 1:10](#).

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the sixth day

This refers to the sixth day that the universe existed. See how you translated "the first day" in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

ULT

31 God saw everything that he had made. Behold, it was very good. This was evening and morning, the sixth day.

1:26 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts have *...Over the livestock, over all the animals of the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth .*

UST

31 God was pleased with everything that he had made. Truly, it was all very good. This was an evening and morning, the sixth day.

Genesis 2

Genesis 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Gen. 2:1-3 ends the first creation account, begun in the previous chapter. The second creation account, beginning in 2:4, is very different, using a more natural, story-telling style instead of following a set formula using repeated phrases. Translators should try to imitate this difference in their versions.

Special concepts in this chapter

The second creation account in Gen. 2:4-25

Gen. 2:4-25 presents an account of creation from a different viewpoint than the one given in Gen. 1:1-2:3. This second account should be regarded as filling out the first account, not as conflicting with it.

Yahweh, the name of God

“Yahweh,” the personal name of God in the Old Testament, appears for the first time in this chapter. Translators must decide how to represent it in their versions. For 2,000 years, it has been traditional for many Christians to represent it with the term “the Lord.” Indeed, it is demanded by Roman Catholics for their Bible versions to continue doing this. Of course, the disadvantage of using “the Lord” is that this is a title for God, not a personal name. (See: [Yahweh](#))

Translators who are not producing versions for Roman Catholics can consider transliterating the name “Yahweh,” approximating the name as best as their project languages allow.

Or translators can consider using expressions for the supreme god that might exist in their project languages, such as, “The Great One,” “The Ruler of All,” “The One who Never Sleeps,” etc. Of course, these are descriptive titles, not personal names, so they suffer from the same disadvantages that “the Lord” has.

Translators can also consider pairing a transliteration of “Yahweh” with a meaningful title for the supreme god in the project language. Whatever solution is found should be followed consistently when the name “Yahweh” occurs in the Scriptures.

The Garden of Eden

This was not a vegetable garden or cultivated field. Instead, it was probably a large area of land with fruit trees and other plants bearing leaves, etc., that were good to eat. A river flowed out from the Garden of Eden, giving the impression that the Garden was a holy place; in the ancient Near East, temples had gardens and waterways. In Rev. 22:1-2, the throne of God in the New Jerusalem is pictured with a river flowing out from it. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

Genesis 2:1

the heavens

“the sky” or “the skies”

and all the living things that filled them

“and all the many living things that are in them” or “and all the crowds of living things in them”

were finished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God had finished creating them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

ULT

¹ Then the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the living things that filled them.

UST

¹ That is the way God created the heavens and the earth and the living things that filled them.

Genesis 2:2

On the seventh day God came to the end of his work

God did not work at all on the seventh day.

came to the end of

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “had finished” (See: [Idiom](#))

he rested on the seventh day from all his work

“on that day he did not work”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

² On the seventh day God came to the end of his work which he had done, and so he rested on the seventh day from all his work.

UST

² By the time it was the seventh day, God had finished the work of creating everything, so he did not work anymore on that day.

Genesis 2:3

God blessed the seventh day

Possible meanings are 1) God caused the seventh day to produce good result or 2) God said that the seventh day was good.

sanctified it

“set it apart” or “called it his own”

in it he rested from all his work

“on it he did not work”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- set apart

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- set apart

ULT

³ God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation.

UST

³ God declared that each seventh day would have his favor. He set those days apart to be special days, because on the seventh day God did not work anymore, after finishing all his work of creating everything.

Genesis 2:4

General Information:

The rest of Genesis 2 tells about how God created people on the sixth day.

These were the events concerning the heavens and the earth

“This is the account of the heavens and the earth” or “This is the story about the heavens and the earth.” Possible meanings are 1) it is a summary of the events described in Genesis 1:1-2:3 or 2) it introduces the events described in Genesis 2. If possible, translate this so that people can understand it either way.

they were created

“Yahweh God created them.” In chapter 1 the writer always speaks of God as “God,” but in chapter 2 he always speaks of God as “Yahweh God.”

on the day that Yahweh God made

“when Yahweh God created.” The word “day” refers to the whole time span of the creation, not to just one particular day.

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- generation

ULT

⁴ These were the events concerning the heavens and the earth, when they were created, on the day that Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens.

UST

⁴ What follows is how God created the heavens and the earth. God, whose name is Yahweh, made the heavens and the earth.

Genesis 2:5

No bush of the field

no shrubs growing in the wild that animals might eat

no plant of the field

no leafy plants like vegetables or greens that both animals and humans can eat

to cultivate

to do everything he needed to do so that the plants would grow well

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁵ No bush of the field was yet in the earth, and no plant of the field had yet sprouted, for Yahweh God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and there was no man to cultivate the ground.

UST

⁵ At first there were no plants growing, because Yahweh God had not yet caused rain to fall on the ground. Furthermore, there was no one to plow the ground for planting crops.

Genesis 2:6

mist

Possible meanings are 1) something like dew or morning fog o 2) springs from underground streams.

the whole surface of the ground

the entire earth

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁶ But a mist went up from the earth and watered the whole surface of the ground.

UST

⁶ Instead, mist rose up from the ground, so that there was water all over the surface of the ground.

Genesis 2:7

formed man

“molded man” or “shaped man” or “created man”

man...man

“a human being...the human” or “a person...the person” not specifically a male

his nostrils

“his nose”

breath of life

“breath that makes things live.” Here “life” refers to physical life.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh

ULT

⁷ Yahweh God formed man from the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living being.

UST

⁷ Then Yahweh God took some soil and formed a man. He breathed into the man's nostrils his own breath that makes things alive, and as a result the man became a whole living person.

Genesis 2:8

a garden

This could have been an orchard of fruit trees or an area with all kinds of trees.

eastward

in the east

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh

ULT

⁸ Yahweh God planted a garden eastward, in Eden, and there he put the man whom he had formed.

UST

⁸ Yahweh God made a park in a place named Eden, which was east of the land of Canaan. There he placed the man that he had formed.

Genesis 2:9

the tree of life

“the tree that gives people life”

life

Here this means “eternal life” or life that does not end.

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

“the tree that gives people the ability to understand both good and evil” or “the tree that makes people who eat its fruit able to know good things and bad things”

good and evil

This is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. Alternate translation: “everything, including both good and evil” (See: [Merism](#))

in the midst of the garden

“in the middle of the garden.” The two trees may not have been in the exact center of the garden.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)

ULT

⁹ Out of the ground Yahweh God made every tree to grow that is pleasant to the sight and good for food. This included the tree of life that was in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

UST

⁹ Yahweh God caused to grow from the ground every kind of tree that is beautiful to see and that produces fruit that is good to eat. He also placed in the middle of the park a tree whose fruit would enable those who ate it to live forever. He also placed there another tree whose fruit would enable those who ate it to know what actions were good to do and what actions were evil to do.

Genesis 2:10

A river went out of Eden to water the garden

The garden was in Eden. The river continued to flow outside of Eden.
 "A river flowed through Eden to water the garden"

Translation Words - ULT

- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

10 A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers.

UST

10 A river flowed from Eden to provide water for the park. Outside of Eden, the river divided into four rivers.

Genesis 2:11

Pishon

This is the only time this river is referred to in the Bible. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the whole land of Havilah

“the whole land called Havilah.” It was somewhere in the Arabian Desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

where there is gold

This phrase gives information about Havilah. Some languages would translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “There is gold in Havilah” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

11 The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold.

UST

11 The name of the first river is Pishon. That river flows through all the land of Havilah, where there is gold.

Genesis 2:12

There are also bdellium and the onyx stone

The word “there” is placed first in the sentence for emphasis.
Alternate translation: “This is also where people can find bdellium and onyx stones”

bdellium

This resin comes from a tree and smells nice. A resin is sticky stuff that comes out of some trees and can burn. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the onyx stone

“onyx stones.” Onyx is a certain kind of beautiful stone. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- earth, earthen, earthly
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- earth, earthen, earthly
- gold, golden

ULT

¹² The gold of that land is good. There are also bdellium and the onyx stone.

UST

¹² That gold is very pure. There is also a sweet-smelling gum called bdellium and valuable stones called onyx.

Genesis 2:13

Gihon

This is the only mention of this river in the Bible. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

flows throughout the whole land of Cush

The river did not cover the whole land, but wound through various parts of the land.

the whole land of Cush

“the entire land called Cush”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

¹³ The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush.

UST

¹³ The name of the second river is Gihon. That river flows through all the land of Cush.

Genesis 2:14

which flows east of Ashur

“which flows in the land east of the city of Ashur.” The Tigris River flows from north to south. The phrase “which flows east of Ashur” gives information about where the Tigris River is. Some languages would translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “It flows east of Ashur” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Euphrates River, the River

Translation Words - UST

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Euphrates River, the River

ULT

¹⁴ The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Ashur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.

UST

¹⁴ The name of the third river is Tigris. It flows east of the city of Ashur. The name of the fourth river is Euphrates.

Genesis 2:15

the garden of Eden

“the garden that was in Eden”

to work it

“to cultivate it.” This means to do everything necessary so that the plants will grow well.

to maintain it

to guard against anything bad happening in it

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

ULT

15 Yahweh God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to work it and to maintain it.

UST

15 Yahweh God took the man and put him in Eden to plow it and take care of it.

Genesis 2:16

From every tree in the garden

"The fruit of every tree in the garden"

you

This pronoun is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

may freely eat

"may eat without restriction"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

16 Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat.

UST

16-17 But Yahweh said to him, "I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park."

Genesis 2:17

But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat

These words complete the command that begins with the words “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat” in verse 15. In some languages, it may be more natural to say what is not permitted and to then say what is permitted, as in the UST.

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

“the tree that gives people the ability to understand both good and evil” or “the tree that makes people who eat its fruit able to know good things and bad things.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:9](#).

you may not eat

“I will not permit you to eat” or “you must not eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

17 But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.”

UST

16-17 But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.”

Genesis 2:18

I will make him a helper suitable for him

"I will make a helper who is just right for him"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

18 Then Yahweh God said, "It is not good that the man should be alone. I will make him a helper suitable for him."

UST

18 Yahweh God said, "It is not good for this man to be alone. So I will make someone who will be a suitable partner for him."

Genesis 2:19

every animal of the field and every bird of the sky

The phrases “of the field” and “of the sky” tell where the animals and birds are usually found. Alternate translation: “all kinds of animals and birds”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh
- name

ULT

19 Out of the ground Yahweh God formed every animal of the field and every bird of the sky. Then he brought them to the man to see what he would call them. Whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name.

UST

19 Yahweh God had taken some soil and had formed all kinds of animals and birds, and he brought them to the man to hear what names he would give to them. And the man gave a name to every living animal that Yahweh had made.

Genesis 2:20

all the livestock

"all the animals that people look after"

there was found no helper suitable for him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there was no companion that was right for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

²⁰ The man gave names to all the livestock, to all the birds of the sky, and to every beast of the field. But for the man himself there was found no helper suitable for him.

UST

²⁰ Then the man gave names to all the kinds of cattle, birds, and wild animals, but none of these creatures was a partner that was suitable for the man.

Genesis 2:21

caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man

"caused the man to sleep intensely." A deep sleep is a time of sleeping in which a person is not easily disturbed or awakened.

flesh

This refers to the soft parts of the body like skin and muscle.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- flesh
- Yahweh
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- God
- flesh
- Yahweh
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

21 Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, so the man slept. Yahweh God took one of his ribs and closed up the flesh where he took the rib.

UST

21 So Yahweh God caused the man to become deeply asleep. While the man was sleeping, Yahweh took out one of the man's ribs. Then he immediately closed the opening in his body and healed it.

Genesis 2:22

With the rib...he made a woman

"From the rib...he formed a woman." The rib was the material God made the woman from.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

ULT

22 With the rib that Yahweh God had taken from the man, he made a woman and brought her to the man.

UST

22 Yahweh then made a woman from the rib that he had taken from the man's body, and he brought her to the man.

Genesis 2:23

This time, this one is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh

“Finally, this one’s bones are like my bones, and her flesh is like my flesh.” After looking among all the animals for a partner and not finding one, he finally saw someone who was like him and could be his partner. The man was probably expressing his feeling of relief and joy.

She will be called ‘woman,’ because she was taken out of man

The translator may want to write a footnote saying “The Hebrew word for ‘woman’ sounds like the Hebrew word for ‘man.’

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

ULT

²³ The man said, “This time, this one is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh. She will be called ‘woman,’ because she was taken out of man.”

UST

²³ The man exclaimed, “Finally, this is truly someone like me! Her bones came from one of my bones, and her flesh came from my flesh. So I will call her woman, because she was taken from me, a man.”

Genesis 2:24

General Information:

What follows is written by the author. The man did not say these things.

Therefore a man

"That is why a man"

a man will leave his father and his mother

"a man will stop living in his father and mother's home." This is about men in general. It does not refer to any particular man at any particular time.

they will become one flesh

This idiom speaks of sexual activity as though the bodies that are together become one body. Alternate translation: "their two bodies will become one body" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave

ULT

24 Therefore a man will leave his father and his mother, he will be united to his wife, and they will become one flesh.

UST

24 The first woman was taken from the man's body, so that is why when a man and a woman marry, they must leave their parents. The man will join very closely to his wife, so that the two of them will be as though they are one person.

Genesis 2:25

They were both naked

The word “they” refers to the man and the woman that God had created.

naked

“not wearing clothing”

but were not ashamed

“they were not ashamed about being naked”

Translation Words - ULT

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Translation Words - UST

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

ULT

²⁵ They were both naked, the man and his wife, but were not ashamed.

UST

²⁵ Although the man and his wife were naked, they were not ashamed about being naked.

Genesis 3

Genesis 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the second creation account that began in Gen. 2:4. But a new section of this account begins in 3:1. The ULT reads, “Now the serpent was more shrewd than any other beast of the field which Yahweh God had made,” because this is how the Scriptures introduce the serpent into the account. However, many languages prefer different ways to introduce new characters or things into stories, for example, “One of the wild animals made by God was the serpent” or “This is about the serpent, one of the wild animals that God had made.”

Scholars typically refer to the events of this chapter as “the fall” or “the fall of man” because sin is introduced into creation. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Curses

In this chapter, God curses the man, the woman, and the serpent for their sins. In general, cursing is calling down God’s punishment on someone or something. In this chapter, however, it is God himself who is doing the cursing. Of course, he does not call down punishment on the man, the woman, and the serpent from someone else. Instead, he is promising that he himself will punish them. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Serpent

Most scholars believe that the serpent is Satan, even though his name is not used in this chapter. There are other places in Scripture where the serpent is used as an image for Satan. (See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 3:1

Now

The writer is beginning a new part of the story.

more shrewd

“more cunning” or “smarter at getting what he wanted by telling lies”

Has God really said, ‘You...garden’?

The snake is pretending to be surprised that God has made this rule. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “I am surprised that God said, ‘You...garden.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You must not eat

The word “you” is plural and refers to the man and the woman. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

¹ Now the serpent was more shrewd than any other beast of the field which Yahweh God had made. He said to the woman, “Has God really said, ‘You must not eat from any tree of the garden?’”

UST

¹ Now the snake was more cunning than all the other wild animals that Yahweh God had made. The snake said to her, “Did God really say to you, ‘Do not eat the fruit from any of the trees in the park?’”

Genesis 3:2

We may eat

“We are allowed to eat” or “We have permission to eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

² The woman said to the serpent, “We may eat the fruit from the trees of the garden,

UST

² The woman replied, “What God said was, ‘Do not eat the fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the park or touch it. If you do that, you will die.

Genesis 3:3

but concerning the fruit...garden, God said, 'You may not eat it, nor may you touch it, or you will die

These words are the end of Eve's description of God's command to them that begins with the words "We may eat" in verse 2. Eve told the serpent what God had permitted them to do first and then what God had told them not to do. Some languages would say what they were told not to do first and then say what they were allowed to do, as in the UST.

You may not...nor may you...you will die

The word "you" is plural and refers to the man and the woman. (See: [Forms of You](#))

You may not eat it

"You must not eat it" or "Do not eat it"

nor may you touch it

"and you must not touch it" or "and do not touch it"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

³ but concerning the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden, God said, 'You may not eat it, nor may you touch it, or you will die.'"

UST

³ But you can eat fruit from any of the other trees."

Genesis 3:4

You will...not die

These words refer to the man and the woman and so are dual or plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ULT

⁴ The serpent said to the woman, "You will surely not die.

UST

⁴ The snake said to the woman, "No, you will certainly not die. God said that

Genesis 3:5

you...your...you

These words refer to the man and the woman and so are dual or plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your eyes will be opened

“your eyes will open.” This idiom means “you will become aware of things” or “you will understand new things.” This meaning can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “It will be as though your eyes were opened” (See: [Idiom](#))

knowing good and evil

Here “good and evil” is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. See how you translated “knowledge of good and evil” in [Genesis 2:9](#). Alternate translation: “knowing everything, including both good and evil” (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

⁵ For God knows that the day you eat it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”

UST

⁵ only because he knows that when you eat fruit from that tree, you will understand new things. It will be as though your eyes were opened, and you will know what is good to do and what is evil to do, just as God does.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Genesis 3:6

it was a delight to the eyes

“the tree was delightful to look at” or “it was nice to look at” or “it was very beautiful”

that the tree was desirable to make one wise

“she wanted the tree’s fruit because it could make a person wise” or “she wanted its fruit because it could make her understand what was right and wrong just as God does”

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- devour
- devour
- instruct, instruction, instructors

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- devour
- devour
- instruct, instruction, instructors

ULT

⁶ When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit and ate it. Then she also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.

UST

⁶ The woman saw that the fruit on that tree was good to eat, and it was very beautiful. She desired it because she thought it would make her wise. So she picked some of the fruit and ate it. Then she gave some to her husband, and he ate it.

Genesis 3:7

The eyes of both of them were opened

“Then their eyes opened” or “They became aware” or “They understood.” See how you translated “your eyes will be opened” in [Genesis 3:5](#).

sewed

put together, probably using vines as thread

fig leaves

If people do not know what fig leaves are like, this can be translated as “large leaves from a fig tree” or simply “large leaves.”

made coverings for themselves

They did this because they were ashamed. This implicit information can be made explicit if needed as in the UST. Alternate translation: “clothed themselves with them because they were ashamed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fig](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fig](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁷ The eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked. They sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.

UST

⁷ Immediately it was as though their eyes were opened, and they realized that they were naked, so they were ashamed. So they picked some fig leaves and fastened them together to make clothes for themselves.

Genesis 3:8

in the cool of the day

“at the time of day when a cool breeze blows”

from the presence of Yahweh God

“from Yahweh God’s sight” or “so that Yahweh God would not see them” or “from Yahweh God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- walk, walked

ULT

⁸ They heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, so the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.

UST

⁸ Late that afternoon, when a cool breeze was blowing, they heard the sound of Yahweh God as he was walking in the park. So the man and his wife hid themselves among the bushes in the park, so that Yahweh God would not see them.

Genesis 3:9

Where are you?

“Why are you trying to hide from me?” God knew where the man was. When the man answered, he did not say where he was but why he was hiding.

you

In verses 9 and 11, God was speaking to the man. Languages that have a singular form of “you” would use that here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁹ Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, “Where are you?”

UST

⁹ But Yahweh God called to the man, saying to him, “Why are you trying to hide from me?”

Genesis 3:10

I heard you

"I heard the sound you were making"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- pray, prayer

ULT

¹⁰ The man said, "I heard you in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked. So I hid myself."

UST

¹⁰ The man replied, "I heard the sound of your footsteps in the garden, and I was naked, so I was afraid and I hid from you."

Genesis 3:11

Who told you

God knew the answer to this question. He asked it in order to force Adam to confess that he had disobeyed God. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have you eaten...from?

Again, God knew this had happened. Translate this question in a form that shows God was accusing Adam of disobedience. The sentence can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You must have eaten...from." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

11 God said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?"

UST

11 God said, "How did you find out you were naked? It must be because you ate some of the fruit from the tree that I told you, 'Do not eat its fruit.' Is that what you have done?"

Genesis 3:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

¹² The man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate it."

UST

¹² The man said, "You gave me this woman to be with me. She is the one who gave me some of the fruit from that tree, so I ate it."

Genesis 3:13

What is this you have done?

God already knew what the woman had done. When he asked this question, he was giving her the opportunity to tell him about it, and he was expressing his disappointment with what she had done. Many languages use rhetorical questions for scolding or rebuking. If possible, use a form that expresses this disappointment. It can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have done a terrible thing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deceiver](#), [deceitful](#), [deception](#), [illusions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deceiver](#), [deceitful](#), [deception](#), [illusions](#)

ULT

13 Yahweh God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent lied to me, and I ate."

UST

13 Then Yahweh God said to the woman, "Why did you do such a thing?" The woman replied, "I ate it because the snake deceived me."

Genesis 3:14

cursed are you alone

“you alone are cursed.” The word “curse” is first in Hebrew in order to emphasize the contrast between God’s blessing on the animals and this curse on the serpent. This is a “curse formula,” or the way that curses were expressed. By saying this curse, God made it happen.

all the livestock and all the beasts of the field

“all domestic animals and all wild animals”

It is on your stomach that you will go

“You will move along the ground on your stomach.” The words “it is upon your stomach” comes first to emphasize the contrast between the way other animals would move along using their legs and the way the serpent would slither along on its stomach. This is also part of the curse formula.

it is dust that you will eat

“you will eat dust.” The words “it is dust” comes first to emphasize the contrast between the plants above the ground that other animals would eat and the dirty food on the ground that the serpent would eat. This is part of the curse formula.

ULT

14 Yahweh God said to the serpent, “Because you have done this, cursed are you alone among all the livestock and all the beasts of the field. It is on your stomach that you will go, and it is dust that you will eat all the days of your life.

UST

14 Then Yahweh God said to the snake, “Because you did this, of all the domestic animals and the wild animals, I will curse you alone. As a result, you and all other snakes will crawl on the ground on your bellies, and so what you eat will have dirt on it as long as you live.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- devour
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- devour
- walk, walked

Genesis 3:15

hostility between you and the woman

This means that the serpent and the woman would become enemies.

seed

The word “seed” refers to what a man puts into a woman to cause a baby to grow inside the woman. Like the word “offspring,” it can refer to more than one person. Try to find a word that is singular but can refer to more than one person.

He will bruise...his heel

The words “he” and “his” refer to the woman’s descendant. If “seed” was translated as plural, this can be translated as “they will bruise...their heel”; in this case, consider inserting footnotes to say that the “they” and “their” are used to translate a singular pronoun. (See: [Pronouns](#))

bruise

“crush” or “strike” or “attack”

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

ULT

15 I will put hostility between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed. He will bruise your head, and you will bruise his heel.”

UST

15 I will cause you and the woman to be enemies to each other, and I will cause your descendant and her descendant to be enemies toward each other. You will bite his heel, but he will crush your head.”

Genesis 3:16

I will greatly multiply your pain

"I will make your pain increase much" or "I will make your pain to be very severe"

in having children

"in giving birth to children" or "when you give birth to children"

Your desire will be for your husband

"You will have a strong desire for your husband." Possible meanings are 1) "You will want very much to be with your husband" or 2) "You will want to control your husband"

he will rule over you

"he will be your master" or "he will control you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [dominion](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dominion](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

16 To the woman he said, "I will greatly multiply your pain in having children; it is in pain that you will give birth to children. Your desire will be for your husband, but he will rule over you."

UST

16 Then Yahweh said to the woman, "I will make you have great pain when you give birth to children. You will want to be with your husband, but he will rule over you."

Genesis 3:17

Adam

The name Adam is the same as the Hebrew word for “man.” Some translations say “Adam” and some say “the man.” You may use either form as it refers to the same person.

you have listened to the voice of your wife

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “you have obeyed what your wife said” (See: [Idiom](#))

have eaten from the tree

You can say what it was that they ate. Alternate translation: “have eaten the fruit of the tree” or “have eaten some of the fruit of the tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You may not eat from it

“You must not eat from it” or “Do not eat its fruit”

cursed is the ground

The word “curse” comes first in the sentence to emphasize that the ground, which had been “good” ([Genesis 1:10](#)), was now under God’s curse. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am cursing the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

through painful work

“by doing hard work”

you will eat from it

The word “it” refers to the ground and is a metonym for the parts of the plants, which grow in the ground, that people eat. Alternate translation: “you will eat what grows from it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

17 To Adam he said, “Because you have listened to the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree, concerning which I commanded you, saying, ‘You may not eat from it,’ cursed is the ground because of you; through painful work you will eat from it all the days of your life.

UST

17 Then he said to the man, “You listened to what your wife said, and you ate some of the fruit of the tree about which I commanded you, ‘Do not eat it.’ So I will make it difficult to grow things in the ground because of what you did. You will have to work hard as long as you live to produce things from the ground to eat.

Genesis 3:18

the plants of the field

Possible meanings are 1) “the plants that you take care of in your fields” or 2) “the wild plants that grow in the open fields.”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

18 It will produce thorns and thistles for you, and you will eat the plants of the field.

UST

18 Thornbushes and thistle plants and other weeds will grow and prevent what you have planted from growing. And for food, you will have to eat things that just grow in your fields.

Genesis 3:19

By the sweat of your face

"By doing hard work that makes your face sweat"

you will eat bread

Here the word "bread" is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: "you will eat food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

until you return to the ground

"until you die and your body is put in the ground." In some cultures, they put the bodies of people who have died in a hole in the ground. Man's hard work does not end until the time of his death and burial.

For dust you are, and to dust you will return

"I made you from soil, so your body will become soil again." Translate both occurrences of "dust" with the same word in order to show that man begins and ends in the same condition.

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

19 By the sweat of your face you will eat bread, until you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken. For dust you are, and to dust you will return."

UST

19 All your life you will sweat as you work hard to produce food to eat. Then you will die, and your body will be buried in the ground. I made you from soil, so your body will become soil again."

Genesis 3:20

The man

Some translations say "Adam."

called his wife's name Eve

"gave his wife the name Eve" or "named his wife Eve"

Eve

Translators may write a footnote saying "The name Eve sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'living.'"

all the living

The word "living" refers to people. Alternate translation: "all people" or "all living people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

²⁰ The man called his wife's name Eve because she was the mother of all the living.

UST

²⁰ The man, whose name was Adam, named his wife Eve, which means "living," because she became the ancestor of all living people.

Genesis 3:21

garments of skins

“clothing made out of animal skins”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

ULT

²¹ Yahweh God made for Adam and for his wife garments of skins and clothed them.

UST

²¹ Then Yahweh God killed some animals and made clothes from their skins for Adam and his wife.

Genesis 3:22

the man

Possible meanings are 1) God was referring to one human, the man, or 2) God was referring to humans in general, so this would mean the man and his wife. Even if God was speaking about one person, what he said applied to both of them.

like one of us

"like us." The pronoun "us" is plural. See how you translated "Let us make" in [Genesis 1:26](#).

knowing good and evil

Here "good and evil" is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. See how you translated "knowledge of good and evil" in [Genesis 2:9](#). Alternate translation: "knowing everything, including both good and evil" (See: [Merism](#))

he must not be allowed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not allow him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tree of life

"the tree that gives people life." See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- devour

ULT

22 Yahweh God said, "Now the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil. So now he must not be allowed to reach out with his hand, take from the tree of life, eat it, and live forever."

UST

22 Then Yahweh God said, "Look! Those two have become like us because they know what is good to do and what is evil to do. So now, it will not be good if they reach out and pick and eat some of the fruit from the tree which enables people who eat it to live forever!"

Genesis 3:23

the ground from which he had been taken

“dirt because he had been taken from dirt.” This does not refer to the particular place on the land that the God took man from.

to cultivate

This means to what is needed so that plants grow well. See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²³ Therefore Yahweh God sent him out from the garden of Eden, to cultivate the ground from which he had been taken.

UST

²³ So Yahweh God drove out the man and his wife from the park of Eden. Yahweh God had created Adam from the ground, and he forced him to plow the ground.

Genesis 3:24

So God drove the man out of the garden

"God forced the man to leave the garden." This refers to the event in [Genesis 3:23](#), where it says "Yahweh God sent him out of the garden of Eden." God did not send the man out a second time.

in order to guard the way to the tree of life

"in order to stop people from going to the tree of life"

flaming sword

Possible meanings are 1) a sword that had flames coming from it or 2) a fire that was shaped like a sword. Languages that do not have swords could use another weapon such as a spear or arrow.

ULT

24 So God drove the man out of the garden, and he placed cherubim at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword that turned every way, in order to guard the way to the tree of life.

UST

24 After Yahweh God drove them out, on the east side of the park he placed cherubim and a flaming sword that flashed back and forth, in order to block the entrance, so that people could not go back to the tree that enables anyone who eats its fruit to live forever.

Genesis 4

Genesis 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Most of the text in this chapter is prose, but 4:23-24 is poetry. If the translator should put these two verses into poetic form, or at least into elegant speech, different from the rest of the chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Vengeance

The theme of vengeance is important in this chapter. Ancient Hebrew society allowed for people to seek revenge if a relative was murdered. After Cain murdered his brother Abel, he thought that he would be helpless against this danger because he had been driven away from God's protection. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

The theme of vengeance continues with the words of Lamech, who had killed someone for injuring him: "I have killed a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me. If Cain is avenged seven times as much, truly Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times as much" (Gen. 4:23b-24).

Genesis 4:1

The man knew Eve

This is a polite way of saying that the man had sexual relations with Eve. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. (See: [Euphemism](#))

The man

“the human being” or “Adam”

I have produced a man

The word for “man” typically describes an adult male, rather than a baby or child. If that would cause confusion, it could be translated as “manchild” or “boy” or “baby boy” or “son.”

Cain

Translators may want to include a footnote that says “The name Cain sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘produce.’ Eve named him Cain because she produced him.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹ The man knew Eve his wife and she conceived and gave birth to Cain. She said, “I have produced a man with Yahweh’s help.”

UST

¹ Adam slept with his wife Eve, and she became pregnant and gave birth to a son whom she named Cain, which means “produce,” because, she said, “By Yahweh’s help I have produced a son.”

Genesis 4:2

Then she gave birth

We do not know how much time passed between the births of Cain and Abel. They may have been twins, or Abel may have been born after Eve became pregnant again. If possible, use an expression that does not tell how much time passed.

cultivated

This means he did everything he needed to do so that the plants would grow well. See how “cultivate” is translated in [Genesis 2:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

² Then she gave birth to his brother Abel. Now Abel became a shepherd, but Cain cultivated the soil.

UST

² Some time later she gave birth to another son, and she named him Abel. After those boys grew up, Abel tended sheep and goats, and Cain became a farmer.

Genesis 4:3

It came about that

This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using that method here.

in the course of time

Possible meanings are 1) "after some time had passed" or 2) "at the right time"

fruit of the ground

This refers to the food that came from plants he had tended. Alternate translation: "crops" or "harvest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- grain offering

ULT

³ It came about that in the course of time Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground as an offering to Yahweh.

UST

³ One day it happened that Cain harvested some of the crops he had grown and brought them to Yahweh as a gift for him,

Genesis 4:4

some of the fat

This refers to the fatty parts of the lambs that he had killed, it was the best part of the animal. Alternate translation: “some of their fat parts” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

accepted

“looked favorably upon” or “was pleased with”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [grain offering](#)

ULT

⁴ As for Abel, he brought some of the firstborn of his flock and some of the fat. Yahweh accepted Abel and his offering,

UST

⁴ and Abel took from his flock some of the first lambs that had been born and killed them and, as a gift, gave to Yahweh the fatty parts, which were the best parts. Yahweh was pleased with Abel and his offering,

Genesis 4:5

did not accept

“did not look favorably upon” or “was not pleased with”

was very angry

Some languages have an idiom for anger such as “He burned” or “His anger burned.”

he scowled

This means that the expression on his face showed that he was angry or jealous. Some languages have an idiom that describes what a person’s face looks like when he is angry. (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁵ but Cain and his offering he did not accept. So Cain was very angry, and he scowled.

UST

⁵ but he was not pleased with Cain and his offering. So Cain became very angry, and his expression became unpleasant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face, facial](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Genesis 4:6

Why are you angry and why are you scowling?

God used these rhetorical questions to tell Cain that he was wrong to be angry and scowl. They may also have been intended to give Cain an opportunity to confess that he was wrong. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

⁶ Yahweh said to Cain, “Why are you angry and why are you scowling?”

UST

⁶ Yahweh said to Cain, “You should not be angry! You should not scowl like that!”

Genesis 4:7

If you...will you not be accepted?

God used this rhetorical question to remind Cain of something Cain should have already known. Alternate translation: "You know that if you do what is right, I will accept you" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But if you do not...you must rule over it

God speaks of sin as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "But if you do not do what is right, you will desire to sin even more, and then you will do sinful things. You must refuse to obey it" (See: [Personification](#))

sin crouches...to control you

Here sin is spoken of as a dangerous wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack Cain. Alternate translation: "you will become so angry that you will not be able to stop sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

sin

Languages that do not have a noun that means "sin" could translate this as "your desire to sin" or "the bad things you want to do."

you must rule over it

Yahweh speaks of Cain's desire to sin as if it were a person over whom Cain should rule. Alternate translation: "you must control it so you do not sin" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- dominion
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- dominion
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism

ULT

7 If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin crouches at the door and desires to control you, but you must rule over it."

UST

7 If you do what is right, I will accept you. But if you do not do what is right, the evil that you want to do will devour you, like a lion waiting outside your door to attack you. Your desire to sin wants to control you, but you must control it."

Genesis 4:8

Cain spoke to Abel his brother.

Some early translations tell explicitly what Cain said to his brother. You may want to do the same if it is present in your national version. Alternate translation: "Cain said to Abel his brother, 'Let us go into the fields.'" (See: [Textual Variants](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

brother

Abel was Cain's younger brother. Some languages may need to use the word for "younger brother." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

rose up against

Standing up to fight against a person is an idiom for attacking him. Alternate translation: "attacked" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother

ULT

⁸ Cain spoke to Abel his brother. It came about that while they were in the fields, Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him. ^[1]

UST

⁸ But one day, Cain said to his younger brother Abel, "Come with me to the fields." So they went together. And when they were in the countryside, suddenly Cain attacked his brother Abel and killed him.

Genesis 4:9

Where is Abel your brother

God knew that Cain had killed Abel, but he asked Cain this question so that Cain would have to answer. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Am I my brother's keeper?

Cain used this rhetorical question so that he would not have to tell the truth. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not my brother's keeper!" or "You know that taking care of my brother is not my job!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"

UST

⁹ Then, even though Yahweh knew what Cain had done, he said to Cain, "Do you know where Abel, your younger brother, is?" Cain replied, "No, I do not know. My job is not to guard my younger brother!"

Genesis 4:10

What have you done?

God uses a rhetorical question to rebuke Cain. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have done is terrible!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Your brother's blood is calling out to me

Abel's blood is a metonym for his death, as if it were a person calling out for God to punish Cain. Alternate translation: "Your brother's blood is like a person calling out to me to punish the person who killed him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- blood
- cry, cry out, outcry

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- blood
- cry, cry out, outcry

ULT

¹⁰ Yahweh said, "What have you done? Your brother's blood is calling out to me from the ground.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh said, "What you have done is terrible! Your brother's blood that has soaked into the ground convicts you of your guilt.

Genesis 4:11

Now cursed are you from the ground

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am cursing you so that you will not be able to grow food from the ground" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood

God speaks of the earth as if it were a person who could drink Abel's blood. Alternate translation: "which is soaked with your brother's blood" (See: [Personification](#))

from your hand

Here Cain is represented by his "hand," to emphasize that he personally had killed his brother. Alternate translation: "that spilled when you killed him" or "from you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

11 Now cursed are you from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand.

UST

11 You have killed your younger brother, and, now that the ground has soaked up your younger brother's blood, you are not welcome on it and your efforts to produce crops on it will fail.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [blood](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [blood](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [hand](#)

Genesis 4:12

cultivate

This means to do everything necessary to do so that the plants would grow well. See how “cultivate” is translated in [Genesis 2:5](#).

it will not yield to you its strength

The ground is personified as if it were a person who loses strength. Alternate translation: “the ground will not produce much food for you” (See: [Personification](#))

A fugitive and a wanderer

You can join these words together. Alternate translation: “A homeless wanderer” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

12 When you cultivate the ground, from now on it will not yield to you its strength. A fugitive and a wanderer you will be in the earth.”

UST

12 When you till the ground to plant crops, the ground will produce very little for you. You will continually wander around the earth, and not have any place to live permanently.”

Genesis 4:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- Yahweh

ULT

¹³ Cain said to Yahweh, “My punishment is greater than I can bear.

UST

¹³ Cain replied to Yahweh, “You are punishing me more than I can endure.

Genesis 4:14

I will be hidden from your face

The term “your face” represents God’s presence. Alternate translation: “I will not be able to speak to you” (See: [Idiom](#))

a fugitive and a wanderer

See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:12](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial

ULT

14 Indeed, you have driven me out this day from this ground, and I will be hidden from your face. I will be a fugitive and a wanderer in the earth, and whoever finds me will kill me.”

UST

14 You are about to expel me from the ground that I have been tilling, and I will no longer be able to come into your presence. Furthermore, I will be continually wandering around the earth with no place to live permanently, and anyone who sees me will kill me.”

Genesis 4:15

vengeance will be taken on him sevenfold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take vengeance on him seven times" or "I will punish that person seven times as severely as I am punishing you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

would not attack him

"would not kill Cain"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

15 Yahweh said to him, "If anyone kills Cain, vengeance will be taken on him sevenfold." Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain, so that if anyone found him, that person would not attack him.

UST

15 But Yahweh said to him, "No, that will not happen. I will put a mark on you to warn anyone who sees you that I will punish him severely if he kills you. I will punish that person seven times as severely as I am punishing you." Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain.

Genesis 4:16

went out from the presence of Yahweh

Even though Yahweh is everywhere, this idiom speaks of Cain as though he went far away. Alternate translation: "went away from where Yahweh spoke to him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Nod

Translators may add a footnote saying "The word Nod means 'wandering.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 So Cain went out from the presence of Yahweh and lived in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.

UST

16 So Cain left Yahweh and went to live in the land called Nod, which means 'wandering', which was east of Eden.

Genesis 4:17

Cain knew his wife

This is a polite way of saying that Cain had sexual relations with his wife. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

He built a city

“Cain built a city”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

17 Cain knew his wife and she conceived. She gave birth to Enoch. He built a city and named it after his son Enoch.

UST

17 Some time later, Cain slept with his wife, and she became pregnant and gave birth to a son, whom she named Enoch. Then Cain started to build a city, and he named the city ‘Enoch,’ the same name that his son had.

Genesis 4:18

To Enoch was born Irad

It is implied that Enoch grew up and married a woman. Alternate translation: "Enoch grew up and married and became the father of a son whom he named Irad" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Irad

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

18 To Enoch was born Irad. Irad became the father of Mehujael. Mehujael became the father of Methushael. Methushael became the father of Lamech.

UST

18 Enoch grew up and married and became the father of a son whom he named Irad. When Irad grew up he became the father of a son whom he named Mehujael. Mehujael grew up and became the father of a son whom he named Methushael. Methushael grew up and became the father of Lamech.

Genesis 4:19

Adah...Zillah

women's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)

ULT

19 Lamech took for himself two wives.
The name of the one was Adah, and the
name of the other was Zillah.

UST

19 When Lamech grew up he married
two women. The name of one was Adah
and the name of the other was Zillah.

Genesis 4:20

Adah

See how you translated this woman's name in [Genesis 4:19](#).

He was the father of those who lived in tents

Possible meanings are 1) "He was the first person to live in a tent" or 2) "He and his descendants lived in tents."

who lived in tents who have livestock

people who both live in tents and also take care of animals

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁰ Adah gave birth to Jabal. He was the father of those who lived in tents who have livestock.

UST

²⁰ Adah gave birth to a son named Jabal. Later, Jabal became the first person who lived in tents because he traveled from place to place to take care of livestock.

Genesis 4:21

He was the father of those who play the harp and pipe

Possible meanings are 1) "He was the first person to play the harp and pipe" or 2) "He and his descendants played the harp and pipe."

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²¹ His brother's name was Jubal. He was the father of those who play the harp and pipe.

UST

²¹ His younger brother's name was Jubal. He was the first person who made a lyre and a flute.

Genesis 4:22

Zillah

See how you translated this woman's name in [Genesis 4:19](#).

Tubal-Cain

the name of a man (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the forger of tools of bronze and iron

"who made tools out of bronze and iron"

iron

a very strong metal used to make tools and weapons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bronze](#)

ULT

²² As for Zillah, she bore Tubal-Cain, the forger of tools of bronze and iron. The sister of Tubal-Cain was Naamah.

UST

²² Lamech's other wife Zillah gave birth to a son whom she named Tubal-Cain. Later he learned how to make things out of bronze and iron. The name of Tubal-Cain's younger sister was Naamah.

Genesis 4:23

Adah...Zillah

See how you translated these women's names in [Genesis 4:19](#).

listen to my voice...listen to what I say

Lamech said the same thing twice for emphasis. His voice is a synecdoche for his whole person. Alternate translation: "listen carefully to me" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me

Lamech killed only one person. These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize the certainty of his action. Alternate translation: "a young man because he hurt me" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²³ Lamech said to his wives, "Adah and Zillah, listen to my voice; you wives of Lamech, listen to what I say. For I have killed a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me.

UST

²³ One day Lamech said to his two wives, "Adah and Zillah, my two wives, listen carefully to what I am saying. A young man struck me and wounded me, so I killed him.

Genesis 4:24**If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech**

Lamech knows that God will avenge Cain seven times. Alternate translation: "Since God will punish anyone who kills Cain seven times, Lamech" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

then Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whoever kills me, God will punish seventy-seven times" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

seventy-seven

77 (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

24 If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times."

UST

24 Yahweh said long ago that he would avenge and punish anyone who killed Cain seven times as much as he punished Cain. So if anyone tries to kill me, may he be punished seventy-seven times as much."

Genesis 4:25

Adam knew his wife

This is a polite way of saying that Adam had sexual relations with his wife. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

said, "God has given me another son

This is the reason that she named him Seth. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "explained, 'God has given me another child'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Seth

Translators may add a footnote that says "This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'has given.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- name
- seed, semen
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- name
- seed, semen
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁵ Adam knew his wife again, and she bore another son. She called his name Seth and said, "God has given me another son in the place of Abel, for Cain killed him."

UST

²⁵ Adam continued to sleep with his wife, and she again became pregnant and gave birth to another son, whom she named Seth. She said, "I name him Seth because God has given me another child to take the place of Abel, since Cain killed him."

Genesis 4:26

A son was born to Seth

This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Seth’s wife bore him a son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to call on the name of Yahweh

This is the first time people called God by the name Yahweh. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “to worship God by using the name Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

26 A son was born to Seth and he called his name Enosh. At that time people began to call on the name of Yahweh. 4:8 ^[1] The best ancient manuscripts have this text. However, some versions have *Cain said to Abel his brother, “Let us go into the fields.” It came about that while they were in the fields, Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him .*

UST

26 When Seth grew up, he became the father of a son whom he named Enosh. About that time people began to worship Yahweh.

Genesis 5

Genesis 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter provides the first of many lists of descendants in the Bible. This is not a simple list, because the author makes comments about each person. Translators should format this text in the way that is clearest in the project language. Many may choose to introduce each new person in a separate paragraph, as the ULT and UST do.

Genesis 5:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of the list of Adam's descendants.

in his own likeness

This phrase means that God made mankind to be like him. This verse does not tell in what ways God made people to be like himself. God does not have a body, so it does not mean that people would look like God. See how "after our likeness" is translated in [Genesis 1:26](#).

Alternate translation: "to truly be like us" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [generation](#)

ULT

¹ This is the record of the descendants of Adam. On the day that God created mankind, he made them in his own likeness.

UST

¹ This is a list of those who descended from Adam. When God created humans, he made them to be like him in many ways.

Genesis 5:2

when they were created

This can be made active. Alternate translation: “when he created them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

² Male and female he created them. He blessed them and named them mankind when they were created.

UST

² He created one man and one woman. He blessed them, and on the day that he created them, he called them 'human beings.'

Genesis 5:3

130

Translators may write the words “one hundred thirty.” (The ULT and the UST use numerals if the number has three or more words; they use words if a number has only one or two words.) (See: [Numbers](#))

he became the father of a son

“he had a son”

in his own likeness, after his image

These two phrases mean the same thing. They are used as a reminder that God made man in his own image. See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 1:26](#).

Seth

See how you translated this name in [Genesis 4:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³ When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth.

UST

³ When Adam was 130 years old, he became the father of a son who was just like him. That was the son he named Seth.

Genesis 5:4

eight hundred

Translators may write the numerals "800." (The ULT and the UST use numerals if the number has three or more words; they use words if a number has only one or two words.) (See: [Numbers](#))

He became the father of more sons and daughters

"He had more sons and daughters"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴ After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

⁴ After Seth was born, Adam lived eight hundred more years, and during those years he became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:5

then he died

This phrase will be repeated throughout the chapter. Use the ordinary word for "died."

Adam lived 930 years

"Adam lived nine hundred and thirty years." People used to live a very long time. Use your ordinary word for "years." Alternate translation: "Adam lived a total of 930 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

ULT

⁵ Adam lived 930 years, and then he died.

UST

⁵ Adam lived 930 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:6

105 years

“one hundred and five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

he became the father of Enosh

Here “father” means his actual father, not his grandfather. Alternate translation: “he had his son Enosh”

Enosh

This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

⁶ When Seth had lived 105 years, he became the father of Enosh.

UST

⁶ When Seth was 105 years old, he became the father of Enosh.

Genesis 5:7

807 years

“eight hundred and seven years” (See: [Numbers](#))

and became the father of more sons and daughters

“and had more sons and daughters”

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁷ After he became the father of Enosh, he lived 807 years and became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

⁷ After Enosh was born, Seth lived 807 more years, and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:8

Seth lived 912 years

"Seth lived nine hundred and twelve years." Seth lived a total of 912 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

then he died

This phrase is repeated throughout the chapter. Use the ordinary word for "died."

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

⁸ Seth lived 912 years, and then he died.

UST

⁸ Seth lived 912 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:9

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

ninety years

“90 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

⁹ When Enosh had lived ninety years, he became the father of Kenan.

UST

⁹ When Enosh was ninety years old, he became the father of Kenan.

Genesis 5:10

815 years

“eight hundred and fifteen years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁰ After he became the father of Kenan, Enosh lived 815 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁰ After Kenan was born, Enosh lived 815 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:11

905 years

“nine hundred and give years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

11 Enosh lived 905 years, and then he died.

UST

11 Enosh lived 905 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:12

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

seventy years

“70 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

¹² When Kenan had lived seventy years, he became the father of Mahalalel.

UST

¹² When Kenan was seventy years old, he became the father of Mahalalel.

Genesis 5:13

840 years

“eight hundred and forty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹³ After he became the father of Mahalalel, Kenan lived 840 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

¹³ After Mahalalel was born, Kenan lived 840 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:14

910 years

“nine hundred and ten years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

¹⁴ Kenan lived 910 years, and then he died.

UST

¹⁴ Kenan lived 910 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:15

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

¹⁵ When Mahalalel had lived sixty-five years, he became the father of Jared.

UST

¹⁵ When Mahalalel was sixty-five years old, he became the father of Jared.

Genesis 5:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁶ After he became the father of Jared, Mahalalel lived 830 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁶ After Jared was born, Mahalalel lived 830 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

¹⁷ Mahalalel lived 895 years, and then he died.

UST

¹⁷ Mahalalel lived 895 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:18

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

18 When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch.

UST

18 When Jared was 162 years old, he became the father of Enoch.

Genesis 5:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁹ After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁹ Jared lived eight hundred years after Enoch was born, and he became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²⁰ Jared lived 962 years, and then he died.

UST

²⁰ Jared lived 962 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:21

he became the father of Methuselah

“he had his son Methuselah”

Methuselah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

²¹ When Enoch had lived sixty-five years, he became the father of Methuselah.

UST

²¹ When Enoch was sixty-five years old, he became the father of Methuselah.

Genesis 5:22

Enoch walked with God

To walk with someone is a metaphor for being in a close relationship with him. Alternate translation: “Enoch had a close relationship with God” or “Enoch lived in union with God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He became the father of more sons and daughters

“He had more sons and daughters”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²² Enoch walked with God three hundred years after he became the father of Methuselah. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

²² Enoch lived in close fellowship with God for three hundred years after Methuselah was born, and he became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:23

Enoch lived 365 years

“Enoch lived three hundred and sixty-five years.” Enoch lived a total of 365 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

²³ Enoch lived 365 years.

UST

²³ Enoch lived 365 years.

Genesis 5:24

then he was gone

The word “he” refers to Enoch. He was no longer on earth.

for God took him

This means that God took Enoch to be with himself (God).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God

ULT

24 Enoch walked with God, and then he was gone, for God took him.

UST

24 He was in close fellowship with God, and one day he disappeared, because God took him away to be with him.

Genesis 5:25

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Lamech

This Lamech is different from the Lamech in [Genesis 4:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

²⁵ When Methuselah had lived 187 years, he became the father of Lamech.

UST

²⁵ When Methuselah was 187 years old, he became the father of Lamech.

Genesis 5:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

²⁶ After he became the father of Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

²⁶ Methuselah lived 782 years after Lamech was born, and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²⁷ Methuselah lived 969 years. Then he died.

UST

²⁷ Methuselah lived 969 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:28

182 years

“one hundred and eighty-two years” (See: [Numbers](#))

became the father of a son

“had a son”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

²⁸ When Lamech had lived 182 years, he became the father of a son.

UST

²⁸ When Lamech was 182 years old, he became the father of a son,

Genesis 5:29

Noah

Translators may want to add a footnote that says: "This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'rest.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from our work and from the painful labor of our hands

Lamech says the same thing twice to emphasize how hard the work was. Alternate translation: "from working so hard with our hands" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- curse, cursed, cursing
- hand
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- name
- curse, cursed, cursing
- hand
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

29 He called his name Noah, saying, "This one will give us rest from our work and from the painful labor of our hands, which we must do because of the ground that Yahweh has cursed."

UST

29 whom he named Noah, because, as he said, "He will bring us relief from all the hard work we have been doing to produce food from the ground that Yahweh cursed."

Genesis 5:30

595 years

“five hundred and ninety-five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

³⁰ Lamech lived 595 years after he became the father of Noah. He became the father of more sons and daughters.

UST

³⁰ Lamech lived 595 years after Noah was born and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:31

Lamech lived 777 years

“Lamech lived seven hundred seventy-seven years.” Lamech lived a total of 777 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

31 Lamech lived 777 years. Then he died.

UST

31 Lamech lived 777 years altogether, and then he died.

Genesis 5:32

he became the father of

“he had his sons.” This does not tell us whether the sons were born on the same day or in different years.

Shem, Ham, and Japheth

These sons may not be listed in the order of their birth. There is disagreement about which one was the oldest. Avoid translating this in a way that implies that the list is in the order of their ages.

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³² After Noah had lived five hundred years, he became the father of Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

UST

³² When Noah was five hundred years old, he became the father of sons whom he named Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

Genesis 6

Genesis 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Beginning in 6:22, the author gives statements summarizing events he tells about again in the text that follows. In the next chapter, the author sometimes gives summary statements that introduce events for the first time. If these statements, and the surrounding events, are not carefully translated, readers can believe that the same events happened twice or three times instead of only one time. Translators should be careful not to give this impression.

Genesis 6:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

daughters were born to them

This can be active. Alternate translation: "the women bore daughters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)

ULT

¹ It came about when mankind began to multiply on the earth and daughters were born to them,

UST

¹ When people began to become very numerous all over the earth, and many daughters were born to them,

Genesis 6:2

sons of God

Translators could add a footnote saying: "It is not clear whether this refers to heavenly beings or human beings. In either case, they were beings that God created." Some believe these words refer to angels who rebelled against God, that is, evil spirits or demons. Others think this may refer to powerful political rulers, and others think this may refer to the descendants of Seth.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

² that the sons of God saw that the daughters of mankind were attractive. They took for themselves wives, any of them that they chose.

UST

² some of the heavenly beings saw that the human women were very beautiful. So they took whichever ones they chose to become their wives.

Genesis 6:3

My spirit

Here Yahweh is talking about himself and his spirit, which is the Spirit of God.

flesh

This means that they have physical bodies that will one day die.

They will live 120 years

"They will live one hundred and twenty years." Possible meanings are 1) the normal lifespan of people would decrease to 120 years.

Alternate translation: "They will not live more than 120 years" or 2) in 120 years everyone would die. Alternate translation: "They will live only 120 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³ Yahweh said, "My spirit will not remain in mankind forever, for they are flesh. They will live 120 years."

UST

³ Then Yahweh said, "My breath will not remain in people forever, to keep them alive. They are made of weak flesh. They will live not more than 120 years before they die."

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Genesis 6:4

Giants

very tall, large people

This happened when

"The giants were born because"

sons of God

See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:2](#).

These were the mighty men of old

"These giants were the mighty men who lived long ago" or "These children grew to become the powerful fighters who lived long ago"

mighty men

men who are courageous and victorious in battle

men of renown

"famous men"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

⁴ Giants were on the earth in those days, and also afterward. This happened when the sons of God married daughters of men, and they had children with them. These were the mighty men of old, men of renown.

UST

⁴ When these heavenly beings slept with human women, they gave birth to children. These were the giants who lived on the earth at that time and also later. These giants were heroic fighters; they were famous men from long ago.

Genesis 6:5

every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts

“everything their hearts wanted to think about”

the thoughts of their hearts

The writer speaks of the heart as if it were the part of the body that thinks. Your language may use a word other than “heart” to talk about the part of people that thinks. Alternate translation: “their inner, secret thoughts” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

ULT

⁵ Yahweh saw that the wickedness of mankind was great in the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts was only evil continually.

UST

⁵ Yahweh saw that people on the earth had become very wicked, and everything they thought in their inner beings was evil continually.

Genesis 6:6

it grieved him to his heart

The writer speaks of the heart as if it were the part of the body that feels sadness. Your language may use a word other than “heart” to talk about the emotions. Alternate translation: “he was very, very sad about it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶ Yahweh regretted that he had made mankind on the earth, and it grieved him to his heart.

UST

⁶ Yahweh was sorry that he had made people on the earth and it made him sad.

Genesis 6:7

I will wipe away mankind...from the surface of the earth

The writer speaks of God killing people as if God were wiping dirt off a flat surface. Alternate translation: "I will destroy mankind...so that there will not be any people on the earth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created

Some languages would need to translate this as two sentences. Alternate translation: "I created mankind. I will wipe them away" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

wipe away

"completely destroy." Here "wipe away" is used in a negative sense, for God is talking about destroying the people because of their sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [blot out, wipe out](#)
- [beast](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [blot out, wipe out](#)
- [beast](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

ULT

⁷ So Yahweh said, "I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth; both mankind and the larger animals, and creeping things and birds of the heavens, for I am sorry that I have made them."

UST

⁷ So Yahweh said, "I will completely destroy the people I made. I will also destroy all the larger animals and the creatures that move close to the ground and the birds. None of them will remain on the earth, because I regret that I made them."

Genesis 6:8

Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “Yahweh looked favorably on Noah” or “Yahweh was pleased with Noah” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh

ULT

⁸ But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.

UST

⁸ But Yahweh was pleased with Noah.

Genesis 6:9

General Information:

This begins the story of Noah, which continues into chapter 9.

These were the events concerning Noah

“This is the account of Noah”

walked with God

See how you translated this in [Genesis 5:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- God
- walk, walked
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- God
- walk, walked
- generation

ULT

⁹ These were the events concerning Noah. Noah was a righteous man, and blameless among the people of his time. Noah walked with God.

UST

⁹ This is what happened: Noah was a man whose behavior was always righteous. No one who lived at that time could criticize him about anything. Noah lived in close fellowship with God.

Genesis 6:10

Noah became the father of three sons

“Noah had three sons” or “Noah’s wife had three sons”

Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Translators may add the following footnote: “The sons are not listed in the order in which they were born.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

¹⁰ Noah became the father of three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

UST

¹⁰ Noah became the father of three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

Genesis 6:11

The earth

Possible meanings are 1) the people who lived on the earth or 2) "The earth itself." (See: [Metonymy](#))

was corrupt

The people doing what is evil is spoken of as if they were food that has become rotten. Alternate translation: "was rotten" or "was completely evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

before God

Possible meanings are 1) "in God's sight" or 2) "in the presence of Yahweh" as in [Genesis 4:16](#).

and it was filled with violence

The writer speaks of violence as if it were something that could be put into a container and of the earth as a container. Alternate translation: "and there were very many violent people on the earth" or "because it was full of people who did evil things to each other" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

Translation Words - UST

- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

ULT

11 The earth was corrupt before God, and it was filled with violence.

UST

11 God could see that everyone else on earth was very wicked, and everywhere on the earth, people were acting cruelly and violently toward each other.

Genesis 6:12

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

all flesh

Possible meanings for what “all flesh” represents are 1) all human beings or 2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

had corrupted their way

How a person behaves is spoken of as if it were a way or road. Alternate translation: “had stopped living the way God wanted” or “had behaved in an evil way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

12 God saw the earth; behold, it was corrupt, for all flesh had corrupted their way upon the earth.

UST

12 God looked at everyone and saw how evil people were, because all people on the earth had begun to behave in an evil way.

Genesis 6:13

all flesh

See how you translated these words in [Genesis 6:12](#).

the earth is filled with violence through them

“people everywhere on earth are violent”

I will destroy them with the earth

“I will destroy both them and the earth” or “I will destroy them when I destroy the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

13 God said to Noah, “I can see that it is time to put an end to all flesh, for the earth is filled with violence through them. Indeed, I will destroy them with the earth.

UST

13 So God said to Noah, “I have decided to destroy all people, because all over the earth people are acting violently toward each other. So I am about to get rid of them as well as everything else on the earth.

Genesis 6:14

an ark

This refers to a very large box that would be able to float on water even in a very bad storm. “a large boat” or “a ship” or “a barge”

cypress wood

People do not know exactly what kind of tree this was. “wood used for building boats” or “good wood”

cover it with pitch

The reason for doing this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “spread pitch on it” or “paint tar on it” or “cover it with pitch to make it waterproof” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pitch

This is a thick, sticky or oily liquid that people put on the outside of a boat to stop water from going through gaps in the wood into the boat.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

14 Make for yourself an ark of cypress wood. Make rooms in the ark, and cover it with pitch within and without.

UST

14 Make for yourself a large boat from cypress wood. Make rooms inside it. Cover the outside and the inside with tar to make it waterproof.

Genesis 6:15

cubits

A cubit was a unit of measure, a little less than half a meter long.
(See: [Biblical Distance](#))

three hundred cubits

"138 meters." You may use the Hebrew measuring units from the ULT or the metric units from the UST or your own culture's units if you know how they compare to the metric units. You may also write a footnote that says: "Three hundred cubits is about 138 meters."
(See: [Biblical Distance](#))

fifty cubits

"twenty-three meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

thirty cubits

"fourteen meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

ULT

15 This is how you will make it: The length of the ark is to be three hundred cubits; the breadth of it is to be fifty cubits, and the height of it is to be thirty cubits.

UST

15 This is how you must make it: It must be 138 meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high.

Genesis 6:16

a roof for the ark

This was probably a peaked or slanted roof. Its purpose was to protect everything in the ark from the rain.

cubit

A cubit was a little less than half a meter long. See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:15](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a lower, a second, and a third deck

“a lower deck, a middle deck, and an upper deck” or “three decks inside”

deck

“floor” or “level”

Translation Words - ULT

- [consume](#), [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [consume](#), [devour](#)

ULT

16 Make a roof for the ark, and finish it at a cubit from the top of the side. Place a door in the side of the ark and make a lower, a second, and a third deck.

UST

16 Make a roof for the boat. Leave a space of about half a meter between the sides and the roof to let air and light enter. Make it with three decks inside, and put a door in one side.

Genesis 6:17

Listen

God said this in order to emphasize that he would do what he was about to say. "Pay attention" or "Listen to what I am saying"

I am about to bring the flood of waters

In some languages it may be better to say "to send" instead of "to bring. It is also possible to avoid the direction and say "to cause." Alternate translation: "I am about to send a flood of waters" or "I am about to cause a flood" (See: [Go and Come](#))

all flesh

Here "flesh" represents all physical beings, including humans and animals. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that has in it the breath of life

Here "breath" represents life. Alternate translation: "that lives" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

17 Listen, I am about to bring the flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh that has in it the breath of life from under heaven. Everything that is on the earth will die.

UST

17 Listen carefully! I am about to bring a flood that will destroy everything that lives beneath the sky. Everything on the earth will die.

Genesis 6:18

establish my covenant with you

“make a covenant between you and me”

with you

with Noah

You will come into the ark

“You will enter the ark.” Some translations say “You will go into the ark.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- covenant

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- covenant

ULT

18 But I will establish my covenant with you. You will come into the ark, you, and your sons, and your wife, and your sons' wives with you.

UST

18 But I will make my covenant with you. You and your wife, your sons and their wives will enter the boat.

Genesis 6:19

Of every living creature of all flesh, two of every kind you must bring into the ark

“You must bring into the ark two of every kind of living creature”

creature

an animal God created

all flesh

See how you translated these words in [Genesis 6:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- flesh

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- flesh

ULT

19 Of every living creature of all flesh, two of every kind you must bring into the ark, to keep them alive with you, both male and female.

UST

19 You must also bring two of all living creatures, a male and a female, into the boat with you, so that they also may remain alive.

Genesis 6:20

after their kind

“of each different kind”

creeping thing of the ground

This refers to small animals that move on the ground .

two of every sort

This refers to two of every kind of bird and animal.

to you

This refers to Noah and so is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

to keep them alive

“so you can keep them alive”

ULT

²⁰ Of the birds after their kind, and of the larger animals after their kind, of every creeping thing of the ground after its kind, two of every sort will come to you, to keep them alive.

UST

²⁰ Two of every kind of creature will come to you in order for you to keep them alive. They will include two of each kind of bird and two of each kind of larger animal and two of each kind of creature that moves close to the ground.

Genesis 6:21

yourself...you

These refer to Noah and are singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

food that is eaten

“food that people and animals eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)

ULT

21 Gather for yourself every kind of food that is eaten and store it, so that it will be food for you and for them.”

UST

21 You must also take some of every kind of food that you and all these creatures will need, and store it in the boat.”

Genesis 6:22

So Noah did this. According to all that God commanded him, so he did

These two sentences mean the same thing. The second sentence explains the first and emphasizes that Noah obeyed God. These parallel sentences can be combined into one. Alternate translation: "So Noah did everything that God commanded him to do" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²² So Noah did this. According to all that God commanded him, so he did.

UST

²² So Noah did everything that God told him to do.

Genesis 7

Genesis 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, the author continues his pattern of statements that summarize events already described, and of repeating events that have already happened. Again, careful translation is necessary so that readers do not think that the same events happened more than one time in the story. Special attention in this regard should be given to 7:5,10,13, and 17.

Special concepts in this chapter

Clean animals and birds

Noah sacrificed to Yahweh some of the “clean” animals and birds that he had with him (8:20). These were animals and birds that the Hebrew people would later consider to be fit to eat and to sacrifice to God. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

Water underneath and over the earth

The flood is presented as occurring because of rain pouring out of the sky and because of seawater rising from under the earth. This is because the ancient Hebrews pictured the earth as resting on top of the sea. They also pictured the sky as containing water above the earth that poured down through windows in the sky when God allowed it to rain. Translators should not try to change this picture in order to suit what readers believe about the world. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Genesis 7:1

General Information:

The events in this chapter take place after Noah built the ark, gathered the food, and put it in the ark.

Come...into the ark

"Enter...into the ark." Many translations read "Go...into the ark." (See: [Go and Come](#))

you

The word "you" refers to Noah and is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your household

"your family"

righteous before me

This means that God saw Noah as righteous.

in this generation

This refers to all the people who were living at that time. Alternate translation: "among all the people who are now living"

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹ Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark, for I have seen that you are righteous before me in this generation."

UST

¹ Then Yahweh said to Noah, "I have seen that from all the people who are now living, you alone always act righteously. So I want you and all your family to go into the boat."

Genesis 7:2

you will bring

“take.” Many translations read “you will take.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

clean animal

This was an animal that God allowed his people to eat and to sacrifice.

animals that are not clean

These were animals that God did not allow people to eat or to sacrifice.

Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)

ULT

² Of every clean animal you will bring with you seven males and seven females. From the animals that are not clean, of them bring two, the male and his mate.

UST

² Take with you seven pairs of every kind of animal that I have said I will accept for sacrifices. Take seven males and seven females. Also take one male and one female from every kind of animal that I have said that I will not accept for sacrifices.

Genesis 7:3

to preserve their offspring

“so that they will have offspring that will live” or “so that, after the flood, animals will continue to live”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- seed, semen
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- seed, semen
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³ Also of the birds of the sky, bring seven males and seven females, to preserve their offspring upon the surface of all the earth.

UST

³ Also take seven pairs of every kind of bird from to keep their descendants alive all over the earth.

Genesis 7:4

forty days and forty nights

This was a full forty days. It was not a total of eighty days. Alternate translation: "forty days and nights"

living

This refers to physical life.

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁴ For in seven days I will cause it to rain upon the earth for forty days and forty nights. I will destroy from off the surface of the ground every living thing that I have made."

UST

⁴ Do this because seven days from now I will cause rain to fall on the earth. It will rain constantly for forty days and nights. In this way, I will destroy everything that I have made that is on the earth."

Genesis 7:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁵ Noah did all that Yahweh commanded him.

UST

⁵ Noah did everything that Yahweh told him to do.

Genesis 7:6

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

came upon the earth

“happened” or “came on the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.

UST

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came on the earth.

Genesis 7:7

because of the waters of the flood

“because of the flood that would come” or “to escape the flood water”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.

UST

⁷ Before it started to rain, Noah and his wife and his sons and his sons' wives all went into the boat to escape from the flood water.

Genesis 7:8

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

clean animals

These were animals that God allowed people to eat and to give to him as sacrifices.

unclean animals

These were animals that God did not allow people to eat or to give to him as sacrifices.

Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)

ULT

⁸ Clean animals and unclean animals, birds, and everything that creeps upon the ground,

UST

⁸ Pairs of animals, those that God said that he would accept for sacrifices and those that he would not accept for sacrifices, and pairs of birds and pairs of all the kinds of creatures that move close to the ground,

Genesis 7:9

two by two

The animals entered the boat in pairs of one male and one female.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- God

ULT

⁹ two by two, male and female, came to Noah and went into the ark, just as God had commanded Noah.

UST

⁹ males and females, came to Noah and then went into the boat, just as God told Noah that they would do.

Genesis 7:10

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story: the start of the flood. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

after the seven days

“after seven days” or “seven days later”

the waters of the flood came upon the earth

The implicit information, “it started to rain” can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “it started to rain and the waters of the flood came upon the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁰ It came about that after the seven days, the waters of the flood came upon the earth.

UST

¹⁰ After seven days had ended, it started to rain and a flood began to cover the earth.

Genesis 7:11

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

In the six hundredth year of Noah's life

"When Noah was 600 years old" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month

Since Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the second month of the Hebrew calendar. But this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

on the same day

This refers to the specific day when the rain began. This phrase emphasizes how all of these major events happened quickly when the time arrived.

the fountains of the great deep burst open

"water from under the earth rushed up to the earth's surface"

the great deep

This refers to the sea that was thought to be under the earth.

the windows of heaven were opened

This refers to rain. It describes the sky as a ceiling that keeps the waters above it from falling down to the earth. When the windows, or doors, in the sky were opened, the water came down through them. Alternate translation: "the sky opened" or "the doors in the sky opened"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

ULT

11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on the same day, all the fountains of the great deep burst open, and the windows of heaven were opened.

UST

11 When Noah was six hundred years old, on the seventeenth day of the second month, all the water that is under the surface of the earth burst out, and it began to rain so hard that it was as though a dam in the sky burst open.

Genesis 7:12

rain

If your language has a word for a great amount of rain, it would be appropriate here.

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹² The rain began and fell on the earth for forty days and forty nights.

UST

¹² Rain fell on the earth constantly for forty days and nights.

Genesis 7:13

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

On that very same day

“On that exact day.” This refers to the day that the rain started. Verses 13-16 tell what Noah did immediately before the rain began.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

13 On that very same day Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, entered into the ark.

UST

13 On the day that it started to rain, Noah went into the boat with his wife, and his three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and their wives.

Genesis 7:14

wild animal...livestock...creeping thing...bird

These four groups are listed to show that every kind of animal was included. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:24](#).

creeping thing

This refers to animals that crawl on the ground, like rodents, insects, lizards, and snakes.

according to its kind

“so that each kind of animal will produce more of its own kind.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

14 They entered along with each wild animal according to its kind, and each sort of livestock according to its kind, and each creeping thing that creeps upon the earth according to its kind, and every sort of bird according to its kind, each kind of creature with wings.

UST

14 They and some of every kind of wild animal, and every kind of domestic animal, and every kind of creature that moves close to the ground, and every kind of bird, and every other creature that has wings, all entered the boat.

Genesis 7:15

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

Two of all flesh

Here “flesh” represents animals. (See: [Metonymy](#))

in which was the breath of life

Here “breath” represents life. Alternate translation: “that lived” (See: [Metonymy](#))

came to Noah

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

of all flesh

Here “flesh” represents animals. Alternate translation: “of every kind of animal” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Two of all flesh in which was the breath of life came to Noah and entered into the ark.

UST

¹⁵ Pairs of all creatures that breathed came to Noah and entered the boat.

Genesis 7:16

after them

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “after they entered the ark” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 The animals that went in were male and female of all flesh; they entered in just as God had commanded him. Then Yahweh shut the door after them.

UST

16 There were a male and a female of each creature that came to Noah, just as God had said they would do. After they were all in the boat, Yahweh shut the door.

Genesis 7:17

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

the water increased

“the water became very deep.” This happened during the forty days while the water kept coming.

lifted the ark

“it caused the ark to float”

raised it above the earth

“causes the ark to rise up high over the ground” or “he ark floated on top of the deep water”

Translation Words - ULT

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

17 Then the flood came upon the earth for forty days, and the water increased and lifted the ark and raised it above the earth.

UST

17 For forty days the water kept coming and the flood increased and lifted the boat up above the ground.

Genesis 7:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁸ The waters completely covered over the earth, and the ark floated upon the surface of the water.

UST

¹⁸ The rushing water rose higher and higher on the earth, and the boat floated on the surface of the water.

Genesis 7:19

The waters rose greatly on the earth

"The water totally overwhelmed the earth"

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁹ The waters rose greatly on the earth so that all the high mountains that were under the entire sky were covered.

UST

¹⁹ The water rushed higher and higher all over the earth until it covered all the mountains and everything under heaven.

Genesis 7:20

fifteen cubits

“six meters.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:15](#).

ULT

²⁰ The waters rose fifteen cubits above the tops of the mountains.

UST

²⁰ Even the highest mountains were covered by more than six meters of water.

Genesis 7:21

moved upon

“moved about” or “roamed”

all the living creatures that lived in great numbers upon the earth

This refers to all the animals that move around on the ground in large groups.

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- livestock, animals
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- livestock, animals
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

21 All living beings that moved upon the earth died—birds, livestock, wild animals, all the living creatures that lived in great numbers upon the earth, and all mankind.

UST

21 As a result, every living being on the surface of the earth died. That included the birds, the domestic animals, the wild animals, and all the other creatures that move around on the ground, as well as all the people.

Genesis 7:22

who breathed the breath of life through their noses

Here “noses” represent the whole animal or human. Alternate translation: “everyone that breathed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the breath of life

The words “breath” and “life” represent the power that causes people and animals to be alive. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#), [spiritual](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit](#), [spiritual](#)

ULT

²² All living creatures who lived on the land, who breathed the breath of life through their noses, died.

UST

²² Everything that breathed, that was a creature of the land, died.

Genesis 7:23

So every living thing...was wiped out

If necessary, this can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So every living thing...perished" or "So the flood completely destroyed every living thing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They were all destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God destroyed them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the earth

"so they were no longer on the earth"

those with him

"the people and animals that were with him"

were left

"remained" or "lived" or "remained alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [beast](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [beast](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

²³ So every living thing that was on the surface of the earth was wiped out, from mankind to the larger animals, to creeping things, and to birds of the sky. They were all destroyed from the earth. Only Noah and those with him in the ark were left.

UST

²³ In this way every living thing on the earth perished—the people, the larger animals, the creatures that crawl, and the birds. The only ones that remained alive were Noah and those who were in the boat with him.

Genesis 7:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁴ The waters stayed upon the earth for a hundred and fifty days.

UST

²⁴ The waters remained at full flood like that on the earth for 150 days.

Genesis 8

Genesis 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 8:22, which is part of what Yahweh was telling Noah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Flood waters

The waters receded after this great flood. Because there was so much water, and it came from God, it is described in a unique way.

The mountains of Ararat

It is unclear where Ararat was located. Many people believe it is located in the modern country of Turkey.

Genesis 8:1

considered Noah

“remembered Noah” or “decided to help Noah”

ark

This refers to a very large box that would be able to float on water even in a very bad storm. See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:14](#). Alternate translation: “a large boat” or “a ship” or “a barge”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹ God considered Noah, all the wild animals, and all the livestock that were with him in the ark. God made a wind blow over the earth, and the waters started going down.

UST

¹ But God did not forget about Noah, or about all the wild animals and all the kinds of domestic animals that were with him in the boat. So one day God sent a wind to blow across the earth, and the wind caused the water to begin to recede.

Genesis 8:2

The fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were closed

“The water stopped coming out of the ground and the rain stopped falling.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God closed the fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

fountains of the deep

“water from under the earth.” See how this is translated in [Genesis 7:11](#).

the windows of heaven were closed

This refers to the rain stopping. It describes the sky as a ceiling that keeps the waters above it from falling down to the earth. When the windows, or doors, in the sky were closed, the water stopped coming through them. See how “the windows of heaven” is translated in [Genesis 7:11](#). Alternate translation: “the sky closed” or “the doors in the sky closed”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)
- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)
- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

ULT

² The fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were closed, and it stopped raining.

UST

² God caused the water that was under the earth to stop bursting out, and he caused the floodgates of water from the sky to close so that it stopped raining.

Genesis 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- return

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- return

ULT

³ The flood waters went down slowly from the earth, and after the end of a hundred and fifty days the waters had gone down.

UST

³ The water on the earth gradually receded. By one hundred fifty days after the flood began, much of the water was gone.

Genesis 8:4

came to rest

“landed” or “stopped on solid ground”

in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month

Because Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)

ULT

⁴ The ark came to rest in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, upon the mountains of Ararat.

UST

⁴ On the seventeenth day of the seventh month, the boat came to rest on one of the mountains in the region of Ararat.

Genesis 8:5

tenth month

Because Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

On the first day of the month

“On the first day of the tenth month”

appeared

This can be made more explicit: “appeared above the surface of the water.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [new moon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [new moon](#)

ULT

⁵ The waters continued to go down until the tenth month. On the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains appeared.

UST

⁵ The water continued to recede until, on the first day of the tenth month of that year, the tops of other mountains became visible.

Genesis 8:6

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. Alternate translation: "It happened that"

It came about...the window of the ark which he had made

The phrase "which he had made" tells about the window. Some languages may need to make this phrase a separate sentence: "Noah had made a window in the boat. It came about after forty days that he opened the window" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

ULT

⁶ It came about after forty days that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made.

UST

⁶ Forty days later, Noah opened the window that he had made in the side of the boat, and sent out a raven.

Genesis 8:7

raven

a black bird that eats mainly the flesh of dead animals

it flew back and forth

This means that the raven kept leaving the boat and returning.

until the waters were dried up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “until the wind dried up the waters” or “until the waters dried up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [return](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [return](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

⁷ He sent out a raven and it flew back and forth until the waters were dried up from the earth.

UST

⁷ The raven flew back and forth to and from the boat until the water dried up from the surface of the ground.

Genesis 8:8

he sent out a dove

If you use masculine pronouns for the word “dove,” you may need to insert Noah’s name here to avoid confusion: “Noah sent out a dove.”

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

ULT

⁸ Then he sent out a dove to see if the waters had gone down from the surface of the earth,

UST

⁸ Then Noah sent out a dove to find out if the water had all receded from the surface of the ground.

Genesis 8:9

to rest her foot

“to land” or “to perch.” It means to land on something in order to rest from flying.

her foot...she returned...and brought her

The word “dove” is feminine in the author’s language. You could translate these phrases with the pronouns “its...it...it” or “his...he...him,” depending on how your language refers to a dove.

he...him

If you use masculine pronouns for the word “dove,” you may need to insert Noah’s name here to avoid confusion: “Noah sent out a dove,” “Noah stretched forth his hand,” etc.

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

ULT

⁹ but the dove found no place to rest her foot, and she returned to him in the ark, for the waters were still covering the whole earth. He reached out with his hand, and took and brought her into the ark with him.

UST

⁹ But the dove did not find any place to perch, so it flew back to Noah in the boat, because there was still water all over the surface of the earth. So Noah reached out his hand and took the dove back inside the boat.

Genesis 8:10

He waited another seven days

“He again waited for seven days”

ULT

¹⁰ He waited another seven days and again he sent out the dove from the ark.

UST

¹⁰ Noah waited seven more days. Then he sent the dove out of the boat again.

Genesis 8:11

Look

“Pay attention” or “This is important”

a freshly plucked olive leaf

“a leaf that she had just plucked from an olive tree”

plucked

“broken off”

Translation Words - ULT

- olive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- olive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 The dove returned to him in the evening. Look! In her mouth was a freshly plucked olive leaf. So Noah knew that the waters had gone down from the earth.

UST

11 This time the dove returned to him in the evening and, surprisingly, there was a leaf from an olive tree that the dove had just plucked in its beak. Then Noah knew that the water had truly receded from the surface of the ground.

Genesis 8:12

She did not return again to him

If people would not understand, you could state the reason explicitly:
 "She did not return again to him because she found a place to land."
 (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

ULT

12 He waited another seven days, and sent out the dove again. She did not return again to him.

UST

12 Noah waited again seven more days. Then he sent the dove out again, but this time it did not return to him.

Genesis 8:13

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the six hundred and first year

“when Noah was 601 years old” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the first month, on the first day of the month

Since Moses wrote this book it is possible he is referring to the first month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the waters were dried up from off the earth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the waters covering the earth dried up” or “the wind dried up the waters covering the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the covering of the ark

This refers to a cover that kept the rain water from going into the ark.

behold

The word “behold” tells us to pay attention to the important information that comes next.

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹³ It came about in the six hundred and first year, in the first month, on the first day of the month, that the waters were dried up from off the earth. Noah removed the covering of the ark, looked out, and saw that, behold, the surface of the ground was dry.

UST

¹³ Noah was now 601 years old. By the first day of the first month of that year, the water had completely drained away from the ground. Noah removed the covering on top of the boat, and he was surprised to see that the surface of the ground was drying.

Genesis 8:14

In the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month

“On the twenty seventh day of the second month.” This may refer to the second month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the earth was dry

“the ground was completely dry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹⁴ In the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, the earth was dry.

UST

¹⁴ By the twenty-seventh day of the next month, the ground was completely dry.

Genesis 8:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

¹⁵ God said to Noah,

UST

¹⁵ Then God said to Noah,

Genesis 8:16

Go out of

“Leave.” Some translations read “Come out.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

16 “Go out of the ark, you, your wife, your sons, and your sons’ wives with you.

UST

16 “Leave the boat, along with your wife, your sons, and their wives.

Genesis 8:17

Take out

“Take.” Some translations read “Bring out.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

every living creature of all flesh

“every kind of living creature.” See how “all flesh” is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#).

be fruitful and multiply

This is an idiom. See how this is translated in [Genesis 1:28](#). God wanted the humans and animals to reproduce, so there would be many of them. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

17 Take out with you every living creature of all flesh that is with you—the birds, the animals, and every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth—so that they may increase greatly on the earth, that they may be fruitful and multiply upon the earth.”

UST

17 Bring out with you all the birds, the domestic animals, and all the kinds of creatures that move close to the ground, in order that they can spread all over the earth and become very numerous.”

Genesis 8:18

Noah went out

Some translations read “Noah came out.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

18 So Noah went out with his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives with him.

UST

18 So Noah left the boat, along with his wife, his sons, and their wives.

Genesis 8:19

according to their families

“in groups of their own kinds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [clan](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clan](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

19 Every living creature, every creeping thing, and every bird, everything that moves on the earth, according to their families, left the ark.

UST

19 Then all the creatures, including all those that move close to the ground, all the birds, and every animal that moves on the earth, left the boat. They left the boat in groups of their own kind.

Genesis 8:20

built an altar to Yahweh

“built an altar dedicated to Yahweh” or “built an altar for worshiping Yahweh.” He may have built it with stones.

clean animals...clean birds

Here “clean” means that God allowed these animals to be used in sacrifice. Some animals were not used for sacrifices and were called “unclean.”

offered burnt offerings

Noah killed the animals and then completely burned them up as an offering to God. Alternate translation: “burned the animals as offerings to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

ULT

20 Noah built an altar to Yahweh. He took some of the clean animals and some of the clean birds, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.

UST

20 Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh. He took some of the animals and birds that were acceptable as sacrifices and killed them. Then he burned them whole on the altar.

Genesis 8:21

pleasing aroma

This refers to the good smell of the roasted meat.

said in his heart

Here the word "heart" refers to God's thoughts and emotions.

curse the ground

"do very serious harm to the earth"

because of mankind

This can be made more explicit: "because mankind is sinful." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the intentions of their hearts is evil from childhood

"from their earliest years they tend to do evil things" or "when they are young, they want to do evil things"

the intentions of their hearts

Here the word "hearts" refers to people's thoughts, emotions, desires, and will. Alternate translation: "their tendency" or "their habit"

from childhood

This refers to an older child. Alternate translation: "from their youth"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

²¹ Yahweh smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart, "I will not again curse the ground because of mankind, even though the intentions of their hearts is evil from childhood. Nor will I again destroy everything living, as I have done.

UST

²¹ When Yahweh smelled the pleasant odor, he was pleased with the sacrifice. Then he said to himself, "I will never again devastate everything on the earth because of the sinful things people do. Even though all that people think in their minds is evil from the time they are young, I will not destroy all the living beings again, as I did this time.

Genesis 8:22

While the earth remains

“While the earth lasts” or “As long as the earth exists”

seed time

“the season for planting”

cold and heat, summer and winter

These expressions both refer to two major weather conditions in the year. Translators may use local expressions. (See: [Merism](#))

summer

the hot, dry time of the year

winter

the cool, wet or snowy time of the year

will not cease

“will not cease to exist” or “will not cease to occur.” This can be expressed in a positive manner. Alternate translation: “will continue” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [harvest](#), [reap](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [harvest](#), [reap](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

22 While the earth remains, seed time and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, and day and night will not cease.”

UST

22 As long as the earth exists, the seasons for planting seeds and seasons for harvesting crops, the times when it is cold and times when it is hot, the summer and winter, the daytime and nighttime will continue.”

Genesis 9

Genesis 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULT and many other English translations set the lines of 9:6-7, which is the poetic part of the quotation, farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. They also set apart 9:25-27, which contains two quotations.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 9:6 and 9:25-27.

Special concepts in this chapter

Man's relationship to animals

There is a noticeable shift in man's relationship with the animals on the earth. Before the flood, there apparently was harmony between man and the animals. After the flood, the animals fear man and man is permitted to eat the animals, something he was not allowed to do previously. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Life in the blood

This chapter introduces the concept that there is life in the blood of an animal and in man. In Hebrew thought, blood represents the life present in a living thing. This is an image used throughout Scripture. (See: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#) and [blood](#))

Covenant with Noah

God made a covenant with Noah. This covenant was an unconditional promise God made to never destroy the whole world with a flood. Rainbows are a perpetual sign of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

A father's nakedness

In Noah's culture, it was unacceptable to see a father's nakedness. It was wrong for Ham to show his brothers their father's nakedness. Ham's actions were insulting or disrespectful. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth"

This is a command that God gives. He expects Noah to obey him.

Genesis 9:1

Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth

This is God's blessing. He told Noah and his family to produce more humans like themselves, so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful." See how you translated these commands in [Genesis 1:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

¹ Then God blessed Noah and his sons, and said to them, "Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth."

UST

¹ Then God blessed Noah and his sons. He said to them, "I want you to have many children who will live all over the earth."

Genesis 9:2

The fear of you and the dread of you will be upon every living animal...and upon all the fish of the sea

The writer speaks of fear and dread as if they were physical objects that could be upon the animals. Alternate translation: "Every living animal...and all the fish of the sea will be dreadfully afraid of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

The fear of you and the dread of you

The words "fear" and "dread" mean basically the same thing and emphasize how afraid the animals will be of mankind. Alternate translation: "A dreadful fear of you" or "A terrible fear of you" (See: [Doublet](#))

every living animal on the earth

This is the first of the four categories of animals that the writer lists, and not a summary of the rest of the animals that he mentions next.

bird

This is a general term for things that fly. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:21](#).

upon everything that goes low on the ground

This includes all types of small animals. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:25](#).

They are given into your hand

The hand represents control. This can be made active. Alternate translation: "They are given into your control" or "I have put them under your control" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

² The fear of you and the dread of you will be upon every living animal on the earth, upon every bird of the sky, upon everything that goes low on the ground, and upon all the fish of the sea. They are given into your hand.

UST

² All the larger animals on the earth, all the birds, all the creatures that move close to the ground, and all the fish, will be very afraid of you. I place them under your authority.

Genesis 9:3

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

³ Every moving thing that lives will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything.

UST

³ Previously I allowed you to eat green plants for food, but now you may eat everything that lives and moves.

Genesis 9:4

life...blood

Translators may add a footnote such as this: "The blood is a symbol for life." They may also add a footnote that says something like this: "God was commanding people not to eat meat while the blood was still in it. They had to drain out the blood first."

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- heart
- blood
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- heart
- blood
- devour

ULT

⁴ But you must not eat meat with its life
—that is its blood—in it.

UST

⁴ But you must not eat meat that still
has the blood in it, because the life is in
its blood.

Genesis 9:5

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

But for your blood

This contrasts man's blood with the blood of animals ([Genesis 9:4](#)).

for your blood, the life that is in your blood

It is implied that the blood is shed, or poured out, or spilled out.
Alternate translation: "if anyone causes your blood to pour out" or "if anyone spills your blood" or "if anyone kills you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

life

This refers to physical life.

I will require payment

This payment refers to the death of the murderer, not to money.
Alternate translation: "I will require anyone who kills you to pay"

from the hand

Here the word "hand" refers to the one who is responsible for something happening. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

From the hand of every animal I will require it

"I will require any animal that takes your life to pay"

From the hand of any man, that is, from the hand of one who has murdered his brother, I will require an accounting for the life of that man

"I will require anyone who takes the life of another person to pay"

From the hand of

This phrase refers to the person in a very personal way. Alternate translation: "From that very man" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brother

Here "brother" is used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [brother](#)
- [blood](#)

ULT

⁵ But for your blood, the life that is in your blood, I will require payment. From the hand of every animal I will require it. From the hand of any man, that is, from the hand of one who has murdered his brother, I will require an accounting for the life of that man.

UST

⁵ I punish any creature who kills a human being—that they answer to Yahweh—whether it be an animal or from a human being. I demand that murderers must suffer for their crimes and pay with their own lives. Even when an animal kills a person, that animal must also have their life taken because they have taken the life of a human being.

- hand
- hand
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- blood
- hand
- hand
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

Genesis 9:6

Whoever sheds man's blood, by man will his blood be shed

The shedding of blood is a metaphor for killing someone. This means that if a person murders someone, someone else must kill the murderer. However, "blood" is very significant in this passage and should be used in the translation if possible. Translate "sheds blood" with words that indicate a major loss of blood that causes death. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for it was in the image of God that he made man

"because God made people to be like him" or "because I made people in my own image"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [blood](#)
- [blood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [blood](#)
- [blood](#)

ULT

⁶ Whoever sheds man's blood, by man will his blood be shed, for it was in the image of God that he made man.

UST

⁶ For I made people to be like myself. So I insist that if someone murders another human being, another person must kill him. Anyone who pours another's blood out must himself lose his own blood.

Genesis 9:7

be fruitful and multiply

This is God's blessing. He told Noah and his family to produce more humans like themselves, so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful." See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁷ As for you, be fruitful and multiply, spread throughout the earth and multiply on it."

UST

⁷ As for you, I want you to produce many children, in order that they and their descendants may live all over the earth."

Genesis 9:8

Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him

God was already speaking to them. This phrase marks a change in what God was going to speak about. Alternate translation: “God continued speaking to Noah and his sons” or “Then God went on to say”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God

ULT

⁸ Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him, saying,

UST

⁸ God also said to Noah and his sons,

Genesis 9:9

As for me

This phrase is used in English to mark the change from God talking about what Noah and his sons must do to talking about what God would do.

confirm my covenant with you

“make a covenant between you and me.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

ULT

⁹ “As for me, listen! I am going to confirm my covenant with you and with your descendants after you,

UST

⁹ “Listen carefully. I am now making a covenant with you and with your descendants,

Genesis 9:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹⁰ and with every living creature that is with you, with the birds, the livestock, and every creature of the earth with you, from all that came out of the ark, to every living creature on the earth.

UST

¹⁰ and with every creature with you, that is alive—including the birds, the domestic animals, and the wild animals—every living animal creature on the earth that came out of the boat with you.

Genesis 9:11

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

I hereby confirm my covenant with you

“By saying this, I make my covenant with you.” See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 6:18](#).

all flesh

Possible meanings for what “all flesh” represents are 1) all human beings or 2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. See how this is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth

“There will never again be a flood that destroys the earth.” There would be floods, but they would not destroy the whole earth.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

11 I hereby confirm my covenant with you, that never again will all flesh be destroyed by the waters of a flood. Never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth.”

UST

11 This is the covenant that I am making with you: I will never again destroy all living beings by a flood, or destroy everything else on the earth by a flood.”

Genesis 9:12

sign

This means a reminder of something that was promised.

covenant...for all future generations

The covenant applies to Noah and his family and also to all generations that follow.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- sign, proof, reminder
- God
- covenant
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- sign, proof, reminder
- God
- covenant
- generation

ULT

12 God said, "This is the sign of the covenant which I am making between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for all future generations:

UST

12 Then God said to him, "This is the sign to guarantee that I will keep the covenant that I am making with you and with all living beings, a covenant that I will keep forever:

Genesis 9:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹³ I have set my rainbow in the cloud, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.

UST

¹³ From time to time I will put a rainbow in the sky. It will be the sign of my covenant with you and with everything on the earth.

Genesis 9:14

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

It will come about when

“Whenever.” It is something that would happen many times.

the rainbow is seen

It is not clear who will see the rainbow, but because the covenant is between Yahweh and people, if you need to say who it is who will see the rainbow, it would be best to name both Yahweh and people. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people and I see the rainbow” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

rainbow

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹⁴ It will come about when I bring a cloud over the earth and the rainbow is seen in the cloud,

UST

¹⁴ When I cause rain to fall from the clouds, and a rainbow appears in the sky,

Genesis 9:15

I will call to mind my covenant

This does not mean that God would first forget. Alternate translation: "I will think about my covenant"

me and you

The word "you" is plural. God was speaking to Noah and Noah's sons.

every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living being"

all flesh

Possible meanings for what "all flesh" represents are 1) all human beings or 2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. See how this is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)

ULT

15 then I will call to mind my covenant, which is between me and you and every living creature of all flesh. The waters will never again become a flood to destroy all flesh.

UST

15 it will remind me about the covenant that I have made with you and with all living creatures, my promise that there will never again be a flood that will destroy all living creatures.

Genesis 9:16

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

in order to remember

“so that I will remember” or “so that I will think about”

between God and every living creature

God is speaking here. Alternate translation: “between me and every living creature”

every living creature of all flesh

“every kind of living being.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- flesh
- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- flesh
- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

16 The rainbow will be in the clouds and I will see it, in order to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is on the earth.”

UST

16 Whenever there is a rainbow in the sky, I will see it, and I will think about the covenant that I have made with every living being that is upon the earth, a promise that I will keep forever.”

Genesis 9:17

Then God said to Noah

God was already talking to Noah. This phrase marks the final part of what God was saying. Alternate translation: “God finished by saying to Noah” or “So God said to Noah”

Translation Words - ULT

- sign, proof, reminder
- God
- flesh
- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- sign, proof, reminder
- God
- flesh
- covenant
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

17 Then God said to Noah, “This is the sign of the covenant that I have confirmed between me and all flesh that is on the earth.”

UST

17 Then God said to Noah, “The rainbow will be the sign of the covenant that I have made with all living beings on the earth.”

Genesis 9:18

General Information:

Verses 18-19 introduce the three sons of Noah, who will be an important part of the next story.

father

Ham was Canaan's true father.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

18 The sons of Noah that came out of the ark were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Ham was the father of Canaan.

UST

18 The sons of Noah who came out of boat were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Ham later became the father of Canaan.

Genesis 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁹ These three were the sons of Noah, and from these the whole earth was populated.

UST

¹⁹ All the people on the earth are descended from these three sons of Noah.

Genesis 9:20

farmer

person who raises plants for food

Translation Words - ULT

- profane, profaned
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- profane, profaned
- vineyard

ULT

20 Noah began to be a farmer, and he planted a vineyard.

UST

20 Noah began to farm the land. He planted grapevines.

Genesis 9:21

became drunk

“drank too much wine”

uncovered

The text does not specify how much of Noah's body was uncovered as he lay drunk. His sons' reactions show us that it was shameful.

Translation Words - ULT

- wine, wineskin, new wine

Translation Words - UST

- wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT

21 He drank some of the wine and became drunk. He was lying uncovered in his tent.

UST

21 After they produced grapes, he made wine from them. One day, when he had drunk too much of the wine, he became drunk, and he lay naked in his tent.

Genesis 9:22

his father

This refers to Noah.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²² Then Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father and told his two brothers outside.

UST

²² Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his father lying naked in the tent. So he went outside and told his two older brothers what he had seen.

Genesis 9:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

ULT

²³ So Shem and Japheth took a robe and laid it upon both their shoulders, and walked backwards and covered the nakedness of their father. Their faces were turned the other way, so they did not see their father's nakedness.

UST

²³ Then Shem and Japheth took a large cloth and placed it across their backs, and walked backwards into the tent. They covered their father's naked body with the cloth. Their faces were turned away from their father, so they did not see him naked.

Genesis 9:24

General Information:

In verses 25-27 Noah pronounced a curse on Ham's son and blessings on Ham's brothers. What Noah said about them also applied to their descendants, as shown in the UST. Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in Noah's curse and blessings in verses 25-27.

awoke from his wine

He awoke after drinking wine and becoming drunk. He "became sober."

his youngest son

This refers to Ham. Alternate translation: "his youngest son, Ham"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

24 When Noah awoke from his wine, he learned what his youngest son had done to him.

UST

24 When Noah woke up and was sober again, he found out how badly Ham, his youngest son, had behaved toward him.

Genesis 9:25

Cursed be Canaan

"I curse Canaan" or "May bad things happen to Canaan"

Canaan

This was one of Ham's sons. Alternate translation: "Ham's son Canaan"

a servant to his brothers' servants

"the lowest servant of his brothers" or "the least important servant of his brothers"

his brothers

This could refer either to Canaan's brothers or to his relatives in general.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- curse, cursed, cursing
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- curse, cursed, cursing
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁵ So he said, "Cursed be Canaan. May he be a servant to his brothers' servants."

UST

²⁵ He said, "I am cursing Ham's son, Canaan, and his descendants. They will be like slaves to their uncles."

Genesis 9:26

General Information:

If you can, format these verses as they are formatted here to show your readers that this is poetry.

May Yahweh, the God of Shem, be blessed

“Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem,” or “Yahweh, the God of Shem, is worthy of praise” or “I praise Yahweh, the God of Shem”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

26 He also said, “May Yahweh, the God of Shem, be blessed, and may Canaan be his servant.

UST

26 I praise Yahweh, whom Shem worships. May Canaan’s descendants be servants to Shem’s descendants.

Genesis 9:27

May Canaan be his servant

"And let Canaan be Shem's servant." This includes Canaan's and Shem's descendants.

May God extend the territory of Japheth

Possible meanings are 1) "May God make Japheth's territory larger" or 2) "May God cause Japheth to have many descendants."

let him make his home in the tents of Shem

"let him leave peacefully with Shem." This includes Japheth's and Shem's descendants.

May Canaan be his servant

"Let Canaan be Japheth's servant." This includes Canaan's and Japheth's descendants.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁷ May God extend the territory of Japheth, and let him make his home in the tents of Shem. May Canaan be his servant."

UST

²⁷ But may God make the Japheth's territory larger. May he allow Japheth's descendants to live peacefully among the descendants of Shem. May Canaan's descendants be their slaves."

Genesis 9:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

²⁸ After the flood, Noah lived three hundred fifty years.

UST

²⁸ Noah lived 350 more years after the flood.

Genesis 9:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²⁹ All the days of Noah were nine hundred fifty years, and then he died.

UST

²⁹ He died when he was 950 years old.

Genesis 10

Genesis 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a genealogical record. It also records the location of ancient people groups.

Special concepts in this chapter

Assyria and Nineveh

While these places may be located in the same area as the Assyria mentioned later in Scripture, they are not the same kingdom.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Sons were born to”

This is an unusual phrase meaning “were sons of.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Genesis 10:1

These were the descendants of the sons of Noah

"This is the account of Noah's sons." This sentence introduces the account of Noah's descendants in Genesis 10:1-11:9.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- generation

ULT

¹ These were the descendants of the sons of Noah, that is, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Sons were born to them after the flood.

UST

¹ These are the descendants of Noah's sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. They became the fathers of many children after the flood.

Genesis 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Mede, Medes, Media

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Mede, Medes, Media

ULT

² The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

UST

² The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

Genesis 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³ The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

UST

³ The sons of Gomer were Askenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

Genesis 10:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁴ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

UST

⁴ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

Genesis 10:5

From these the coastland peoples separated and went into their lands

"Javan's sons and descendants separated and moved to the coastlands and islands"

coastland peoples

This refers to people who lived along the coast and on the islands.

their lands

"their homelands." These are the places that the people moved to and lived in.

every one with its own language

"Each people group spoke its own language" or "The people groups divided themselves according to their languages"

Translation Words - ULT

- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

⁵ From these the coastland peoples separated and went into their lands, every one with its own language, according to their clans, by their nations.

UST

⁵ The sons and their families who were descended from Javan lived in the islands and in the lands close to the ocean. Their descendants became people groups, each with its own language, clans, and territory.

Genesis 10:6

Mizraim

Mizraim is the Hebrew name for “Egypt.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

ULT

⁶ The sons of Ham were Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.

UST

⁶ The sons of Ham were Cush, Egypt, Put, and Canaan.

Genesis 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian

ULT

⁷ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabteka. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.

UST

⁷ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabtah. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.

Genesis 10:8

conqueror

Possible meanings are 1) “mighty warrior” or 2) “mighty man” or 3) “powerful ruler.”

Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

⁸ Cush became the father of Nimrod, who was the first conqueror on the earth.

UST

⁸ Another one of Cush's sons was Nimrod. Nimrod was the first person on earth who became a mighty warrior.

Genesis 10:9

before Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) "in Yahweh's sight" or 2) "with Yahweh's help"

That is why it is said

This introduces a proverb. Your language may introduce proverbs and sayings in a different way. Alternate translation: "This is the reason people say" (See: [Proverbs](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- might, mighty, mighty works
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- might, mighty, mighty works
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

⁹ He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh. That is why it is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before Yahweh."

UST

⁹ Yahweh saw that he had become a great hunter. That is why people say to a great hunter, "Yahweh sees that you are a great hunter like Nimrod."

Genesis 10:10

The first centers

Possible meanings are 1) the first centers he developed or 2) the important cities.

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Shinar
- firstfruits
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Shinar
- firstfruits
- kingdom

ULT

10 The first centers of his kingdom were Babel, Erech, Akkad, and Kalneh, in the land of Shinar.

UST

10 Nimrod became a king who ruled in Babylonia land. The first cities over which he ruled were Babel, Erech, Akkad, and Kalneh.

Genesis 10:11

he went to Assyria

"Nimrod went into Assyria"

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 Out of that land he went to Assyria and built Nineveh, Rehoboth Ir, Calah,

UST

11 From there he went with other people to Assyria, and there they built the cities of Nineveh, Rehoboth Ir, Calah,

Genesis 10:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² and Resen, which was between Nineveh and Calah. It was a large city.

UST

¹² and Resen. Resen was a large city between Nineveh and Calah.

Genesis 10:13

Mizraim became

The list of Noah's descendants continues.

Mizraim

Mizraim was one of Ham's sons. His descendants became the people of Egypt. Mizraim is the Hebrew name for Egypt.

ULT

¹³ Mizraim became the father of the Ludites, the Anamites, the Lehabites, the Naphtuhites,

UST

¹³ Ham's son, Egypt, became the ancestor of the Lud, Anam, Lehab and Naphtuh,

Genesis 10:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹⁴ the Pathrusites, the Kasluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Capthorites.

UST

¹⁴ Pathrus, Casluh and Capthor people groups. The Philistine people were descended from Casluh.

Genesis 10:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Canaan became the father of Sidon, his firstborn, and of Heth,

UST

¹⁵ Ham's youngest son, Canaan, became the father of Sidon, who was his eldest son, and Heth, his younger son.

Genesis 10:16

Jebusites...Amorites...Girgashites

These names refer to larger groups of people that descended from Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Amorite
- Girgashites
- Jebus, Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- Amorite
- Girgashites
- Jebus, Jebusite

ULT

¹⁶ also of the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites,

UST

¹⁶ Canaan was also the ancestor of the Jebus, Amor, Girgash,

Genesis 10:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hivite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hivite](#)

ULT

¹⁷ the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites,

UST

¹⁷ Hiv, Ark, Sin,

Genesis 10:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- family, household

ULT

¹⁸ the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites. Afterward the clans of the Canaanites spread out.

UST

¹⁸ Arved, Zemar and Hamath people groups. Later the descendants of Canaan scattered over a large area.

Genesis 10:19

border

line between one person's land and another person's land

from Sidon, in the direction of Gerar, as far as Gaza

The direction south can be stated explicitly if needed. Alternate translation: "from Sidon city in the north as far south as Gaza town, which is near Gerar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as one goes toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim, as far as Lasha

The direction "east" or "inland" can be stated explicitly if needed. Alternate translation: "then east toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim towns, as far as Lasha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

ULT

19 The border of the Canaanites was from Sidon, in the direction of Gerar, as far as Gaza, and as one goes toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim, as far as Lasha.

UST

19 Their land extended from the city of Sidon in the north as far south as Gaza near Gerar, and then east toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim towns, as far as the town of Lasha.

Genesis 10:20

These were the sons of Ham

The word “these” refers to the people and people groups who were listed in verses [Genesis 6-19](#).

by their languages

“broken up according to their different languages”

in their lands

“in their homelands”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

20 These were the sons of Ham, by their clans, by their languages, in their lands, and in their nations.

UST

20 Those are the descendants of Ham. They became people groups that had their own clans, their own languages, and their own lands.

Genesis 10:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²¹ Sons also were born to Shem, the older brother of Japheth. Shem was also the ancestor of all the people of Eber.

UST

²¹ Shem, the older brother of Japheth, also had sons, and he became the ancestor of all the descendants of Eber.

Genesis 10:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²² The sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram.

UST

²² The sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arphachshad, Lud, and Aram.

Genesis 10:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²³ The sons of Aram were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech.

UST

²³ The sons of Aram were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash.

Genesis 10:24

Arphaxad

Arphaxad was one of Shem's sons.

ULT

²⁴ Arphaxad became the father of Shelah, and Shelah became the father of Eber.

UST

²⁴ Arphachshad became the father of Shelah. Shelah became the father of Eber.

Genesis 10:25

Peleg

Translators may add a footnote note that says: "The name Peleg means 'division.'"

the earth was divided

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "the people of the earth divided themselves" or "the people of the earth separated from one another" or "God divided the people of the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- name
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- name
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁵ Eber had two sons. The name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided. His brother's name was Joktan.

UST

²⁵ Eber became the father of two sons. One of them was named Peleg, which means "division," because during the time he lived, people on the earth became divided and scattered everywhere. Peleg's younger brother was Joktan.

Genesis 10:26

Joktan

Joktan was one of Eber's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁶ Joktan became the father of
Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

UST

²⁶ Joktan became the father of
Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,

Genesis 10:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁷ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

UST

²⁷ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,

Genesis 10:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁸ Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

UST

²⁸ Obal, Abimael, Sheba,

Genesis 10:29

All these

“These” here refers to the sons of Joktan.

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²⁹ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan.

UST

²⁹ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were sons of Joktan.

Genesis 10:30

Their territory

“The land they controlled” or “The land they lived in”

ULT

³⁰ Their territory was from Mesha, all the way to Sephar, the mountain of the east.

UST

³⁰ The areas in which the clans began to live extended from Mesha to Sephar, which is in the hill country in the east.

Genesis 10:31

These were the sons of Shem

The word “these” refers to the descendants of Shem ([Genesis 10:21-29](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [clan](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

³¹ These were the sons of Shem, according to their clans and their languages, in their lands, according to their nations.

UST

³¹ They are descendants from the sons of Shem. They became people groups that had their own clans, their own languages, and their own land.

Genesis 10:32

These were the clans

This refers back to all the people listed in [Genesis 10:1-31](#).

according to

“listed by”

From these the nations separated and went over the earth

“From these clans the nations divided and spread over the earth” or
“These clans divided from each other and formed the nations of the earth”

after the flood

This can be stated clearly or more explicitly. Alternate translation: “after the flood destroyed the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household
- nation
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household
- nation
- nation

ULT

³² These were the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their genealogies, by their nations. From these the nations separated and went over the earth after the flood.

UST

³² All these clans descended from the sons of Noah. Each clan had its own genealogy and each became a separate people group. Those people groups formed after the flood and spread all around the earth.

Genesis 11

Genesis 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a story traditionally referred to as the “Tower of Babel.”

This chapter seeks to answer the questions: why do people speak different languages? how did people become so dispersed across the earth? God’s punishment described in this chapter may also explain why the world has racial and ethnic divisions.

Special concepts in this chapter

Age of people when they die

After the flood, people began to live shorter lives. This chapter begins to record the shortening of the average lifespan.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Personification

The statement “Yahweh came down to see” is a type of personification. Yahweh always knows what happens on earth. This statement indicates that Yahweh is about to bring judgment on mankind. (See: [Personification](#) and [judge, judgment](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Let us build ourselves a city and a tower whose top will reach to the sky”

The people were very full of pride and rebelled against God in this action. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 11:1

Now

This word shows that the writer is beginning a new part of the story.

the whole earth

This represents all the people on the earth. Alternate translation: “all the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

used one language and had the same words

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that all people spoke the same language. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹ Now the whole earth used one language and had the same words.

UST

¹ At this time, all the people in the world spoke the same language.

Genesis 11:2

they journeyed

“they moved around”

in the east

Possible meanings are 1) “in the east” or 2) “from the east” or 3) “to the east.” The preferred choice is “in the east” because Shinar is to the east of where scholars believe the ark came to rest.

settled

stopped moving from one place to another and began to live at one location

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shinar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Shinar](#)

ULT

² As they journeyed in the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and they settled there.

UST

² As people moved around in the east, they arrived at a plain in the region of Babylon and began to live there.

Genesis 11:3

Come

If your language has a way of urging or commanding people to begin work, like the English "Come on!" you might use it here.

bake them thoroughly

People make bricks out of clay and heat them in a very hot oven to make them hard and strong.

tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground

mortar

This is a thick substance made of lime powder, clay, sand, and water used to make stones or bricks stick together.

ULT

³ They said to one another, "Come, let us make bricks and bake them thoroughly." They had brick instead of stone and tar as mortar.

UST

³ Then they said to each other, "Let us make bricks and bake them to make them hard, for building!" So they used bricks instead of stones, and used tar instead of mortar to hold them together.

Genesis 11:4

let us make a name for ourselves

“let us make our reputation great”

name

reputation

we will be scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we will separate from each other and live in different places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- name
- head
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- name
- head
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁴ They said, “Come, let us build ourselves a city and a tower whose top will reach to the sky, and let us make a name for ourselves. If we do not, we will be scattered across the surface of the whole earth.”

UST

⁴ They said, “Let us build a city for ourselves! We also ought to build a very high tower that reaches up to the sky! In that way people will know who we are! If we do not do this, we will be scattered all over the earth!”

Genesis 11:5

the descendants of Adam

“the people”

came down

The information about where he came down from can be made explicit: “came down from heaven.” This does not tell how he came down. Use a general word meaning “came down.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to see

“to observe” or “to look more closely”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁵ So Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower which the descendants of Adam had built.

UST

⁵ One day Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower that the people were building.

Genesis 11:6

one people with the same language

All the people were one big group and they all spoke the same language.

they are beginning to do this

Possible meanings are 1) “they have begun to do this,” meaning that they have begun to build the tower but it is not finished, or 2) “this is just the first thing they have done,” meaning that in future they will do greater things.

nothing that they intend to do will be impossible for them

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “anything they intend to do will be possible for them” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group,

ULT

⁶ Yahweh said, “Look, they are one people with the same language, and they are beginning to do this! Soon nothing that they intend to do will be impossible for them.

UST

⁶ Yahweh said, “These people are one group that all speak the same language. If they have begun to do this, then there is nothing that they will decide to do that will be impossible for them!

Genesis 11:7

Come

If your language has a way of urging or commanding people to begin work, like the English “Come on!” you might use it here. See how this is translated in [Genesis 11:3](#).

let us go down

The word “us” is plural even though it refers to God. Some translate it as “let me go down” or “I will go down.” If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the pronoun is plural. See the note on “Let us make” in [Genesis 1:26](#). (See: [Pronouns](#))

confuse their language

This means that Yahweh would cause the people all over the earth to stop speaking the same language. Alternate translation: “mix up their language” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that they may not understand each other

This was the purpose of confusing their language. Alternate translation: “so that they will not be able to understand what each other is saying” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ Come, let us go down and confuse their language there, so that they may not understand each other.”

UST

⁷ So, let us go down there and make the people speak different languages, so that they will not be able to understand what each other is saying.”

Genesis 11:8

from there

“from the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁸ So Yahweh scattered them from there across the surface of all the earth and they stopped building the city.

UST

⁸ By doing this, Yahweh caused them to scatter all over the earth, and the people stopped building the city.

Genesis 11:9

its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused

The name “Babel” sounds like the word that means “confused.” Translators may want to add a footnote about this.

confused the language of the whole earth

It means that Yahweh caused the people all over the earth to no longer speak the same language. Alternate translation: “mixed up the language of the whole earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁹ Therefore, its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth and from there Yahweh scattered them abroad over the surface of all the earth.

UST

⁹ The city was called Babel, because there Yahweh caused the people all over the earth to no longer speak only one language. And Yahweh caused them to scatter all over the earth from that place.

Genesis 11:10

General Information:

The rest of this chapter lists the line of Shem's descendants down to Abram.

These were the descendants of Shem

This sentence begins the list of Shem's descendants.

flood

This is the flood from Noah's time when people had become so evil that God sent a worldwide flood to cover the earth.

became the father of Arphaxad

"had his son Arphaxad" or "his son Arphaxad was born"

Arphaxad

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a hundred...two

Translators may write the words or the numerals "100" and "2." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [generation](#)

ULT

¹⁰ These were the descendants of Shem. Shem was a hundred years old, and he became the father of Arphaxad two years after the flood.

UST

¹⁰ These are those who descended from Shem. Two years after the flood, when Shem was one hundred years old, he became the father of Arphaxad.

Genesis 11:11

five hundred

Translators may write the words or the numeral “500.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

11 Shem lived five hundred years after he became the father of Arphaxad. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

11 After Arphaxad was born, Shem lived five hundred more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:12

he became the father of Shelah

“his son Shelah was born”

Shelah

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

¹² When Arphaxad had lived thirty-five years, he became the father of Shelah.

UST

¹² When Arphachshad was thirty-five years old, he became the father of Shelah.

Genesis 11:13

403 years

“four hundred and three years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹³ Arphaxad lived 403 years after he became the father of Shelah. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

¹³ After Shelah was born, Arphaxad lived 403 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:14

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

14 When Shelah had lived thirty years, he became the father of Eber.

UST

14 When Shelah was thirty years old, he became the father of Eber.

Genesis 11:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁵ Shelah lived 403 years after he became the father of Eber. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁵ After Eber was born, Shelah lived 403 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:16

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

16 When Eber had lived thirty-four years, he became the father of Peleg.

UST

16 When Eber was thirty-four years old, he became the father of Peleg.

Genesis 11:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁷ Eber lived 430 years after he became the father of Peleg. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁷ After Peleg was born, Eber lived 430 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:18

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

18 When Peleg had lived thirty years, he became the father of Reu.

UST

18 When Peleg was thirty years old, he became the father of Reu.

Genesis 11:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

¹⁹ Peleg lived 209 years after he became the father of Reu. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

¹⁹ After Reu was born, Peleg lived 209 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:20

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

²⁰ When Reu had lived thirty-two years, he became the father of Serug.

UST

²⁰ When Reu was thirty-two years old, he became the father of Serug.

Genesis 11:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

²¹ Reu lived 207 years after he became the father of Serug. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

²¹ After Serug was born, Reu lived 207 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:22

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

²² When Serug had lived thirty years, he became the father of Nahor.

UST

²² When Serug was thirty years old, he became the father of Nahor.

Genesis 11:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

²³ Serug lived two hundred years after he became the father of Nahor. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

²³ After Nahor was born, Serug lived two hundred more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:24

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

ULT

²⁴ When Nahor had live twenty-nine years, he became the father of Terah.

UST

²⁴ When Nahor was twenty-nine years old, he became the father of Terah.

Genesis 11:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

²⁵ Nahor lived 119 years after he became the father of Terah. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

UST

²⁵ After Terah was born, Nahor lived 119 more years and became the father of other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:26

Abram, Nahor, and Haran

We do not know the birth order of his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

ULT

²⁶ After Terah had lived seventy years, he became the father of Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

UST

²⁶ After Terah was seventy years old, he became the father of Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

Genesis 11:27

Now these were the descendants of Terah

This sentence introduces the account of Terah's descendants. Genesis 11:27-25:11 tells about Terah's descendants, particularly his son Abraham. Alternate translation: "This is the account of Terah's descendants" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [generation](#)

ULT

²⁷ Now these were the descendants of Terah. Terah became the father of Abram, Nahor, and Haran, and Haran became the father of Lot.

UST

²⁷ This is what happened concerning the descendants of Terah: Terah's sons were Abram, Nahor, and Haran. Haran's son was named Lot.

Genesis 11:28

Haran died in the presence of his father Terah

This means that Haran died while his father was still living. Alternate translation: "Haran died while his father, Terah, was with him" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- face, facial

ULT

²⁸ Haran died in the presence of his father Terah in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans.

UST

²⁸ Haran's father was with him when Haran died in the city of Ur, in the country of the Chaldeans. This is the land where he was born.

Genesis 11:29

took wives

“married wives”

Iskah

This is a female name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁹ Abram and Nahor took wives. The name of Abram’s wife was Sarai and the name of Nahor’s wife was Milkah, a daughter of Haran, who was the father of Milkah and Iskah.

UST

²⁹ Abram and Nahor both married. Abram’s wife was named Sarai, and Nahor’s wife was named Milkah. Milkah and her sister Iskah were the daughters of Haran.

Genesis 11:30

Now

This word is used to introduce new information about Sarai that will become important in later chapters.

barren

This term describes a woman who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child. (See: [Euphemism](#))

ULT

³⁰ Now Sarai was barren; she had no child.

UST

³⁰ Sarai was unable to have any children.

Genesis 11:31

his

Here the word "his" refers to Terah.

Sarai his daughter-in-law, his son Abram's wife

"his daughter-in-law Sarai, who was the wife of his son Abram"

Haran...Haran

These are two different names and they are spelled differently in Hebrew. One refers to a person and the other refers to a city. (The "h" sound in the city's name is louder than the "h" sound in the person's name.) You might choose to spell them differently in your language to show this.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

31 Terah took Abram his son, Lot the son of his son Haran, and Sarai his daughter-in-law, his son Abram's wife, and together they left Ur of the Chaldeans, to go into the land of Canaan. But they came to Haran and stayed there.

UST

31 Terah decided to leave Ur and go to live in the land of Canaan. So he took his son Abram and his grandson Lot son of Haran, and Abram's wife Sarai with him. But instead of going to Canaan, they stopped at the town of Haran and lived there.

Genesis 11:32

205 years

“two hundred and five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

³² Terah lived 205 years and then died in Haran.

UST

³² When Terah was 205 years old, he died in Haran.

Genesis 12

Genesis 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abram

When God said, “Go from your country, and from your relatives,” he established several new people groups. These groups descended from Abram.

God’s covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. (See: [covenant](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“They will kill me”

Abram was afraid the Egyptians would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Sarai to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Abram’s sister, they would have shown favor to him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 12:1

Now

This word is used to mark a new part of the story.

Go from your country, and from your relatives

“Go from your land, from your family”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹ Now Yahweh said to Abram, “Go from your country, and from your relatives, and from your father’s household, to the land that I will show you.

UST

¹ Then Yahweh said to Abram, “Leave this country where you are now living. Leave your father’s clan and his family, and go to a land that I will show you.

Genesis 12:2

I will make of you a great nation

Here “you” is singular and refers to Abram, but Abram represents his descendants. Alternate translation: “I will start a great nation through you” or “I will make your descendants become a great nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

make your name great

The word “name” represents the person’s reputation. Alternate translation: “make you famous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will be a blessing

The words “to other people” are understood. Alternate translation: “you will be a blessing to other people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

² I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you, and make your name great, and you will be a blessing.

UST

² I will cause your descendants to become a large nation. I will bless you and cause you to become famous. What I do for you will be a blessing to others.

Genesis 12:3

whoever dishonors you I will curse

"I will curse whoever treats you in a shameful way" or "if anyone treats you as worthless, I will curse him"

Through you will all the families of the earth be blessed

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "I will bless all the families of the earth through you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Through you

"Because of you" or "Because I have blessed you"

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- family, household

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- family, household

ULT

³ I will bless those who bless you, but whoever dishonors you I will curse. Through you will all the families of the earth be blessed."

UST

³ I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse those who do evil things to you. I will bless all the clans on earth through you."

Genesis 12:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh

ULT

⁴ So Abram went, as Yahweh had told him to do, and Lot went with him. Abram was seventy-five years old when he left Haran.

UST

⁴ So Abram left Haran, as Yahweh told him to do. Abram was seventy-five years old when he left there along with his family and Lot's family.

Genesis 12:5

possessions

This includes animals and non-living property.

the people that they had acquired

Possible meanings are 1) “slaves that they had accumulated” or 2) “the people whom they had gathered to be with them.”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- brother
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- brother
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁵ Abram took Sarai, his wife, Lot, his brother's son, all their possessions that they had accumulated, and the people that they had acquired in Haran. They left to go into the land of Canaan, and came to the land of Canaan.

UST

⁵ Abram took his wife Sarai and his nephew Lot; he also took with himself all the possessions and slaves that they had accumulated in Haran. They left from there and went to the land of Canaan.

Genesis 12:6

Abram passed through the land

Only Abram's name is mentioned because he was the head of the family. God had given him the command to take his family and go there. Alternate translation: "So Abram and his family went through the land" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the land

"the land of Canaan"

the oak of Moreh

Moreh was probably the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)

ULT

⁶ Abram passed through the land as far as Shechem, to the oak of Moreh. At that time the Canaanites lived in the land.

UST

⁶ In Canaan they traveled as far as Shechem and camped by a tall tree called the tree of Moreh. When this happened, the Canaanite people were living in that land.

Genesis 12:7

Yahweh, who had appeared to him

“Yahweh, because he had appeared to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁷ Yahweh appeared to Abram, and said, “To your descendants I will give this land.” So there Abram built an altar to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.

UST

⁷ Then Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, “I will give this land to your descendants.” Then Abram built an altar to offer a sacrifice to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.

Genesis 12:8

he pitched his tent

Abram had many people with him as he traveled. People who moved from place to place lived in tents. Alternate translation: “they set up their tents”

called on the name of Yahweh

“prayed in the name of Yahweh” or “worshiped Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Bethel
- Ai
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Bethel
- Ai
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁸ From there he moved to the hill country to the east of Bethel, where he pitched his tent, with Bethel to the west and Ai to the east. There he built an altar to Yahweh and called on the name of Yahweh.

UST

⁸ From Shechem, Abram and his family traveled to the hills that were east of Bethel. Bethel was to the west of where they set up their tent, and Ai was to the east. There he built another altar and offered a sacrifice and worshiped Yahweh there.

Genesis 12:9

Then Abram continued journeying

You may need to make explicit that he took his tent with him. "Then Abram took his tent and continued journeying." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

toward the Negev

"toward the Negev region" or "toward the south" or "south to the Negev desert"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Negev](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Negev](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Abram continued journeying, going toward the Negev.

UST

⁹ Then they left there and continued traveling south to the Negev desert.

Genesis 12:10

There was a famine

The crops did not grow well that season. This can be made explicit.
Alternate translation: "There was a shortage of food" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the land

"in the area" or "in the land where Abram was living"

went down into

Possible meanings are 1) "went further south" or 2) "went away from Canaan into." It would be best to translate this using your usual words for going from a higher place to a lower place.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [famine](#)

ULT

10 There was a famine in the land, so Abram went down into Egypt to stay, for the famine was severe in the land.

UST

10 There was a famine in that land, so they went further south to live for awhile in the land of Egypt, because the lack of food in the land where they were was very severe.

Genesis 12:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 When he was about to enter into Egypt, he said to Sarai his wife, "See here, I know that you are a beautiful woman.

UST

11 When they were coming near to the land of Egypt, Abram said to his wife Sarai, "Listen, I know that you are a very beautiful woman.

Genesis 12:12

they will kill me...you alive

The reason they would kill Abram can be made explicit: “they will kill me so that they can marry you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

12 When the Egyptians see you they will say, ‘This is his wife,’ and they will kill me, but they will keep you alive.

UST

12 When the people in Egypt see you, they will say, ‘This woman is his wife!’ and they will kill me, but they will not kill you.

Genesis 12:13

so that my life will be spared because of you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that, because of you, they will not kill me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism

ULT

13 Say that you are my sister, so that it may be well with me because of you, and so that my life will be spared because of you."

UST

13 So I ask you to tell them that you are my sister, so that I will be safe and so they will spare my life because of you."

Genesis 12:14

It came about that

Possible meanings are 1) This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts, and if your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here, or 2) "And that was what happened" .

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

14 It came about that when Abram entered into Egypt, the Egyptians saw that Sarai was very beautiful.

UST

14 And that was what happened. As soon as they arrived in Egypt, the people in Egypt saw that his wife was indeed very beautiful.

Genesis 12:15

The princes of Pharaoh saw her

"Pharaoh's officials saw Sarai" or "the king's officials saw her"

the woman was taken into Pharaoh's household

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh took her into his household" or "Pharaoh had his soldiers take her into his household" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the woman

Sarai

Pharaoh's household

Possible meanings are 1) "Pharaoh's family," that is, as a wife, or 2) "Pharaoh's house" or "Pharaoh's palace," a euphemism for Pharaoh making her one of his wives. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [praise](#), [praised](#), [praiseworthy](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [praise](#), [praised](#), [praiseworthy](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

15 The princes of Pharaoh saw her, and praised her to Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's household.

UST

15 When the king's officials saw her, they told the king how beautiful she was. Then the king took her into his palace.

Genesis 12:16

for her sake

“for Sarai’s sake” or “because of her”

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

16 Pharaoh treated Abram well for her sake, and gave him sheep, oxen, male donkeys, male servants, female servants, female donkeys, and camels.

UST

16 The king treated Abram kindly because of Sarai, and he gave Abram sheep and cattle and donkeys and male and female slaves and camels.

Genesis 12:17

because of Sarai, Abram's wife

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "because Pharaoh intended to take Sarai, Abram's wife, to be his own wife" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 Then Yahweh afflicted Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai, Abram's wife.

UST

17 But because the king had taken Sarai, Abram's wife, Yahweh caused the king and the others in his household to be inflicted with terrible diseases.

Genesis 12:18

Pharaoh summoned Abram

“Pharaoh called Abram” or “Pharaoh ordered Abram to come to him”

What is this that you have done to me?

Pharaoh used this rhetorical question to show how angry he was about what Abram had done to him. It can also be stated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: “You have done a terrible thing to me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

ULT

18 Pharaoh summoned Abram, and said, “What is this that you have done to me? Why did you not tell me that she was your wife?”

UST

18 So the king summoned Abram and said to him, “You have done a terrible thing to me! Why did you not tell me that she was your wife?”

Genesis 12:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

19 Why did you say, 'She is my sister,' so that I took her to be my wife? Now therefore, here is your wife. Take her, and go your way."

UST

19 Why did you say that she is your sister, so that I took her to be my wife? You should not have done that! So now take your wife, leave here and go!"

Genesis 12:20

Then Pharaoh gave orders to his men concerning him

“Then Pharaoh directed his officials concerning Abram”

they sent him away, along with his wife and all that he had

“the officials sent Abram away from Pharaoh, with his wife and all his possessions”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Pharaoh gave orders to his men concerning him, and they sent him away, along with his wife and all that he had.

UST

²⁰ Then the king ordered his officials to take Abram and his wife and all his possessions out of Egypt.

Genesis 13

Genesis 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abram's faith

Since the land could not support both Lot's and Abraham's family, they each went their own way. Even though good land was not plentiful, Abraham allowed Lot to choose the better land because he trusted in God to fulfill his promises. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

God's covenant with Abram

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. This chapter continues the covenant which began in the previous chapter. (See: [covenant](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Built an altar

Abram would have built an altar in order to offer sacrifices to Yahweh. There is an implicit understanding that building an altar was an act of worship. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 13:1

went up from

“left” or “departed from”

went into the Negev

The Negev was a desert region in southern Canaan, west of Egypt. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “went back to the Negev desert” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Negev](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Negev](#)

ULT

¹ So Abram went up from Egypt and went into the Negev, he, his wife, and all that he had. Lot also went with them.

UST

¹ So Abram and Sarai left Egypt and went back to the southern Judean wilderness. They took along all their possessions, and Lot went with them.

Genesis 13:2

Abram was very rich in animals, in silver, and in gold

"Abram had many animals, much silver, and much gold"

animals

"livestock" or "cattle"

Translation Words - ULT

- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

² Now Abram was very rich in animals, in silver, and in gold.

UST

² Abram was very rich. He owned a lot of livestock, silver, and gold.

Genesis 13:3

He continued on his journey

Abram and his family traveled by stages, going from place to place. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They continued on their journey" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to the place where his tent had been before

Translators may add a footnote that says "See Genesis 12:8." The time of his travel can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to the place where he had set up his tent before he went to Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ai

Translation Words - UST

- Ai

ULT

³ He continued on his journey from the Negev to Bethel, to the place where his tent had been before, between Bethel and Ai.

UST

³ They continued traveling from place to place from the southern Judean wilderness toward Bethel, to the place between Bethel and Ai where they had previously set up their tents.

Genesis 13:4

called on the name of Yahweh

“prayed in the name of Yahweh” or “worshiped Yahweh.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 12:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁴ He went to the place where the altar was that he had built previously. Here he called on the name of Yahweh.

UST

⁴ This is also where Abram had built an altar; there he worshiped Yahweh again.

Genesis 13:5

Now

This word is used to show what follows is background information to help the reader understand the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

ULT

⁵ Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flocks, herds, and tents.

UST

⁵ Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle and tents.

Genesis 13:6

The land was not able to support them

There was not enough grazing land and water for all their animals.

their possessions

This includes livestock, which need pasture and water.

could not stay together

“could not live together”

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁶ The land was not able to support them both living close together, because their possessions were very many, so that they could not stay together.

UST

⁶ The two of them had so many animals that they could not all stay in the same area. There was not enough land to provide water and food for all their animals.

Genesis 13:7

The Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land at that time

This is another reason that the land could not support them all.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Perizzite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Perizzite](#)

ULT

⁷ Also, there was a dispute between the herdsmen of Abram's animals and the herdsmen of Lot's animals. The Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land at that time.

UST

⁷ Furthermore, the men who took care of Abram's livestock started quarreling with the men who took care of Lot's livestock. The descendants of Canaan and Perez were also living in that area.

Genesis 13:8

Let there be no strife between you and me

"Let's not quarrel"

strife

arguments or fights

between your herdsmen and my herdsmen

"let's stop the men who take care of our animals from quarreling"

after all, we are family

"because we are family"

family

"kinsmen" or "relatives." Lot was Abraham's nephew.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother

Translation Words - UST

- brother

ULT

⁸ So Abram said to Lot, "Let there be no strife between you and me, and between your herdsmen and my herdsmen; after all, we are family.

UST

⁸ Then Abram said to Lot, "Since we are close relatives, it is not good for us to quarrel, or for the men who take care of your animals to quarrel with the men who take care of my animals.

Genesis 13:9

Is not the whole land before you?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "The whole land is available for you to use." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Go ahead and separate yourself from me

Abraham was speaking kindly to Lot and encouraging him to do something that would help them both. "Let's separate."

If you go to the left, then I will go to the right

Possible meanings are 1) "If you go one way, then I will go the other" or 2) "If you go to the north, I will go to the south." Abram let Lot choose the part of the land he wanted, and Abram would take what remained.

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

⁹ Is not the whole land before you? Go ahead and separate yourself from me. If you go to the left, then I will go to the right. Or if you go to the right, then I will go to the left."

UST

⁹ There is plenty of land for both of us. So we should separate. You can choose whatever part you want. If you want the area over there, I will stay here. If you want the area here, I will go over there."

Genesis 13:10

the whole plain of the Jordan

This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

was well watered

“had much water”

like the garden of Yahweh, like the land of Egypt

“like the garden of Yahweh or like the land of Egypt.” These were two different places.

the garden of Yahweh

This is another name for the garden of Eden.

garden

Use the same word for “garden” as you used in [Genesis 2:8](#).

This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah

This anticipates something that would happen later. It is important here because it explains why Lot settled in a region that later was not fertile.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

ULT

10 So Lot looked around, and saw that the whole plain of the Jordan was well watered everywhere all the way to Zoar, like the garden of Yahweh, like the land of Egypt. This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

UST

10 Lot looked toward Zoar and saw that there was plenty of water all over the plain near the Jordan River. This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah which were on that plain. In those days, it was like the garden of Yahweh, like the land in Egypt near the Nile River.

Genesis 13:11

the relatives

“the kinsmen” or “the families.” This refers to Lot and Abram with their households.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Jordan River, Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Jordan River, Jordan

ULT

11 So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan and traveled east, and the relatives separated from each other.

UST

11 So Lot chose for himself the land in the plain of the Jordan River. He left his uncle, Abram, and moved east.

Genesis 13:12

Abram lived

“Abram made his home” or “Abram stayed”

the land of Canaan

“the land of the Canaanites”

He set up his tents as far away as Sodom

Possible meanings are 1) “He set up his tents near Sodom” or 2) “He moved his tents around in an area that reached all the way to Sodom.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

ULT

¹² Abram lived in the land of Canaan, and Lot lived among the cities of the plain. He set up his tents as far away as Sodom.

UST

¹² Abram stayed in the land of Canaan, and Lot went to live near the cities in the plain of the Jordan River, and he set up his tents near Sodom.

Genesis 13:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

¹³ Now the men of Sodom were very wicked sinners against Yahweh.

UST

¹³ Now the people who lived in Sodom were extremely wicked and sinned terribly against Yahweh.

Genesis 13:14

after Lot had departed from him

“after Lot left Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁴ Yahweh said to Abram after Lot had departed from him, “Look from the place where you are standing to the north, south, east, and west.

UST

¹⁴ After Abram and Lot separated, Yahweh said to Abram, “Look around at this whole area where you are. Look north and south, look east and west.

Genesis 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹⁵ All this land which you see, I will give to you and to your descendants forever.

UST

¹⁵ I will give to you and to your descendants all the land that you see; I will give it to you forever.

Genesis 13:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- seed, semen
- seed, semen (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- seed, semen
- seed, semen (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

16 I will make your descendants as abundant as the dust of the earth, so that if a man could count the dust of the earth, then your descendants could also be counted.

UST

16 I will cause your descendants to be as numerous as particles of dust! If a man tried to count the particles of dust, it would be the same as if he tried to count your descendants.

Genesis 13:17

walk through the length and breadth of the land

“walk around all over the whole land”

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked

ULT

17 Arise, walk through the length and breadth of the land, for I will give it to you.”

UST

17 Walk through the land in every direction, because I am going to give it all to you.”

Genesis 13:18

Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hebron

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

an altar to Yahweh

“an altar for worshiping Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh

ULT

18 So Abram picked up his tent, and came and lived by the oaks of Mamre, which are in Hebron, and there built an altar to Yahweh.

UST

18 So Abram took down his tents and moved to Hebron and settled by the big trees of Mamre. He built a stone altar there to make sacrifices to Yahweh.

Genesis 14

Genesis 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 14:19-20.

Special concepts in this chapter

Names of places

Sometimes the names of places in Scripture are referred to by the name used during the time of the writer. For example, the location referred to as Dan was not yet known by that name because Dan had not yet come to live there. Moses, the author of Genesis, would have known this location as Dan.

Melchizedek

Melchizedek was both a priest and a king. Because of this, he parallels the roles of Jesus. Melchizedek is an important figure in the book of Hebrews. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God Most High

Melchizedek worshiped the God Most High. This is probably a reference to the true and only God who created the heavens and the earth and came to be known as Yahweh. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Genesis 14:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the days of

“in the time of”

Amraphel...Arioch...Kedorlaomer...Tidal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shinar...Ellasar...Elam...Goiim

These are names of places. See how you translated “Shinar” in [Genesis 10:10](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shinar](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Shinar](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

¹ It came about in the days of Amraphel, king of Shinar, Arioch, king of Ellasar, Kedorlaomer, king of Elam, and Tidal, king of Goiim,

UST

¹ There were four kings who were allies. They were King Amraphel of Babylonia, King Arioch of Ellasar, King Chedorlaomer of Elam, and King Tidal of Goiim.

Genesis 14:2

they made war

“they went to war” or “they started a war” or “they prepared for war”

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship (3)
- king, kingdom, kingship (4)

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship (3)
- king, kingdom, kingship (4)

ULT

² that they made war against Bera, king of Sodom, Birsha, king of Gomorrah, Shinab, king of Admah, Shemeber, king of Zeboyim, and the king of Bela (also called Zoar).

UST

² They prepared to attack a group of five kings: King Bera of Sodom, King Birsha of Gomorrah, King Shinab of Admah, King Shemeber of Zeboyim, and the king of Bela, the city that is now called Zoar.

Genesis 14:3

These latter five kings joined together

The information that their armies were with them can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “These latter five kings and their armies joined together” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³ These latter five kings joined together in the Valley of Siddim (also called the Salt Sea).

UST

³ Those five kings and their armies gathered together in the Valley of Siddim, which is also called the Valley of the Dead Sea, to fight against the four kings and their armies.

Genesis 14:4

Twelve years they had served

The events in verses 4-7 happened before verse 3. Your language may have a way of showing this.

they had served Kedorlaomer

They probably had to pay him taxes and serve in his army. Alternate translation: “they had been under the control of Kedorlaomer” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

they rebelled

“they refused to serve him” or “they stopped serving him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [rebel](#), [rebellion](#), [rebellious](#), [rebelliousness](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rebel](#), [rebellion](#), [rebellious](#), [rebelliousness](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

⁴ Twelve years they had served Kedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they rebelled.

UST

⁴ For twelve years King Chedorlaomer had ruled them. But in the thirteenth year, they rebelled against King Chedorlaomer and refused to give him any more tribute money.

Genesis 14:5

came and attacked

They did this because the other kings rebelled.

the Rephaim...the Zuzites...the Emites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ashteroth Karnaim...Ham...Shaveh Kiriathaim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ham

This name in Hebrew is different from the name of Noah's son, which is spelled the same way in English.

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁵ Then in the fourteenth year, Kedorlaomer and the kings who were with him came and attacked the Rephaim in Ashteroth Karnaim, the Zuzites in Ham, the Emites in Shaveh Kiriathaim,

UST

⁵ The next year, King Chedorlaomer and the other kings that were with him gathered their armies and started coming toward the area of the five kings. They defeated the Rephaite people in Ashteroth Karnaim, the Zuzite people in Ham, and the Emite people in Shaveh Kiriathaim.

Genesis 14:6

the Horites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Seir...El Paran

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

El Paran, which is near the desert

This phrase helps readers understand where El Paran was. It can be translated as a separate sentence if necessary. Alternate translation:

“El Paran. El Paran is near the desert” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

ULT

⁶ and the Horites in their hill country of Seir, as far as El Paran, which is near the desert.

UST

⁶ They also defeated the Horite people in their hill area of Seir as far as El Paran near the desert.

Genesis 14:7

General Information:

Verses 8 and 9 repeats what was said in [Genesis 14:3](#) and continues to tell what happened when the kings came together to fight.

they turned and came

The word “they” refers to the four foreign kings who were attacking the region of Canaan. Their names were Amraphel, Arioch, Chedorlaomer, and Tidal. Alternate translation: “they turned and went” (See: [Go and Come](#))

the Amorites who lived in Hazazon Tamar

This phrase tells which Amorite people were defeated. There were other Amorite people who lived in other places.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Amorite](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Amorite](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

7 Then they turned and came to En Mishpat (also called Kadesh), and defeated all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites who lived in Hazazon Tamar.

UST

7 Then they turned around and went to En Mishpat, which is now called Kadesh. They conquered all the land belonging to the Amalekite people and the Amorite people who were living in Hazazon Tamar.

Genesis 14:8

the king of Bela (also called Zoar)

The city of Bela was also called Zoar. This information could also be put at the end of the sentence. "the king of Bela went out and prepared for battle. Bela is also called Zoar."

prepared for battle

"joined battle" or "drew up battle lines." Some translators may need to also say that the armies fought, as the UST does in verse 9. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

ULT

⁸ Then the king of Sodom, the king of Gomorrah, the king of Admah, the king of Zeboyim, and the king of Bela (also called Zoar) went out and prepared for battle in the Valley of Siddim

UST

⁸ Then the armies of the kings of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboyim and Bela marched out to fight the armies of the four kings in Siddim Valley.

Genesis 14:9

four kings against the five

Since the five kings were listed first, some languages might prefer to translate this as “five kings against four.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Shinar
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship (3)
- king, kingdom, kingship (4)
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Shinar
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship (3)
- king, kingdom, kingship (4)
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁹ against Kedorlaomer, king of Elam, Tidal, king of Goiim, Amraphel, king of Shinar, Arioch, king of Ellasar; four kings against the five.

UST

⁹ They fought against the armies of Chedorlaomer the king of Elam, Tidal the king of Goiim, Amraphel the king of Shinar, and Arioch the king of Ellasar. The armies of four kings were fighting against the armies of five kings.

Genesis 14:10

Now

This word introduces background information about the valley of Siddim. Your language may have another way of introducing background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

was full of tar pits

“had many tar pits.” These were holes in the ground that had tar in them.

tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground. See how this is translated in [Genesis 11:3](#).

the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah

Here the kings represent themselves and their armies. Alternate translation: the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they fell in there

Possible meanings are 1) some of their soldiers fell in the tar pits or 2) the kings themselves fell in the tar pits. Since [Genesis 14:17](#) says that the king of Sodom went to meet Abram, the first meaning is more likely correct. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Those who were left

“Those who did not die in battle and did not fall in the pits”

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

10 Now the Valley of Siddim was full of tar pits, and as the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, they fell in there. Those who were left fled to the mountains.

UST

10 The Valley of Siddim was full of tar pits. So when the armies of the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah tried to run away, many of the men fell into these pits. The others escaped and ran away to the hills.

Genesis 14:11

the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah

The words “Sodom” and “Gomorrah” are metonyms for the people who lived in those cities. Alternate translation: “the wealth of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah” or “the property of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

their provisions

“their food and drink”

went their way

“they went away”

ULT

11 So the kings took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah and all their provisions, and went their way.

UST

11 As they fled, their enemies seized all of the valuable things in Sodom and Gomorrah, including all the food.

Genesis 14:12

they also took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who was living in Sodom, along with all his possessions

The phrases "Abram's brother's son" and "who was living in Sodom" remind the reader of things that were written earlier about Lot. Alternate translation: "they also took Lot, along with all his possessions. Lot was Abram's brother's son and was living in Sodom at that time" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son

ULT

¹² When they went, they also took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who was living in Sodom, along with all his possessions.

UST

¹² They also captured Abram's nephew Lot and his possessions, since he was living in Sodom at that time.

Genesis 14:13

One who had escaped came

"A man escaped from the battle and came"

He was living

"Abram was living." This introduces background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

were all allies of Abram

"were treaty-partners with Abram" or "had a peace agreement with Abram"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Amorite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Amorite](#)

ULT

13 One who had escaped came and told Abram the Hebrew. He was living by the oaks that belonged to Mamre, the Amorite, who was the brother of Eshkol and Aner, who were all allies of Abram.

UST

13-14 At that time, Abram was living near the big trees that belonged to Mamre, who belonged to the Amor clan. Abram had made an agreement with Mamre and his two brothers, Eshcol and Aner, that they would help each other if there was a war. One of the men who escaped from the battle told Abram the Hebrew what had happened and that the enemy had captured his nephew, Lot, and taken him away. So Abram summoned 318 men who were his servants, men who had been with Abram since they were born and who knew how to fight as warriors. They all went together and pursued their enemies as far as the city of Dan.

Genesis 14:14

his relative

This is a reference to Abram's nephew Lot.

318 trained men

"three hundred and eighteen trained men" (See: [Numbers](#))

trained men

"men who were trained to fight"

men who had been born in his house

"men who were born in Abram's household." They were children of Abram's servants.

pursued them

"chased them"

Dan

This is a city in the far north of Canaan, far from Abram's camp.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [captive](#), [captivate](#), [captivity](#), [catch](#), [captured](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [captive](#), [captivate](#), [captivity](#), [catch](#), [captured](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

14 Now when Abram heard that enemies had captured his relative, he led out his 318 trained men who had been born in his house, and he pursued them as far as Dan.

UST

13-14 At that time, Abram was living near the big trees that belonged to Mamre, who belonged to the Amor clan. Abram had made an agreement with Mamre and his two brothers, Eshcol and Aner, that they would help each other if there was a war. One of the men who escaped from the battle told Abram the Hebrew what had happened and that the enemy had captured his nephew, Lot, and taken him away. So Abram summoned 318 men who were his servants, men who had been with Abram since they were born and who knew how to fight as warriors. They all went together and pursued their enemies as far as the city of Dan.

Genesis 14:15

He divided his men against them at night and attacked them

This probably refers to a battle strategy. "Abram divided the men into several groups, and they attacked their enemies from various directions"

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁵ He divided his men against them at night and attacked them, and pursued them as far as Hobah, which is north of Damascus.

UST

¹⁵ During the night, Abram divided the men into several groups, and they attacked their enemies from various directions and defeated them. They pursued them as far as Hobah, which was north of the city of Damascus.

Genesis 14:16

all the possessions

This refers to the things that the enemies had stolen from the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.

his goods

"Lot's property that the enemies had stolen from Lot"

as well as the women and the other people

"as well as the women and other people that the four kings had captured"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- people, people group,
- return

ULT

16 Then he brought back all the possessions, and also brought back his relative Lot and his goods, as well as the women and the other people.

UST

16 Abram's men recovered all of the goods that had been taken. They also rescued Lot and all his possessions and also the women and others who their enemies had taken.

Genesis 14:17

returned

The implied information about where he was returning to can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “returned to where he was living” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

17 After Abram returned from defeating Kedorlaomer and the kings who were with him, the king of Sodom went out to meet him at the Valley of Shaveh (also called the King's Valley).

UST

17 As Abram was returning home after he and his men had defeated the armies of King Chedorlaomer and the other kings who had fought alongside him, the King of Sodom went north to meet him in Shaveh Valley, which people also call the King's Valley.

Genesis 14:18

Melchizedek, king of Salem

This is the first time this king is mentioned.

bread and wine

People commonly ate bread and wine. See how you translated “bread” in [Genesis 3:19](#) and “wine” in [Genesis 9:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [bread](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [bread](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

18 Melchizedek, king of Salem, brought out bread and wine. He was priest of God Most High.

UST

18 Melchizedek, the king of the city of Salem, was also a priest of the supreme God. He brought some bread and wine to Abram.

Genesis 14:19

He blessed him

King Melchizedek blessed Abram.

Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “May God Most High, the Creator of heaven and earth, bless Abram” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

19 He blessed him saying, “Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth.

UST

19 Then he blessed Abram and said, “I ask the supreme God, the one who created heaven and earth, to bless you.

Genesis 14:20

God Most High, who has given

“God Most High, because he has given.” The phrase starting with “who has given” tells us something more about God Most High.

Blessed be God Most High

This is a way of praising God. See how you translated “blessed be” in [Genesis 9:26](#).

into your hand

“into your control” or “into your power”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

ULT

20 Blessed be God Most High, who has given your enemies into your hand.” Then Abram gave him a tenth of everything.

UST

20 I praise the supreme God, because he has enabled you to defeat your enemies.” Then Abram gave to Melchizedek a tenth part of all the things he had captured.

Genesis 14:21

Give me the people

The phrase “the people” may refer to the people of Sodom that the enemies had captured. Abram rescued them when he rescued Lot.

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

21 The king of Sodom said to Abram, “Give me the people, and take the goods for yourself.”

UST

21 The King of Sodom said to Abram, “You can keep all the goods you recovered. Just let me take back the people from my city whom you captured.”

Genesis 14:22

I have lifted up my hand

This means "I have taken an oath" or "I have made a promise."

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²² Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I have lifted up my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth,

UST

²² But Abram said to the King of Sodom, "I have solemnly promised Yahweh, the supreme God, the one who created heaven and earth,

Genesis 14:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sandal

Translation Words - UST

- sandal

ULT

²³ that I will not take a thread, a sandal strap, or anything that is yours, so that you can never say, 'I have made Abram rich.'

UST

²³ that I will not take even one thread or a thong of a sandal from anything that belongs to you. As a result, you will never be able to say, 'I caused Abram to become rich.'

Genesis 14:24

I will take nothing except what the young men have eaten

"I take from you only what my young men have already eaten."
Abram was refusing to accept anything for himself, but acknowledged that the soldiers had eaten some of the supplies during the journey back to Sodom after the battle.

the share of the men that went with me

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the share of the recovered property that belongs to the men who helped me get it back" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre

These are the allies of Abram ([Genesis 14:13](#)). Because they were Abram's allies they fought battles alongside him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "my allies Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁴ I will take nothing except what the young men have eaten and the share of the men that went with me. Let Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre take their portion."

UST

²⁴ The only thing I will accept is the food that my men have eaten. But Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre went with me and fought alongside me, so let them have a share of the goods we brought back."

Genesis 15

Genesis 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Inheritance

In the ancient Near East, a person's children inherited the property and land of their parents. Abraham doubted the fulfillment of God's covenant because he did not have any children to whom to give his land. This showed a lack of faith. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#), [covenant](#) and [faith](#))

Fulfilling a promise

In the ancient Near East, two people performed a similar sacrifice by dividing animals in half. It was a way to say to the other person, "may this happen to me if I do not fulfill my promise." The event recorded here indicates that God will fulfill his promise and only he is responsible for bringing it about. (See: [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

God's covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. This covenant has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety.

Genesis 15:1

After these things

"These things" refers to when the kings fought and Abram rescued Lot.

the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear"

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to Abram in a vision. He said, 'Fear' or 'Yahweh spoke this message to Abram in a vision: 'Fear'" (See: [Idiom](#))

shield...reward

God used these two metaphors to tell Abram about his character and his relationship to Abram. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am your shield

Soldiers use a shield to protect themselves from their enemies. Alternate translation: "I will protect you like shield" or "I am your shield to protect you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am...your very great reward

Possible meanings are 1) "I myself will be all that you need" or 2) "I will give you all you need."

reward

the result of a person's actions. This seems to be a metonym for the gracious blessing God would give Abram. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

ULT

¹ After these things the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear not, Abram! I am your shield and your very great reward."

UST

¹ Some time later, Abram had a vision in which Yahweh spoke to him and said, "Do not be afraid of anything, I will protect you and I will give a great reward."

Genesis 15:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- walk, walked
- house

ULT

² Abram said, "Lord Yahweh, what will you give me, since I continue childless, and the heir of my house is Eliezer of Damascus?"

UST

² But Abram replied, "Lord Yahweh, how can you give me what I truly want, because I have no children, and the one who will inherit all my possessions is my servant Eliezer, from Damascus!"

Genesis 15:3

Abram said, "Since you have given me

"Abram continued speaking and said, 'Since you have given me'"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- seed, semen
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- seed, semen
- house

ULT

³ Abram said, "Since you have given me no descendant, see, one born in my house will be my heir!"

UST

³ Abram also said, "You have not given me any children, so a servant in my household will inherit everything that I own!"

Genesis 15:4

Then, behold

The word “behold” emphasizes the fact that the word of Yahweh came to Abraham again.

the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, “This

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this idiom in [Genesis 15:1](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave him a message. He said, ‘This’ or “Yahweh spoke this message to him: ‘This’” (See: [Idiom](#))

This man

This refers to Eliezer of Damascus.

the one who will come from your own body

“the one that you will father” or “your very own son.” Abram’s own son would become his heir.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁴ Then, behold, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, “This man will not be your heir; but rather the one who will come from your own body will be your heir.”

UST

⁴ Yahweh replied, “No! He will not be the one who will inherit it. Instead, you yourself will be the father of the one who will inherit everything you own.”

Genesis 15:5

number the stars

"count the stars"

So will your descendants be

Just as Abram would not be able to count all the stars, he would not be able to count all his descendants because there would be so many.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- command, commandment
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- command, commandment
- seed, semen

ULT

⁵ Then he brought him outside, and said, "Look toward heaven, and number the stars, if you are able to number them." Then he said to him, "So will your descendants be."

UST

⁵ Then Yahweh took Abram outside of his tent and said, "Look up at the sky! Can you count the stars? No, you cannot count them because there are so many of them, and your descendants will be as numerous as the stars."

Genesis 15:6

He believed Yahweh

This means he accepted and trusted what Yahweh said was true.

he counted it to him as righteousness

“Yahweh counted Abram’s belief as righteousness” or “Yahweh considered Abram righteous because Abram believed him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶ He believed Yahweh, and he counted it to him as righteousness.

UST

⁶ Abram believed that what Yahweh said would happen. Because of that, Yahweh considered him as good.

Genesis 15:7

I am Yahweh, who brought you out of Ur

Yahweh was reminding Abraham of what he had already done so that Abraham would know that Yahweh had the power to give Abram what he promised him.

to inherit it

“to receive it” or “so that you will possess it”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁷ He said to him, “I am Yahweh, who brought you out of Ur of the Chaldeans, to give you this land to inherit it.”

UST

⁷ Yahweh also said to him, “I am Yahweh. I am the one who brought you from Ur in the land of Chaldea. I brought you here to give you this land to possess.”

Genesis 15:8

how will I know

Abram was asking for more proof that Yahweh would give him the land.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁸ He said, "Lord Yahweh, how will I know that I will inherit it?"

UST

⁸ But Abram replied, "Lord Yahweh, how can I know for sure that this land will belong to me?"

Genesis 15:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁹ Then he said to him, "Bring me a heifer three years old, a female goat three years old, a ram three years old, a dove, and a young pigeon."

UST

⁹ God said to him, "Bring a three year old heifer and a three year old goat to me, and a dove and a pigeon."

Genesis 15:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

10 He brought him all these, and cut them in two, and placed each half opposite the other, but he did not divide the birds.

UST

10 So Abram brought all of them. He killed them and cut each of the animals in half. He arranged the halves of each one, side by side. But he did not cut the pigeon and dove in half.

Genesis 15:11

the carcasses

“the dead bodies of the animals and birds”

Abram drove them away

“Abram chased the birds away.” He made sure the birds did not eat the dead animals.

ULT

11 When the birds of prey came down upon the carcasses, Abram drove them away.

UST

11 Birds that eat dead animals came down to eat the carcasses, but Abram drove them away.

Genesis 15:12

Abram fell sound asleep

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “Abraham slept deeply” (See: [Idiom](#))

a deep and terrifying darkness

“an extreme darkness that terrified him”

overwhelmed him

“surrounded him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [terror](#), [terrorize](#), [terrify](#), [frightened](#), [panic](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [terror](#), [terrorize](#), [terrify](#), [frightened](#), [panic](#)

ULT

¹² Then when the sun was going down, Abram fell sound asleep and, behold, a deep and terrifying darkness overwhelmed him.

UST

¹² As the sun was going down, Abram fell sound asleep, and suddenly everything around him became dark and frightening.

Genesis 15:13

strangers

people who are at home in one place but have to live in another place

will be enslaved and oppressed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the owners of that land will enslave your descendants and oppress them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seed, semen](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seed, semen](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

13 Then Yahweh said to Abram, “Know for certain that your descendants will be strangers in a land that is not theirs, and will be enslaved and oppressed for four hundred years.

UST

13 Then Yahweh said to Abram, “I want you to know that your descendants will become foreigners living in a land that does not belong to them. They will become slaves of the owners of that land. The owners of the land will mistreat them for four hundred years.

Genesis 15:14

General Information:

Yahweh continued to speak to Abram while Abram dreamed.

I will judge

Here “judge” is a metonym for what will happen after God makes the judgment. Alternate translation: “I will punish” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that they will serve

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “that your descendants will serve” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

abundant possessions

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “many possessions” or “great wealth” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

14 I will judge that nation that they will serve, and afterward they will come out with abundant possessions.

UST

14 But then I will punish the people of that country where they are slaves. Then your descendants will leave that country, taking many possessions with them.

Genesis 15:15

you will go to your fathers

This is a polite way of saying “you will die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

fathers

The word “fathers” is a synecdoche for all ancestors. Alternate translation: “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

you will be buried in a good old age

“you will be very old when you die and your family buries your body”

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bury, buried, burial

ULT

15 But you will go to your fathers in peace, and you will be buried in a good old age.

UST

15 But as for you, you will die peacefully and be buried when you are very old.

Genesis 15:16

In the fourth generation

Here one generation refers to a lifespan of 100 years. "After four hundred years"

they will come here again

"your descendants will come back here." Abraham's descendants would come to the land where Abram was then living, the land that Yahweh had promised to give to him.

has not yet reached its limit

"is not yet complete" or "will get much worse before I punish them"

Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- restore, restoration
- Amorite
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- restore, restoration
- Amorite
- generation

ULT

16 In the fourth generation they will come here again, for the iniquity of the Amorites has not yet reached its limit."

UST

16 After your descendants have been slaves for four hundred years, they will come back here. They will take control of this land and defeat the Amor people. This will not happen before that time, because the Amor people have not yet sinned to the degree that I would punish them like that for it."

Genesis 15:17

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch passed between the pieces

God did this to show Abram that he was making a covenant with him.

passed between the pieces

“passed through between the two rows of animal pieces”

Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

17 When the sun had gone down and it was dark, behold, a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch passed between the pieces.

UST

17 When the sun had set and it was dark, unexpectedly a blazing torch and a clay pot containing burning coals from which smoke was rising appeared and went between the halves of the animals.

Genesis 15:18

covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, and he will continue to bless him as long as Abram follows him.

I hereby give this land

By saying this, God was giving the land to Abram's descendants. God was doing this then, but the descendants would not go into the land until many years later.

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

18 On that day Yahweh made a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your descendants I hereby give this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates—

UST

18 On that day Yahweh made a covenant with Abram. Yahweh told him, "I will give to your descendants all the land between the river that is on the eastern border of Egypt to the south, and north to the Euphrates River.

Genesis 15:19

the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

19 the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites,

UST

19 That is the land where the Ken, the Keniz, the Kidmon,

Genesis 15:20

the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hittite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hittite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)

ULT

²⁰ the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites,

UST

²⁰ the Heth, the Perez, the Repha,

Genesis 15:21

the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Girgashites](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Girgashites](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)

ULT

²¹ the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.”

UST

²¹ the Amor, the Canaan, the Girgash, and the Jebus people groups live.”

Genesis 16

Genesis 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 16:11-12.

Special concepts in this chapter

Plural marriage

Abram married Hagar while he was also married to Sarai. Even though Abram had his wife's permission, this was an immoral and sinful action. It also showed a lack of faith in God. Sarai quickly became jealous of Hagar. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [faith](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 16:1

Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and background information about Sarai. (See: [Background Information](#))

female servant

“slave-girl.” This type of slave would serve the woman of the household.

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

¹ Now Sarai, Abram's wife, had not borne any children for him, but she had a female servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Hagar.

UST

¹ Up to that time, Abram's wife Sarai had not given birth to any children for Abram. But she had a female slave from Egypt, whose name was Hagar.

Genesis 16:2

from having children

"from giving birth to children"

I will have children by her

"I will build my family through her"

Abram listened to the voice of Sarai

"Abram did what Sarai said"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

² So Sarai said to Abram, "See, Yahweh has kept me from having children. Go sleep with my servant. It may be that I will have children by her." Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.

UST

² Sarai said to Abram, "Listen to me! Yahweh has not allowed me to become pregnant. So sleep with my slave Hagar. Perhaps she will bear children whom I can consider to be mine." Abram agreed to do what Sarai said.

Genesis 16:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³ It was after Abram had lived ten years in the land of Canaan that Sarai, Abram's wife, gave Hagar, her Egyptian servant, to her husband as a wife.

UST

³ This happened ten years after Abram and Sarai went to live in Canaan land. In this way Abram took Hagar, Sarai's slave from Egypt, to be his second wife.

Genesis 16:4

she looked with contempt on her mistress

“she despised her mistress” or “she thought that she was more valuable than her mistress”

her mistress

Here this refers to Sarai. A mistress has authority over her slave. Alternate translation: “her owner” or “Sarai”

Translation Words - ULT

- [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)

ULT

⁴ So he had relations with Hagar, and she conceived. When she saw that she had conceived, she looked with contempt on her mistress.

UST

⁴ So he slept with Hagar, and she became pregnant. When she realized that she was pregnant, she began to despise her mistress Sarai.

Genesis 16:5

This wrong on me

"This injustice against me"

is because of you

"is your responsibility" or "is your fault"

I gave my servant woman into your embrace

Sarai used the word "embrace" here to refer to him sleeping with her. Alternate translation: "I gave you my servant so that you would sleep with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

I was despised in her eyes

This can be active. Alternate translation: "she hated me" or "she began to hate me" or "she thought she was better than me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Let Yahweh judge between me and you

"I want Yahweh to say whether this is my fault or your fault" or "I want Yahweh to decide which one of us is right." The phrase "to judge between" means to decide which person is right in a dispute between them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁵ Then Sarai said to Abram, "This wrong on me is because of you. I gave my servant woman into your embrace, and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes. Let Yahweh judge between me and you."

UST

⁵ Then Sarai said to Abram, "It is your fault! I put my servant into your arms so that you could sleep with her. Now she is pregnant, and she despises me because I have no children. May Yahweh find you guilty for doing this to me!"

Genesis 16:6

See here

"Listen to me" or "Pay attention"

in your power

"under your authority"

Sarai dealt harshly with her

"Sarai treated Hagar very badly"

she fled from her

"Hagar fled from Sarai"

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ But Abram said to Sarai, "See here, your servant woman is in your power, do to her what you think best." So Sarai dealt harshly with her, and she fled from her.

UST

⁶ So Abram said to Sarai, "Listen to me! She is your servant, so act toward her in the way you consider best." Then Sarai started to mistreat her, so Hagar ran away.

Genesis 16:7

The angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or 2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or 3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel."

wilderness

The wilderness area she went to was a desert. Alternate translation: "desert"

Shur

This was the name of a place south of Canaan and east of Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- messenger

ULT

⁷ The angel of Yahweh found her by a spring of water in the wilderness, the spring that is on the way to Shur.

UST

⁷ The angel of Yahweh went to her as she was near a spring of water in the desert. It was the spring that was alongside the road to Shur.

Genesis 16:8

my mistress

Here this refers to Sarai. A mistress has authority over her slave. See how "her mistress" is translated in [Genesis 16:4](#). Alternate translation: "my owner"

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁸ He said, "Hagar, Sarai's servant, where did you come from and where are you going?" Then she said, "I am fleeing from my mistress Sarai."

UST

⁸ He said to her, "Hagar, slave of Sarai, where have you come from, and where are you going?" She replied, "I have run away from Sarai, my mistress."

Genesis 16:9

The angel of Yahweh said to her

"The angel of Yahweh said to Hagar"

your mistress

Sarai. See how "her mistress" is translated in [Genesis 16:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [messenger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [messenger](#)

ULT

⁹ The angel of Yahweh said to her,
"Return to your mistress, and submit
yourself to her authority."

UST

⁹ The angel of Yahweh said, "Go back to
your mistress and continue to obey
her."

Genesis 16:10

the angel of Yahweh

See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I

When he said "I," he was referring to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the word "I" when referring to Yahweh.

I will greatly multiply your descendants

"I will give you very many descendants"

too numerous to count

"so many that no one will be able to count them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

ULT

10 Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I will greatly multiply your descendants, so that they will be too numerous to count."

UST

10 The angel of Yahweh also said to her, "I will enable you to bear so many descendants that no one will be able to count them!"

Genesis 16:11

The angel of Yahweh

See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention”

bear a son

“give birth to a son”

you will call his name

“you will name him.” The word “you” refers to Hagar.

Ishmael, because Yahweh has heard

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name ‘Ishmael’ means ‘God has heard.’”

affliction

She has been afflicted by distress and suffering.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

11 The angel of Yahweh also said to her, “Behold, you are pregnant and will bear a son, and you will call his name Ishmael, because Yahweh has heard your affliction.”

UST

11 The angel of Yahweh also said to her, “Listen to this! You are pregnant. You will give birth to a son. You must name him Ishmael, which means ‘God listens,’ because Yahweh has heard you crying because you feel so miserable.”

Genesis 16:12

He will be a wild donkey of a man

This was not an insult. It may mean that Ishmael would be independent and strong like a wild donkey. Alternate translation: “He will be like a wild donkey among men” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He will be hostile against every man

“He will be every man’s enemy”

every man will be hostile to him

“everyone will be his enemy”

he will live apart from

This can also mean “he will live in hostility with.”

his brothers

“his relatives” or “the other members of his family”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

12 He will be a wild donkey of a man. He will be hostile against every man, and every man will be hostile to him, and he will live apart from all his brothers.”

UST

12 But your son will be as uncontrollable as a wild donkey. He will oppose everyone, and everyone will oppose him. He will live far away from all his relatives.”

Genesis 16:13

Yahweh who spoke to her

"Yahweh, because he spoke to her"

Do I really continue to see,...me?

Hagar used this rhetorical question to express her amazement that she was still alive even after she met God. People expected that if they met God, they would die. Here seeing represents living.

Alternate translation: "I am surprised that I am still alive,...me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

13 Then she gave this name to Yahweh who spoke to her, "You are the God who sees me," for she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"

UST

13 Hagar said to herself, "I continue to live, even though Yahweh has seen me!" So she called Yahweh, "God, the one who sees me."

Genesis 16:14

Therefore the well was called Beer Lahai Roi

Translators may add a footnote that says “Beer Lahai Roi means ‘the well of the living one who sees me.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered

The word “behold” here draws attention to the fact that the well was in a place that the author and his readers knew. Alternate translation: “in fact, it is between Kadesh and Bered” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

ULT

14 Therefore the well was called Beer Lahai Roi; behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered.

UST

14 That is why people call the well there “Beer Lahai Roi,” which means, “the well of the living one who sees me!” It is still there, between Kadesh and Bered.

Genesis 16:15

Hagar gave birth

Hagar's return to Sarai and Abram is implicit. You can make this more explicit. Alternate translation: "So Hagar went back and gave birth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

named his son, whom Hagar bore

"named his son by Hagar" or "named his and Hagar's son"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

15 Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.

UST

15 So Hagar later gave birth to a son for Abram, and she named him Ishmael.

Genesis 16:16

Abram was

This introduces background information about Abram's age when these things happened. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

bore Ishmael to Abram

This means "gave birth to Abram's son, Ishmael." The focus is on Abram having a son.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

UST

¹⁶ Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.

Genesis 17

Genesis 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“The father of a multitude of nations”

Abram came to have many descendants. He had so many descendants that many of his immediate descendants became large people groups and nations.

God’s covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. It is important to note in this chapter that Isaac is the son who receives the promises associated with the covenant and not Ishmael. (See: [covenant](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Circumcision

Circumcision was an unusual practice in the ancient Near East. It served to separate the Hebrew people from the rest of the world. This chapter records the beginning of this practice among Abraham and his descendants. (See: [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#))

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person’s life. The beginning of the practice of circumcision was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Genesis 17:1

When Abram was ninety-nine years old

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

God Almighty

“the all-powerful God” or “the God who has all power”

Walk before me

Walking is a metaphor for living, and “before me” or “in my presence” here is a metaphor for obedience. Alternate translation: “Live the way I want you to” or “Obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹ When Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, “I am God Almighty. Walk before me, and be blameless.

UST

¹ When Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh appeared to Abram again and said to him, “I am God Almighty. I want you to live your life in the way that I want. I want you to not do anything wrong.

Genesis 17:2

Then I will confirm

"If you do this, then I will confirm"

I will confirm my covenant

"I will give my covenant" or "I will make my covenant"

covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, but he also requires Abram to obey him.

multiply you exceedingly

Here "multiply you" is an idiom that means he will give him more descendants. Alternate translation: "greatly increase the number of your descendants" or "give you very many descendants" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)

ULT

² Then I will confirm my covenant between me and you, and will multiply you exceedingly."

UST

² I will confirm my covenant between us, and I will cause you to have a very great number of descendants."

Genesis 17:3

Abram bowed low with his face to the ground

“Abram threw himself face down on the ground” or “Abraham immediately lay down with his face to the ground.” He did this to show that he respected God and would obey him.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- God
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

³ Abram bowed low with his face to the ground and God talked with him, saying,

UST

³ Abram bowed down with his face on the ground. Then God said to him,

Genesis 17:4

As for me

God used this phrase to introduce what he would do for Abram as part of his covenant with Abram.

behold, my covenant is with you

The word “behold” here says that what comes next is certain: “my covenant is certainly with you.”

the father of a multitude of nations

“the father of a great number of nations” or “the one after whom many nations name themselves”

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

⁴ “As for me, behold, my covenant is with you. You will be the father of a multitude of nations.

UST

⁴ “Listen to this! This is the covenant I am making with you: You will be the father of many groups of people.

Genesis 17:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- name
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation

ULT

⁵ No longer will your name be Abram, but your name will be Abraham—for I appoint you to be the father of a multitude of nations.

UST

⁵ Your name will be Abram no longer. Instead, your name will be Abraham, because I will make you the father of many groups of people.

Genesis 17:6

I will make you exceedingly fruitful

"I will cause you to have very many descendants"

I will make nations of you

"I will cause your descendants to become nations"

kings will descend from you

"among your descendants there will be kings" or "some of your descendants will be kings"

Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- nation
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁶ I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you, and kings will descend from you.

UST

⁶ I will cause you to have very, very many descendants, and I will cause nations and kings to be among them.

Genesis 17:7

General Information:

God continues speaking to Abraham.

throughout their generations

“for each generation”

for an everlasting covenant

“as a covenant that will last forever”

to be God to you and to your descendants after you

“to be your God and your descendants’ God” or “covenant”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- covenant
- seed, semen
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- God
- covenant
- seed, semen
- generation

ULT

⁷ I will establish my covenant between me and you and your descendants after you, throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your descendants after you.

UST

⁷ I will make this covenant between me and you and the generations of your descendants after you forever. Because of this covenant, you will worship and follow me as God, and so will your descendants.

Genesis 17:8

Canaan, for an everlasting possession

"Canaan, as an everlasting possession" or "Canaan, to possess forever"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

ULT

⁸ I will give to you, and to your descendants after you, the land where you have been living, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession, and I will be their God."

UST

⁸ I will give to you and to your descendants the land of Canaan, the whole land of Canaan, where you are now living. It will be an everlasting possession for them, and I will be their God."

Genesis 17:9

As for you

God uses this phrase to introduce what Abram would have to do as part of God's covenant with him.

keep my covenant

"observe my covenant" or "honor my covenant" or "obey my covenant"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- covenant
- Abraham, Abram
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- God
- covenant
- Abraham, Abram
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- generation

ULT

⁹ Then God said to Abraham, "As for you, you must keep my covenant, you and your descendants after you throughout their generations.

UST

⁹ Then God said to Abraham, "Now you must keep your part of the covenant that I am making with you, and your descendants must also obey it, for all generations.

Genesis 17:10

This is my covenant

"This is a requirement of my covenant" or "This is part of my covenant." This sentence introduces the part of the covenant that Abram must do.

Every male among you must be circumcised

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "You must circumcise every male among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Every male

This refers to human males.

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

ULT

10 This is my covenant, which you must keep, between me and you and your descendants after you: Every male among you must be circumcised.

UST

10 This is a requirement of the covenant that I am making between myself and you and all your descendants: Every male among you must be circumcised.

Genesis 17:11

You must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin

Some communities may prefer a less descriptive expression such as “You must be circumcised.” If your translation of “be circumcised” already includes the word for “foreskin”, you do not need to repeat it. This can be made active. Alternate translation: “You must circumcise every male among you” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the sign of the covenant

“the sign that shows that the covenant exists”

the sign

Possible meanings are 1) “the sign” or 2) “a sign.” The first means that there was one sign, and the second means that there may have been more than one sign. Here the word “sign” means a reminder of something that God had promised.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [covenant](#)

ULT

11 You must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin, and this will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.

UST

11 Cutting the foreskins of them will be the sign that you have accepted the covenant that I am making with you.

Genesis 17:12

General Information:

God continues speaking to Abraham.

Every male

"Every human male"

throughout your people's generations

"in every generation"

him who is bought with money

This refers to slaves. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "any male that you buy" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- silver
- descend, descendant
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- generation
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- silver
- descend, descendant
- alien, foreign, foreigner
- generation
- house

ULT

¹² Every male among you that is eight days old must be circumcised, throughout your people's generations. This includes him who is born into your household and him who is bought with money from any foreigner who is not one of your descendants.

UST

¹² Every male child among you must be circumcised when he is eight days old, in all future generations. That includes baby boys in your household and those born from slaves that have been bought, and foreigners who live among you but do not belong to your household.

Genesis 17:13

my covenant will be in your flesh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will mark my covenant in your flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for an everlasting covenant

“as a permanent covenant.” Because it was marked in flesh, no one could easily erase it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

13 He who is born into your household and he who is bought with your money must be circumcised. Thus my covenant will be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.

UST

13 It does not matter whether their parents are members of your household or slaves that you have bought; they must all be circumcised. Your bodies will have this mark to show you have accepted this everlasting covenant that I am making.

Genesis 17:14

uncircumcised male who is not circumcised

This can be stated in active form, and you may leave out words that will give wrong meaning in your language. Alternate translation: "male whom you have not circumcised" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Any uncircumcised male...foreskin will be cut off from his people

Possible meanings are 1) "I will cut off any uncircumcised male... foreskin from his people" or 2) "I want you to cut off any uncircumcised male...foreskin from his people."

cut off from his people

Possible meanings are 1) "killed" or 2) "sent away from the community." (See: [Euphemism](#))

He has broken my covenant

"He has not obeyed the rules of my covenant." This is the reason that he would be cut off from his people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)

ULT

14 Any uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin will be cut off from his people. He has broken my covenant."

UST

14 You must drive out from your community any male who has not been circumcised, because that person has disobeyed my covenant."

Genesis 17:15

As for Sarai

The words "As for" introduce the next person God talks about.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- name
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- name
- name
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

15 God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, do not call her Sarai any more. Instead, her name will be Sarah.

UST

15 God also said to Abraham, "As for Sarai, your wife, you must not call her Sarai any longer. I will change her name also. Her name will now be Sarah.

Genesis 17:16

I will give you a son by her

"I will make her bear a son for you"

she will become the mother of nations

"she will be the ancestor of many nations" or "her descendants will become nations"

Kings of peoples will come from her

"Kings of peoples will descend from her" or "Some of her descendants will be kings of peoples"

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- people, people group,
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- people, people group,
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

¹⁶ I will bless her, and I will give you a son by her. I will bless her, and she will become the mother of nations. Kings of peoples will come from her."

UST

¹⁶ I will bless her, and she will surely give birth to a son for you. And I will bless her so much that she will be the ancestor of people of many nations. Kings and people groups will be descended from her."

Genesis 17:17

said in his heart

“thought to himself” or “said to himself silently”

Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old?

Abraham used this rhetorical question because he did not believe that this could happen. Alternate translation: “Surely a man who is a hundred years old cannot father a child!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

How can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?

Again Abraham used a rhetorical question because he did not believe this could happen. The phrase “who is ninety years old” tells why Abraham did not believe that Sarah could bear a son. Alternate translation: “Sarah is ninety years old. Could she bear a son?” or “Sarah is ninety years old. Surely she could not bear a son!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

17 Then Abraham bowed low with his face to the ground, and laughed, and said in his heart, “Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old? How can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?”

UST

17 Abraham lay down with his face on the ground in respect before God. But then he laughed as he said to himself, “Can a man who is a hundred years old become a father of a son? And since Sarah is ninety years old, how can she bear a child?”

Genesis 17:18

Oh that Ishmael might live before you

"Please let Ishmael inherit the covenant that you have made with me" or "Perhaps Ishmael could receive your covenant blessing."
Abraham suggested something that he believed really could happen.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

18 Abraham said to God, "Oh that Ishmael might live before you!"

UST

18 Then Abraham said to God, "Perhaps you will let Ishmael receive your blessing and inherit all I possess."

Genesis 17:19**No, but Sarah your wife will bear**

God said this to correct Abraham's belief that Sarah could not have a son.

you must name him

The word "you" refers to Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- covenant
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- covenant
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

19 God said, "No, but Sarah your wife will bear you a son, and you must name him Isaac. I will establish my covenant with him as an everlasting covenant with his descendants after him.

UST

19 Then God replied, "No! Your wife Sarah will bear a son for you. You must name him Isaac. I will establish my covenant with him, one that will be an everlasting covenant with him and his descendants.

Genesis 17:20

As for Ishmael

The words “As for” show that God is switching from talking about the baby that would be born to talking about Ishmael.

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

will make him fruitful

This is an idiom that means “will cause him to have many children.” (See: [Idiom](#))

will multiply him abundantly

“I will cause him to have many descendants”

princes

“chiefs” or “rulers.” Ishmael’s twelve sons are different from the twelve sons of Jacob who were the fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

²⁰ As for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him and will make him fruitful and will multiply him abundantly. He will be the father of twelve princes, and I will make him become a great nation.

UST

²⁰ As for Ishmael, I have heard what you asked me to do for him. I will bless him so that he also will have many descendants. Among his descendants will be the leaders of twelve tribes. And I will cause his descendants to become a great nation.

Genesis 17:21

But my covenant I will establish with Isaac

God returns to talking about his covenant with Abraham and emphasizes that he would fulfill his promise with Isaac, not with Ishmael.

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

21 But my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear to you at this time in the next year."

UST

21 But it is with Isaac that I will establish my covenant—Isaac, the son whom Sarah will give birth to at this time next year."

Genesis 17:22

When he had finished talking with him

“When God had finished talking with Abraham”

God went up from Abraham

“God left Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

²² When he had finished talking with him, God went up from Abraham.

UST

²² When God finished talking to Abraham, God disappeared from his sight.

Genesis 17:23

every male among the men of Abraham's household

"every human male in Abraham's household" or "every male person in Abraham's household." It refers to human males of all ages: babies, boys, and men.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- flesh
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- silver
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- flesh
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- silver
- house
- house

ULT

²³ Then Abraham took Ishmael his son, and all those who were born into his household, and all those who were bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's household, and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in that same day, as God had said to him.

UST

²³ On that same day, Abraham took his son Ishmael and all the males that were in his household, including the sons of all the slaves he had bought, and circumcised them. He cut off their foreskins, just as God told him to do.

Genesis 17:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [flesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [flesh](#)

ULT

²⁴ Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

UST

²⁴ Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised,

Genesis 17:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- flesh

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- flesh

ULT

²⁵ Ishmael his son was thirteen years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

UST

²⁵ and Ishmael was thirteen years old when Abraham circumcised him.

Genesis 17:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

²⁶ On the very same day Abraham and Ishmael his son were both circumcised.

UST

²⁶ It was on that very same day that Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised.

Genesis 17:27

including those born into the household and those bought with money from a foreigner

“This includes those who were born in his household and those he had bought from foreigners”

those bought with money from a foreigner

This refers to servants or slaves.

those bought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom he had bought” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [silver](#)
- [alien](#), [foreign](#), [foreigner](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [silver](#)
- [alien](#), [foreign](#), [foreigner](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁷ All the men of his household were circumcised with him, including those born into the household and those bought with money from a foreigner.

UST

²⁷ All the males in his household, the ones who had been born there and those Abraham had bought from foreigners, were also circumcised.

Genesis 18

Genesis 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Three men

The three men who visited Abraham were probably angels. This is evident from Abraham's reaction to them. Also, it appears Abraham knew that he was speaking directly to Yahweh through these men. (See: [angel](#), [archangel](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Disbelief

When Sarah heard the news that she was going to have a baby, she laughed in disbelief because she was considered too old to have a baby. She also asked a rhetorical question in order to further show her disbelief. This would have been considered an insult to God. (See: [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

In his exchange with God, Abraham did not show any sign of unbelief. Instead, he is asking God for mercy because he trusted in the character of God. He does not question God's power to accomplish things as Sarah had done. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Sarah's age

It should be apparent that Sarah was physically no longer able to have children because of her age. There is a natural period in a woman's life when she stops being able to have children. The text assumes the reader understands that Sarah has already experienced this event. In English, this is called "menopause." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 18:1

Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees.

in the tent doorway

“at the opening of the tent” or “at the entrance of the tent”

heat of the day

“hottest time of day”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹ Yahweh appeared to Abraham by the oaks of Mamre, as he sat in the tent doorway in the heat of the day.

UST

¹ One day during that year, at the time of day when it was hot, Yahweh appeared to Abraham again near the big trees that belonged to Mamre. Abraham was sitting in the entrance to his tent.

Genesis 18:2

He looked up and, behold, he saw three men standing

"He looked up and saw, and behold, three men were standing"

behold, he saw

"he was surprised because he saw"

across from him

"nearby" or "there." They were near him, but far enough away for him to run to them.

bowed

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

² He looked up and, behold, he saw three men standing across from him. When he saw them, he ran to meet them from the tent door and bowed low to the ground.

UST

² Abraham looked up and was surprised to see three men standing near him. When he saw them, he ran to meet them. He prostrated himself with his face on the ground in respect.

Genesis 18:3

Lord

This is a title of respect. Possible meanings are 1) Abraham knew that one of these men was God or 2) Abraham knew that these men came on behalf of God.

if I have found favor in your sight

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that the Lord is pleased with him, and “your sight” is a metaphor representing the Lord’s evaluation. Alternate translation: “if you have evaluated me and approve” or “if you are pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

in your sight

Abraham is speaking to one of the men. (See: [Forms of You](#))

do not pass by

“please do not keep on going past”

your servant

“me.” Abraham refers to himself this way in order to show respect to his guest.

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

³ He said, “My Lord, if I have found favor in your sight, please do not pass by your servant.”

UST

³ He said to one of them, “Lord, if you are pleased with me, stay here for a little while.”

Genesis 18:4

Let a little water be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let me bring you some water” or “My servant will bring you some water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a little water

“some water.” Saying “little” was a polite way of showing generosity. Abraham would give them more than enough water.

wash your feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances.

Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)

ULT

⁴ Let a little water be brought, wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree.

UST

⁴ Allow my servants to bring a little water and wash your feet, and then rest under this tree.

Genesis 18:5

a little food

"some food." Saying "little" was a polite way of showing generosity. Abraham would give them more than enough food.

your...you

Abraham speaks to all three of the men, so "you" and "your" are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [bread](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [bread](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁵ Let me bring a little food, so that you may refresh yourselves. Afterwards you can go your way, since you have come to your servant." They replied, "Do as you have said."

UST

⁵ Since you have come here to me, allow me to bring you some food so that you can gain strength before you leave." The men replied, "All right, do as you have said."

Genesis 18:6

three seahs

about 22 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

bread

This bread was probably cooked quickly on a hot stone. It may have been flat or round like small loaves or rolls.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

⁶ Then Abraham quickly went into the tent to Sarah, and said, "Hurry, get three seahs of fine flour, knead it, and make bread."

UST

⁶ Then Abraham hurried into the tent and said to Sarah, "Quick, get twenty kilograms of our best flour and make some bread!"

Genesis 18:7

he hurried

“the servant hurried”

to prepare it

“to cut it up and roast it”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ Then Abraham ran to the herd, and took a calf that was tender and good, and gave it to the servant, and he hurried to prepare it.

UST

⁷ Then he ran to the herd of cattle and selected a calf whose meat would be tender and tasty. He gave it to one of his servants, who hurried to kill and cook it.

Genesis 18:8

curds

This refers to the solid part of fermented milk. It may have been yogurt or cheese.

the calf that had been prepared

“the roasted calf”

before them

“before the three visitors”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- devour

ULT

⁸ He took curds and milk, and the calf that had been prepared, and placed the food before them, and he stood by them under the tree while they ate.

UST

⁸ When the meat was cooked, Abraham brought some curds, milk, and the meat that the servant had prepared. He placed them in front of them. Then he stood near them under a tree while they ate.

Genesis 18:9

They said to him

"Then they said to Abraham"

ULT

⁹ They said to him, "Where is Sarah your wife?" He replied, "There, in the tent."

UST

⁹ After they ate, they asked him, "Where is Sarah, your wife?" He replied, "She is in the tent."

Genesis 18:10

He said, "I will certainly return to you

The word "He" refers to the man whom Abraham called "Lord" in [Genesis 18:3](#).

in the springtime

"when this same season comes next year" or "about this time next year"

see

The word "see" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

in the tent doorway

"at the opening of the tent" or "at the entrance of the tent"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

ULT

10 He said, "I will certainly return to you in the springtime, and see, Sarah your wife will have a son." Sarah was listening in the tent doorway, which was behind him.

UST

10 Then the leader of the group said, "I will return to you in the springtime next year, and listen, your wife Sarah will have an infant son." It happened that Sarah was listening at the entrance of the tent, which was behind the man who was speaking.

Genesis 18:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- elder, older, old

ULT

¹¹ Now Abraham and Sarah were old, very advanced in age, and Sarah had passed the age when women could bear children.

UST

¹¹ Now Abraham and Sarah were very old, and Sarah was far past the time of childbearing.

Genesis 18:12

After I am worn-out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?

You may want to add “of having a baby.” Sarah used this rhetorical question because she did not believe that she could have a child. Alternate translation: “I cannot believe that I will experience the joy of having a child. My master is also too old” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my master is old

This means “since my husband is also old.”

my master

This is a title of respect that Sarah gave to her husband Abraham.

ULT

¹² So Sarah laughed to herself, saying to herself, “After I am worn-out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?”

UST

¹² So Sarah laughed to herself, thinking, “My body is worn out, and my husband is old. So how can I have the pleasure of having a baby?”

Genesis 18:13

Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child, when I am old'?

God used this rhetorical question to show that he knew what Sarah was thinking and that he was not pleased with it. He repeats Sarah's rhetorical question ([Genesis 18:12](#)) using different words. Alternate translation: "Sarah was wrong to laugh and say, 'I will not bear a child because I am too old!'"(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹³ Yahweh said to Abraham, "Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child, when I am old'?"

UST

¹³ Yahweh said to Abraham, "Why did Sarah laugh? Why was she thinking, 'I am too old, so how can I bear a child'?"

Genesis 18:14

Is anything too hard for Yahweh?

"Is there anything that Yahweh cannot do?" Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were speaking of someone else to remind Abraham that he, Yahweh, is great and can do anything. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that I, Yahweh, cannot do!" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

At the time appointed by me, in the spring

"At the time I have appointed, which is in the spring"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- restore, restoration
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- restore, restoration
- feast, feasting

ULT

¹⁴ Is anything too hard for Yahweh? At the time appointed by me, in the spring, I will return to you. About this time next year Sarah will have a son."

UST

¹⁴ Is there anything too difficult for me? I will return about this time next year in the springtime, the time I have fixed, and Sarah will have an infant son."

Genesis 18:15

Then Sarah denied it and said

"The Sarah denied it by saying"

He replied

"Yahweh replied"

No, you did laugh

"Yes, you did laugh." This means "No, that is not true; you did in fact laugh."

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread

ULT

¹⁵ Then Sarah denied it and said, "I did not laugh," for she was afraid. He replied, "No, you did laugh."

UST

¹⁵ Then Sarah was afraid, so she lied and said, "I did not laugh." But Yahweh said, "Do not deny it! You did laugh."

Genesis 18:16

to see them on their way

“to send them on their way” or “to say ‘Farewell’ to them.” It was polite to go some distance with guests as they were leaving.

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- walk, walked

ULT

16 Then the men arose to leave and looked down toward Sodom. Abraham went with them to see them on their way.

UST

16 When the three men got up to leave, they looked down into the valley toward the city of Sodom. Abraham was walking with them to say “Farewell” to them.

Genesis 18:17

Should I hide from Abraham what I am about to do

God used this rhetorical question to say that he was going to talk to Abraham about something very important and that it was best for him to do so. Alternate translation: "I should not and will not hide from Abraham what I am about to do" or "I should and will tell Abraham what I am about to do" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

17 But Yahweh said, "Should I hide from Abraham what I am about to do,

UST

17 Yahweh said to himself, "It is not right for me to prevent Abraham from knowing what I plan to do.

Genesis 18:18

The rhetorical question that begins with the words “Should I hide” in verse 17 ends here. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

since Abraham...in him?

The rhetorical question that begins with the words “Should I hide” in verse 17 ends here. God uses this rhetorical question to say that he was going to talk to Abraham about something very important and that it was best for him to do so. “I should not and will not hide... since Abraham in him.” or “I should and will tell...since Abraham in him” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

since...him?

“This is because...him”

all the nations of the earth will be blessed in him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bless all the nations of the earth through Abraham” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will be blessed in him

“will be blessed because of Abraham” or “will be blessed because I have blessed Abraham.” For translating “in him” see how you translated “through you” in [Genesis 12:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

¹⁸ since Abraham will indeed become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth will be blessed in him?

UST

¹⁸ Abraham’s descendants will become a great and powerful people group. And people of all people groups will be blessed because of what I do for him.

Genesis 18:19

that he may instruct

“that he will direct” or “so that he will command”

to keep the way of Yahweh...Yahweh may bring...he has said

Yahweh is speaking about himself as if he were another person.
Alternate translation: “to obey what I, Yahweh, require...I, Yahweh, may bring...I have said” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

to keep the way of Yahweh

“to obey the commands of Yahweh”

to do righteousness and justice

“by doing righteousness and justice.” This tells how to keep the way of Yahweh.

so that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham what he has said to him

“so that Yahweh may bless Abraham just as he said he would.” This refers to the covenant promise to bless Abraham and make him a great nation.

ULT

19 For I have chosen him so that he may instruct his children and his household after him to keep the way of Yahweh, to do righteousness and justice, so that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham what he has said to him.”

UST

19 I have chosen him in order that he will direct his children and their families so that they will obey me and do what is right and fair, so that I will do for Abraham what I have promised to do for him.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [statute](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [statute](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Genesis 18:20

the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "outcry" is expressed as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "so many people have been accusing the people of Sodom and Gomorrah of doing evil things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

their sin is so serious

"they have sinned so much"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Yahweh said, "Because the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great, and because their sin is so serious,

UST

²⁰ So Yahweh said to Abraham, "I have heard the terrible things that some people have been saying about the people of Sodom and Gomorrah. Their sins are very great.

Genesis 18:21

I will now go down there

"I will now go down to Sodom and Gomorrah"

go down there and see

"go down there to find out" or "go down there to decide"

see the outcry...that has come to me

Yahweh speaks as if he knew about this matter because he had heard the cries and accusations coming from the people who had suffered. This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "outcry" is expressed as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "as wicked as those who are accusing them say that they are" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

If not

"If they are not as wicked as the outcry suggests"

Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²¹ I will now go down there and see the outcry against her that has come to me, whether they have really done it. If not, I will know."

UST

²¹ So I will go down now, and I will see if all the terrible things that I have heard are true or not true."

Genesis 18:22

turned from there

“went out from Abraham’s camp”

Abraham remained standing before Yahweh

“Abraham and Yahweh remained together”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh

ULT

²² So the men turned from there, and went toward Sodom, but Abraham remained standing before Yahweh.

UST

²² Then the two other men turned and started walking toward Sodom. But Abraham kept standing in front of Yahweh.

Genesis 18:23

approached and said

“approached Yahweh and said” or “stepped closer to Yahweh and said”

sweep away

Abraham speaks of destroying people as if it were sweeping dirt with a broom. Alternate translation: “destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the righteous with the wicked

“the righteous people with the wicked people”

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

²³ Then Abraham approached and said, “Will you sweep away the righteous with the wicked?”

UST

²³ Abraham came closer to him and said, “Will you really destroy people who have done nothing wrong along with the wicked ones?”

Genesis 18:24

General Information:

Abraham continues talking to Yahweh.

Perhaps there are

“Suppose there are”

Will you sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

Abraham was hoping that Yahweh would say, “I will not sweep it away.” Alternate translation: “I think you would not sweep it away. Instead, you would spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

sweep it away

“destroy it.” Abraham speaks of destroying people as if it were sweeping dirt with a broom. Alternate translation: “destroy the people who live there” (See: [Metaphor](#))

not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

Abraham was hoping that God would say “I will spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous people there.”

spare the place

“let the people live”

for the sake of

“because of”

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#)

ULT

²⁴ Perhaps there are fifty righteous within the city. Will you sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

UST

²⁴ What will you do if there are fifty people in the city who have done nothing wrong? Will you really destroy them all, and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous people who have done nothing wrong?

Genesis 18:25

Far be it from you to do such a thing

Here “Far be it from you” is an idiom that means the person should never do something like that. Alternate translation: “I would never want you to do something like that” or “You should not want to do something like that” (See: [Idiom](#))

such a thing, killing

“such a thing as killing” or “such a thing, that is, killing”

the righteous should be treated the same as the wicked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you should treat the righteous the same way you treat the wicked” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Will not the Judge of all the earth do what is just?

Abraham used this rhetorical question to say what he expected God to do. Alternate translation: “The Judge of all the earth will certainly do what is just!” or “Since you are the Judge of all the earth, you will surely do what is right!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Judge

God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- judge, judgment
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- judge, judgment
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁵ Far be it from you to do such a thing, killing the righteous with the wicked, so that the righteous should be treated the same as the wicked. Far be it from you! Will not the Judge of all the earth do what is just?”

UST

²⁵ Certainly you would not do such a thing, to kill good people along with wicked ones, and treat good people and wicked people the same way. You could not do that, because you, who are the judge of everyone on the earth, will certainly do what is right regarding the people of Sodom!”

Genesis 18:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁶ Yahweh said, "If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city, then I will spare the whole place for their sake."

UST

²⁶ Yahweh replied, "If I find fifty people in Sodom who have done nothing wrong, I will spare the whole place for their sake."

Genesis 18:27

Look

The phrase “Look” here draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

I have undertaken to speak

“Pardon me for being so bold as to speak to you” or “Excuse me for daring to speak”

to my Lord

Abraham shows his respect to Yahweh by speaking to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else. Alternate translation: “to you, my Lord” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

only dust and ashes

This metaphor describes Abraham as a human being, who will die and whose body will turn into to dust and ashes. Alternate translation: “only a mortal man” or “as unimportant as dust and ashes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

²⁷ Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!

UST

²⁷ Abraham replied, “I should not be bold like this and speak to you, my Lord, because I am as worthless as dust and ashes.

Genesis 18:28

five less than fifty righteous

"only forty-five righteous people"

for lack of five

"if there are five fewer righteous people"

I will not destroy it

"I will not destroy Sodom"

ULT

²⁸ What if there are five less than fifty righteous? Will you destroy the whole city for lack of five?" Then he said, "I will not destroy it, if I find there forty-five."

UST

²⁸ But what will you do if there are only forty-five people who have done nothing wrong? Will you destroy everyone in the whole city because there are only forty-five and not fifty good people?" Yahweh replied, "I will not destroy it if I find that there are forty-five good people."

Genesis 18:29

He spoke to him

"Abraham spoke to Yahweh"

if there are forty found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "if you find forty righteous people there" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

for the forty's sake

"for the sake of the forty" or "if I find forty there." You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "for the sake of the forty righteous people" or "if I find forty righteous people there" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

He replied

"Yahweh answered"

I will not do it for the forty's sake

"I will not destroy the cities if I find forty righteous people there"

ULT

²⁹ He spoke to him yet again, and said, "What if there are forty found there?" He replied, "I will not do it for the forty's sake."

UST

²⁹ Abraham continued to speak to him like this, saying, "What will you do if you find that there are only forty good people there?" Yahweh replied, "I will not destroy them all, for the sake of the forty."

Genesis 18:30

thirty will be found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "you will find thirty righteous people there" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- [lord](#), Lord, master, sir

ULT

³⁰ He said, "Please do not be angry, Lord, so I may speak. Perhaps thirty will be found there." He replied, "I will not do it, if I find thirty there."

UST

³⁰ Abraham said, "Please do not be angry now. Let me speak again. What will you do if there are only thirty good people?" He replied, "I will not do it if I find that there are thirty there."

Genesis 18:31

Look

The phrase “Look” here draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

I have undertaken to speak

“Pardon me for being so bold as to speak to you” or “Excuse me for daring to speak.” See how this is translated in [Genesis 18:27](#).

twenty will be found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, “righteous people.” Alternate translation: “you will find twenty righteous people there” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

for the twenty’s sake

“for the sake of the twenty” or “if I find twenty there.” You may have to fill in the ellipsis, “righteous people.” Alternate translation: “for the sake of the twenty righteous people” or “if I find twenty righteous people there” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- [lord](#), Lord, master, sir

ULT

31 He said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord! Perhaps twenty will be found there.” He replied, “I will not destroy it for the twenty’s sake.”

UST

31 Abraham said, “I should not be bold and speak to you like this, my Lord. But what will you do if you find that there are only twenty good people there?” He replied, “I will not destroy the whole city, for the sake of those twenty.”

Genesis 18:32

Perhaps ten will be found there

"Perhaps you will find ten righteous people there"

Perhaps ten

"Perhaps ten righteous people" or "ten good people"

Then he said

"And Yahweh answered"

for the ten's sake

"if I find ten righteous people there"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

³² He said, "Please do not be angry, Lord, and I will speak this one last time. Perhaps ten will be found there." Then he said, "I will not destroy it for the ten's sake."

UST

³² Finally, Abraham said, "My Lord, do not be angry now. Just let me speak one time more. What will you do if you find that there are only ten good people there?" Yahweh answered, "I will not destroy the city for the sake of those ten."

Genesis 18:33

Yahweh went on his way

Here “went on his way” is an idiom that means he left, or he continued his journey. Yahweh appeared to Abraham in human form as a traveler. Alternate translation: “Yahweh departed” or “Yahweh continued on his journey” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

³³ Yahweh went on his way as soon as he had finished talking with Abraham, and Abraham returned home.

UST

³³ Abraham said no more. As soon as Yahweh finished speaking with Abraham, he left, and Abraham went home.

Genesis 19

Genesis 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The evil desires of the Sodomites

The men of Sodom desired to forcibly have sexual relations with the angels who came to the city appearing as men. Such action is known as “rape.” Their desire was viewed as especially evil because Lot was obligated to protect his guests at all costs, even that of sacrificing his own children for his guests. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

Hospitality

Hospitality, or being kind to a visitor, was very important in the Ancient Near East. Lot showed his guests loyalty by doing his utmost to protect them from the people of Sodom.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Contrasts

It is probable that Abraham’s faith and actions in chapter 18 are intended to contrast with the actions of the worldly Sodomites. (See: [faith](#))

Genesis 19:1

The two angels

The two men who have gone to Sodom ([Genesis 18:22](#)) are really angels.

the gate of Sodom

“the entrance to the city of Sodom.” The city had a wall around it, and people had to go through a gate to get into it. This was a very important place in a city. Important people often spent time there.

bowed down with his face to the ground

He put his knees on the ground then touched his forehead and nose to the ground.

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹ The two angels came to Sodom in the evening, while Lot was sitting at the gate of Sodom. Lot saw them, arose to meet them, and bowed down with his face to the ground.

UST

¹ That evening, the two angels arrived in Sodom. Lot was sitting at the gateway of the city. When he saw them, he got up to greet them and prostrated himself with his face on the ground.

Genesis 19:2

my masters

This was a term of respect Lot used for the angels.

I urge you to turn aside into your servant's house

"Please come and stay in your servant's house"

your servant's house

Lot refers to himself as their servant in order to show them respect.
(See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

wash your feet

People liked to wash their feet after traveling.

rise up early

"wake up early"

we will spend the night

When the two angels said this, they were referring only to themselves, not to Lot. The two of them planned to spend the night in the square. Some languages would use the exclusive form of "we" here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

town square

This is a public, outdoor place in the town.

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

² He said, "Please my masters, I urge you to turn aside into your servant's house, stay for the night, and wash your feet. Then you can rise up early and go on your way." They replied, "No, we will spend the night in the town square."

UST

² He said to them, "Gentlemen, please stay in my house tonight. You can wash your feet, and early tomorrow you can continue your journey." But they said, "No, we will just sleep in the city square."

Genesis 19:3

they went with him

“they turned and went with him”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- feast, feasting
- house

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- feast, feasting
- house

ULT

³ But he urged them strongly, so they went with him, and entered into his house. He prepared a meal and baked unleavened bread, and they ate.

UST

³ But Lot kept insisting strongly that they sleep in his house. So they entered his house with him, and he prepared a meal for them. He baked some bread without yeast, and they ate it.

Genesis 19:4

before they lay down

“before the people in Lot’s house lay down to go to sleep”

the men of the city, the men of Sodom

“the men of the city, that is, the men of Sodom” or just “the men of the city of Sodom”

the house

“Lot’s house”

both young and old

“from the youngest to the oldest.” This means “men of all ages” and refers to the men of Sodom who were surrounding Lot’s house.

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- house

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- house

ULT

⁴ But before they lay down, the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, both young and old, all the men from every part of the city.

UST

⁴ After they finished eating, before they went to bed, the men of the city of Sodom, all of them, from the young ones to the old ones, surrounded the house.

Genesis 19:5

that came in to you

“that went into your house”

we may know them

These words literally mean “we may know who they are,” but the men meant them as a euphemism for “we may have sexual relations with them” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁵ They called to Lot, and said to him, “Where are the men that came in to you tonight? Bring them out to us, that we may know them.”

UST

⁵ They called out to Lot, saying, “Where are the men who came to your house this evening? Bring them out, so that we can sleep with them!”

Genesis 19:6

after himself

“behind him” or “after he went through”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

ULT

⁶ So Lot went out the door to them and shut the door after himself.

UST

⁶ Lot went outside the house and shut the door behind him, so that they could not go inside.

Genesis 19:7

I beg you, my brothers

"I plead with you, my brothers"

my brothers

Lot spoke in a friendly way to the men of the city hoping that they would listen to him. Alternate translation: "my friends" (See: [Idiom](#))

do not act so wickedly

"do not do something so wicked" or "do not do such a wicked thing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

⁷ He said, "I beg you, my brothers, do not act so wickedly.

UST

⁷ He said to them, "My friends, do not do such an evil thing!

Genesis 19:8

Look

“Pay attention” or “Look here”

who have not known any man

This is a polite way of saying that the daughters had not had sexual relations with any man. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated similar words in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

whatever is good in your eyes

“whatever you desire” or “whatever you think is right”

under the shadow of my roof

The two men were guests in Lot’s home, so he needed to protect them. The word “roof” is a synecdoche for the whole house and a metaphor for Lot protecting them. Alternate translation: “into my house, and God expects me to protect them” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

⁸ Look, I have two daughters who have not known any man. Let me, I beg you, bring them out to you, and you do to them whatever is good in your eyes. Only do nothing to these men, because they have come under the shadow of my roof.”

UST

⁸ Listen to me. I have two daughters who have never slept with any man. Let me bring them out to you now, and you can do with them whatever pleases you. But do not do anything to these men, because they are guests in my house, so I must protect them!”

Genesis 19:9

Stand back!

"Step aside!" or "Get out of our way!"

This one came here to live as a foreigner

"This one came here as an outsider" or "This foreigner came to live here"

This one

"Lot." The men are speaking to each other. If this would be unclear in your language, you may have the men speak to Lot here, as in UST.

and now

The speaker would not expect a foreigner to judge the people of that land. Alternate translation: "but even though he has no good reason to" (See: [Idiom](#))

he has become our judge

Here "has become our judge" is an idiom that means Lot is acting as if he can tell the men what actions are right or wrong. Alternate translation: "he acts as if he has the authority to tell us what is right and what is wrong" (See: [Idiom](#))

Now we

"Because you are telling us that what we are doing is wrong, we"

we will deal worse with you than with them

The men are angry that Lot said, "Do not act so wickedly" ([Genesis 19:7](#)), so they are threatening to act more wickedly than Lot had feared at first. Alternate translation: "we will act more wickedly with you than we will with them" (See: [Idiom](#))

They pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and came near to break down the door

Possible meanings are 1) "They kept coming closer to the man, to Lot, until they were close enough to break down the door" or 2) they physically pushed Lot up against the wall or door of the house and were about to break the door down.

the man...Lot

This is two ways of referring to Lot.

Translation Words - ULT

- [judge, judgment](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

⁹ They said, "Stand back!" They also said, "This one came here to live as a foreigner, and now he has become our judge! Now we will deal worse with you than with them." They pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and came near to break down the door.

UST

⁹ But they replied, "Get out of our way! You are a foreigner; so you have no right to tell us what is right! We will do worse things to you than we will do to them!" Then they lunged toward Lot, and tried forcefully to break down the door.

Translation Words - UST

- judge, judgment
- afflict, affliction, distress

Genesis 19:10

But the men

“But Lot’s two guests” or “But the two angels”

the men reached out their hands and brought...them and shut

Your language may need to add that the men opened the door first. Alternate translation: ‘the men opened the door far enough so they could reach out their hands and pull...them, and then they shut’
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

10 But the men reached out their hands and brought Lot into the house with them and shut the door.

UST

10 But the two angels opened the door carefully, reached out their hands, and pulled Lot inside the house. Then they quickly shut the door.

Genesis 19:11

Lot's visitors struck with blindness the men

The phrase "struck with blindness" is a metaphor; the visitors did not physically hit the men. Alternate translation: "Lot's visitors blinded the men" or "they took away their sight" (See: [Metaphor](#))

both young and old

"men of all ages." This merism emphasizes that the visitors blinded all the men. This could indicate social standing rather than age. Alternate translation: "both small and great" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

11 Then Lot's visitors struck with blindness the men who were outside the door of the house, both young and old, so that they became exhausted when they were trying to find the door.

UST

11 Then they caused all the men who were outside the door of the house, young and old, to become blind, so that they could not find the door.

Genesis 19:12

Then the men said

"Then the two men said" or "Then the angels said"

Do you have anyone else here?

"Are there any other members of your family in the city?" or "Do you have any other family members in this place?"

whoever you have in the city

"any other members of your family living in this city"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- bridegroom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- bridegroom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹² Then the men said to Lot, "Do you have anyone else here? Any sons-in-law, your sons and your daughters, and whoever you have in the city, get them out of here.

UST

¹² Then the two angels said to Lot, "Who else is with you here? If you have sons or sons-in-law or daughters or anyone else in the city who is related to you, take them out of the city,

Genesis 19:13

we are about to destroy

The word “we” here is exclusive. Only the two angels would destroy the city; Lot would not destroy it. If your language has an exclusive form of “we,” use it here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

the accusations against it before Yahweh have become so loud

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “accusations” is expressed as a verb. See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 18:20](#). Alternate translation: “so many people have been telling Yahweh that the people of this city are doing evil things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

13 For we are about to destroy this place, because the accusations against it before Yahweh have become so loud that he has sent us to destroy it.”

UST

13 because we are going to destroy this place. Yahweh has heard many terrible things that some people have said about this city, and he has sent us to destroy it.”

Genesis 19:14

Lot went out

"So Lot left the house"

his sons-in-law, the men who had promised to marry his daughters

The phrase "the men who had promised to marry his daughters" explains what "sons-in-law" means here. Alternate translation: "the men who were going to marry his daughters" or "his daughters' fiancés" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

14 Lot went out and spoke to his sons-in-law, the men who had promised to marry his daughters, and said, "Quick, get out of this place, for Yahweh is about to destroy the city." But to his sons-in-law he seemed to be joking.

UST

14 So Lot went and spoke to the men who had pledged to marry his daughters. He said to them, "Hurry! Get out of this city, because Yahweh is about to destroy it!" But his future sons-in-law thought he was joking.

Genesis 19:15

When the morning dawned

"Just before the sun came up"

Get going

"Go now"

you are not swept away in the punishment of the city

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so Yahweh does not also destroy you when he punishes the people of this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

not swept away in the punishment

God destroying the people of the city is spoken of as if a person were sweeping away dust. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the city

Here "city" stands for the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁵ When the morning dawned, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Get going, take your wife and your two daughters that are here, so you are not swept away in the punishment of the city."

UST

¹⁵ As it was about to dawn the next morning, the two angels urged Lot, saying, "Get up quickly! Take your wife and your two daughters who are here with you and leave! If you do not, you will be swept away when we destroy the city!"

Genesis 19:16

But he lingered

"But Lot hesitated" or "But Lot did not start to leave"

So the men grabbed

"So the two men grabbed" or "So the angels grabbed"

was merciful to him

"had compassion on Lot." Yahweh is described as being "merciful" because he was sparing the lives of Lot and his family instead of destroying them when he destroyed the people of Sodom for the wrong they had done.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

16 But he lingered. So the men grabbed his hand, and the hand of his wife, and the hands of his two daughters, because Yahweh was merciful to him. They brought them out, and set them outside the city.

UST

16 When Lot hesitated, the angels grasped his hand and his wife's hand and the hands of his two daughters. They led them outside the city safely. The angels did that because Yahweh was acting mercifully toward them.

Genesis 19:17

When they had brought them out

"When the two men had brought Lot's family out"

Run for your lives!

This is a way of telling them to run so that they do not die. Alternate translation: "Run away and save your lives!" (See: [Idiom](#))

Do not look back

The phrase "at the city" is understood. Alternate translation: "Do not look back at the city" or "Do not look back at Sodom" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

on the plain

This means the plain of the Jordan River. This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

so you are not swept away

It is understood that they would swept away with the people of the city. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "or else God will destroy you along with the people of the city" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

not swept away

God destroying the people of the city is spoken of as if a person were sweeping away dust. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)

ULT

17 When they had brought them out, one of the men said, "Run for your lives! Do not look back, or stay anywhere on the plain. Escape to the mountains so you are not swept away."

UST

17 When they were outside the city, one of the angels said, "If you want to stay alive, run away quickly! Do not look back! And do not stop anywhere in the valley! Flee to the hills! If you do not, you will die!"

Genesis 19:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

18 Lot said to them, “No, please, my masters!

UST

18 But Lot said to one of them, “No, sir, do not make me do that!

Genesis 19:19

Your servant has found favor in your eyes

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “You have been pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Your servant has

Lot was showing respect by referring to himself as “your servant.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant, have” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

you have shown me great kindness in saving my life

The abstract noun “kindness” can be stated as “kind.” Alternate translation: “you have been very kind to me by saving my life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

I cannot escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me, and I will die

Being unable to get far enough away from Sodom when God destroys the city is spoken of as if “disaster” is a person that will chase and catch up with Lot. Alternate translation: “My family and I will certainly die when God destroys the people of Sodom, because the mountains are too far away for us to get there safely” (See: [Personification](#))

my life...I cannot escape...overtake me, and I will die

It is implied that Lot’s family would die along with him. Alternate translation: “our lives...we cannot escape...overtake us, and we will die” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 Your servant has found favor in your eyes, and you have shown me great kindness in saving my life, but I cannot escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me, and I will die.

UST

19 Please, listen. You have been pleased with me and have been very kind to me and spared my life. But I cannot flee to the mountain. If I try to do that, I will die in this disaster.

Genesis 19:20

let me escape there (is it not a little one?), and my life will be saved

Lot used this rhetorical question to get the angels to notice that the city really is a small one. Alternate translation: “let me escape there. You can see how small it is. If you let us go there we will live” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

let me escape there

Lot’s full request can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “instead of destroying that city, let me escape there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my life will be saved

It is implied that the lives of Lot’s family will be saved along with his. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that we will live” or “so that we will survive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

Translation Words - UST

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

ULT

²⁰ Look, that city over there is near enough to flee to, and it is a little one. Please, let me escape there (is it not a little one?), and my life will be saved.”

UST

²⁰ Listen to me. There is a town nearby. Let me run there now. It is only a small town, and if you do not destroy it, our lives will be saved if we go there.”

Genesis 19:21

I am granting this request also

"I will do what you have asked"

Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- face, facial

ULT

²¹ He said to him, "Alright, I am granting this request also, that I will not destroy the city which you have mentioned.

UST

²¹ One of the angels said to Lot, "I will allow you to do what you have requested. And I will not destroy the town you are talking about.

Genesis 19:22

cannot do anything

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “cannot destroy the other cities” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Zoar

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name Zoar sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘little.’ Lot called this town ‘little’ in Genesis 19:20.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

22 Hurry! Escape there, for I cannot do anything until you arrive there.” Therefore the city was called Zoar.

UST

22 But hurry! Run there, because I cannot destroy anything until you arrive.” People later called the name of the town Zoar, which means ‘not-important,’ because Lot said that it was a small village.

Genesis 19:23

The sun had risen upon the earth

“The sun had risen over the earth.” The phrase “upon the earth” can be left implicit as it is in the UST where it is not translated. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

when Lot reached Zoar

It is implied that Lot’s family is with him. Alternate translation: “when Lot and his family arrived at Zoar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²³ The sun had risen upon the earth when Lot reached Zoar.

UST

²³ As the sun was rising, Lot and his family arrived in the town which is now called Zoar.

Genesis 19:24

Yahweh rained down upon Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from Yahweh out of the sky

The phrase “from Yahweh” stands for God’s power to cause the sulfur and fire to fall on the city. Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused sulfur and fire to fall from the sky onto Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

sulfur and fire

These two words are used together to describe one object. Alternate translation: “burning sulfur” or “fiery rain” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

²⁴ Then Yahweh rained down upon Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from Yahweh out of the sky.

UST

²⁴ Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to fall down on Sodom and Gomorrah like rain from the sky.

Genesis 19:25

those cities

This refers primarily to Sodom and Gomorrah, but also to three other towns.

the inhabitants of the cities

“the people who lived in the cities”

ULT

²⁵ He destroyed those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and the plants that grew on the ground.

UST

²⁵ In that way, he destroyed those cities and all the people who were living in those cities. He also destroyed everything in the valley, including all the plants.

Genesis 19:26

she became a pillar of salt

“she became like a statue of salt” or “her body became like a tall stone of salt.” Because she disobeyed the angel who told them not to look back at the city, God caused her to become something like a statue made out of rock salt.

ULT

²⁶ But Lot's wife, who was behind him, looked back, and she became a pillar of salt.

UST

²⁶ But Lot's wife stopped and looked back to see what was happening, so she died, and her body later became a pillar of salt.

Genesis 19:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial

ULT

²⁷ Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he had stood before Yahweh.

UST

²⁷ That morning, Abraham got up and went to the place where he had stood in front of Yahweh.

Genesis 19:28

behold

The word “behold” draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

like the smoke of a furnace

This shows that it was a very large amount of smoke. Alternate translation: “like the smoke from a very large fire” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

²⁸ He looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the land of the plain. He looked and behold, smoke was rising from the land like the smoke of a furnace.

UST

²⁸ He looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah, and he was surprised to see that all over the valley, smoke was rising, like the smoke of a huge furnace.

Genesis 19:29

General Information:

Verse 29 is a summary of this chapter.

God called Abraham to mind

This tells why God rescued Lot. To “call to mind” is a way of saying “remember.” This does not imply that God forgot about Abraham. It means he considered Abraham and had mercy on him. Alternate translation: “God thought about Abraham and had mercy on him” (See: [Idiom](#))

out of the midst of the destruction

“away from the destruction” or “away from danger”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

29 So when God destroyed the cities of the plain, God called Abraham to mind. He sent Lot out of the midst of the destruction when he destroyed the cities in which Lot had lived.

UST

29 So when God destroyed those cities in the valley, he did not forget to help Abraham, and he rescued Lot from the disaster that occurred in the cities where Lot lived.

Genesis 19:30

Lot went up from Zoar to live in the mountains

The phrase “went up from” is used because Lot went to a higher elevation in the mountains.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread

ULT

30 But Lot went up from Zoar to live in the mountains with his two daughters, because he was afraid to live in Zoar. So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.

UST

30 Lot was afraid to stay in Zoar, so he left there and moved with his two daughters to the mountain, and they lived in a cave.

Genesis 19:31

The firstborn...the younger

Here “firstborn” and “younger” are nominal adjectives that refer to Lot’s two daughters according to their birth order. Alternate translation: “Lot’s first daughter...Lot’s last daughter” or “The older daughter...the younger daughter” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

to lie with us

These words are a euphemism for sexual relations. (See: [Euphemism](#))

according to the way of all the world

Here “the world” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “as people everywhere do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

31 The firstborn said to the younger, “Our father is old, and there is no man anywhere to lie with us according to the way of all the world.

UST

31 One day the older daughter said to the younger daughter, “Our father is old, and there is no man in this area who will have sexual relations with us, as people all over the earth do.

Genesis 19:32

drink wine

It can be made explicit that their goal was to get him drunk.
Alternate translation: “drink wine until he gets drunk” or “get drunk with wine” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

we will lie with him

To “lie with” someone is a euphemism for having sexual relations with that person. Alternate translation: “we will have sexual relations with him” (See: [Euphemism](#))

so that we may extend our father’s line

This speaks about giving Lot descendants as if his family were a line that they are making longer. Alternate translation: “so that we can bear children who will be our father’s descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

32 Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, so that we may extend our father’s line.”

UST

32 Let us make our father drink wine until he gets drunk. Then we can sleep with him without him knowing it. In that way he will cause us to become pregnant and we can bear children who will be our father’s descendants.”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- walk, walked
- wine, wineskin, new wine

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- walk, walked
- wine, wineskin, new wine

Genesis 19:33

lay with her father

This is probably a euphemism for sexual activity. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with her father" (See: [Euphemism](#))

when she lay down

Possible meanings are 1) these words are literal, a complement to "when she got up," or 2) they are a euphemism for sexual relations. Alternate translation: "when she had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

33 So they made their father drink wine that night. Then the firstborn went in and lay with her father; he did not know when she lay down, nor when she got up.

UST

33 So that night they caused their father to become drunk. And the older daughter went in and slept with her father, but he was so drunk that he did not know when she lay down with him or when she got up.

Genesis 19:34

Let us make him drink wine...father's line

See how you translated these phrases in [Genesis 19:32](#).

drink wine

It can be made explicit that their goal was to get him drunk.
Alternate translation: "drink wine until he gets drunk" or "get drunk with wine" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that we may extend our father's line

This speaks about giving Lot descendants as if his family were a line that they are making longer. Alternate translation: "so that we can bear children who will be our father's descendants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

ULT

³⁴ The next day the firstborn said to the younger, "Listen, here I lay last night with my father. Let us make him drink wine tonight also, and you should go in and lie with him, so that we may extend our father's line."

UST

³⁴ The next day, his older daughter said to his younger daughter, "Listen to me. Last night I slept with our father. Let us cause him to become drunk again tonight! This time you can go and sleep with him. If he sleeps with you, you can become pregnant, and that way you can have a child, too."

Genesis 19:35

So they made...or when she got up

See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 19:33](#).

lay with him

This is probably a euphemism for sexual activity. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

when she lay down

Possible meanings are 1) these words are literal, a complement to "when she got up," or 2) they are a euphemism for sexual relations. See how these words are translated in [Genesis 19:33](#). Alternate translation: "when she had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁵ So they made their father drink wine that night also, and the younger went and lay with him. He did not know when she lay down or when she got up.

UST

³⁵ So that night, they caused their father to become drunk with wine again, and then his younger daughter went and slept with him. But again, he was so drunk that he did not know when she lay down with him or when she got up.

Genesis 19:36

were pregnant by their father

“became pregnant by their father” or “conceived children with their father”

ULT

³⁶ So both the daughters of Lot were pregnant by their father.

UST

³⁶ So Lot caused his two daughters to become pregnant.

Genesis 19:37

He became

“He is”

the Moabites of today

“the Moab people who are now living”

of today

The word “today” refers to the time when the author of Genesis was living. The author was born and wrote this many years after Lot’s family lived and died.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

³⁷ The firstborn gave birth to a son, and named him Moab. He became the ancestor of the Moabites of today.

UST

³⁷ The older one later gave birth to a son, whom she named Moab. He became the ancestor of the Moab people group.

Genesis 19:38

Ben-Ammi

This is a male name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the people of Ammon

“the descendants of Ammon” or “the Ammon people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³⁸ As for the younger daughter, she also gave birth to a son, and named him Ben-Ammi. He became the ancestor of the people of Ammon of today.

UST

³⁸ The younger one also gave birth to a son, whom she named Ben-Ammi. He became the ancestor of the people that are now called the Ammon people group.

Genesis 20

Genesis 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“She is my sister”

Abraham was afraid the people of Gerar would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Sarah to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Abraham’s sister, they would have shown favor to him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor, favorable, favoritism](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Irony

Abraham believed that the people of Gerar did not fear Yahweh, but when confronted by Yahweh, the king showed that he feared Yahweh. Instead, it was Abraham who did not show any fear of Yahweh when he sinned. This is irony. (See: [fear, afraid, dread](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Genesis 20:1

Shur

This is a desert region on the eastern border of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Negev
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- Negev
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹ Abraham journeyed from there toward the land of the Negev, and lived between Kadesh and Shur. He was a foreigner living in Gerar.

UST

¹ Abraham left Mamre and moved southwest to the Negev desert. There he lived between Kadesh and Shur. He lived as a foreigner in the town of Gerar.

Genesis 20:2

sent for Sarah and took her

“made his men go get Sarah and bring her to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

² Abraham said concerning Sarah his wife, “She is my sister.” So Abimelech king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her.

UST

² While he was there, he told people that Sarah was his sister, not his wife. Then King Abimelech of Gerar sent some of his men to get Sarah, and they brought her to him to be his wife.

Genesis 20:3

God came to Abimelech

"God appeared to Abimelech"

Behold

"pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: "

you are a dead man

This is a strong way of saying the king will die. Alternate translation: "you will certainly die soon" or "I will kill you" (See: [Idiom](#))

a man's wife

"a married woman"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³ But God came to Abimelech in a dream in the night, and said to him, "Behold, you are a dead man because of the woman whom you have taken, for she is a man's wife."

UST

³ But God appeared to Abimelech in a dream during the night and said to him, "Listen to me! You are going to die because the woman you took is another man's wife."

Genesis 20:4

Now...her

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to information about Abimelech. (See: [Background Information](#))

Abimelech had not come near her

This is a polite way of saying he did not have sex with her. Alternate translation: “Abimelech had not slept with Sarah” or “Abimelech had not touched Sarah” (See: [Euphemism](#))

even a righteous nation

Here “nation” stands for the people. Abimelech is worried that God will punish not only him, but his people also. Alternate translation: “even a people who are innocent” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁴ Now Abimelech had not come near her and he said, “Lord, would you kill even a righteous nation?”

UST

⁴ But Abimelech had not slept with her, so he said, “Lord, since the people of my nation and I are innocent, will you kill us?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#)
- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#)
- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Genesis 20:5

Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?' Even she herself said, 'He is my brother.'

This has quotations within a quotation. They can be stated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Did he himself not tell me that she is his sister? Even she herself told me that he is her brother." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?'

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to remind God of something God already knew. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Abraham himself told me, 'She is my sister.'" or "Abraham said that she is his sister." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did he not himself say...Even she herself

The words "he himself" and "she herself" are used for emphasis to bring attention to Abraham and Sarah and to blame them for what happened. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands

Here "heart" stands for his thoughts or intentions. Also "hands" stands for his actions. Alternate translation: "I have done this with good intentions and actions" or "I have done this with no evil thoughts or actions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁵ Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?' Even she herself said, 'He is my brother.' I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands."

UST

⁵ Abraham told me, 'She is my sister,' and she also said, 'He is my brother.' I did not intend to do anything wrong; neither have I done anything wrong."

Genesis 20:6

God said to him

"God said to Abimelech"

in the integrity of your heart you did this

Here "heart" stands for his thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "you did this with good intentions" or "you did this without evil intentions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to touch her

This is a euphemism for having sex with Sarah. Alternate translation: "to sleep with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁶ Then God said to him in the dream, "Yes, I also know that in the integrity of your heart you did this, and I also kept you from sinning against me. Therefore I did not allow you to touch her."

UST

⁶ God said to him, "Yes, I know that you did not want to do anything wrong. That is why I prevented you from sinning against me. I did not allow you to touch her."

Genesis 20:7

the man's wife

"Abraham's wife"

you will live

"I will let you live"

all who are yours

"all of your people"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁷ Therefore, return the man's wife, for he is a prophet. He will pray for you, and you will live. But if you do not restore her, know that you and all who are yours will surely die."

UST

⁷ Therefore, return this man's wife to her husband, because he is a prophet. He will pray for you so that you may live. But if you do not return her to him, you will certainly die, and all the members of your household will also certainly die."

Genesis 20:8

He told all these things to them

"He told them everything that God had told him"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁸ Abimelech rose early in the morning and called all of his servants to himself. He told all these things to them, and the men were very afraid.

UST

⁸ Early the next morning, Abimelech summoned all his officials and told them everything that had happened. When they heard that, his men were very afraid that God would punish them.

Genesis 20:9

What have you done to us?

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to accuse Abraham. Alternate translation: "You have done something bad to us!" or "Look what you have done to us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to us

The word "us" here is exclusive and does not include Abraham and Sarah. If your language uses an exclusive form of "we" or "us," use it here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

How have I sinned against you, that you have brought...sin?

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to remind Abraham that he had not sinned against Abraham. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing against you to cause you to bring...sin." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin

To cause someone to be guilty of sinning is spoken of as if "sin" was a thing that could be placed on a person. Alternate translation: "that you should make me and my kingdom guilty of such a terrible sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

on my kingdom

Here "kingdom" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "on the people of my kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

You have done to me that which ought not to be done

"You should not have done this to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Abimelech called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? How have I sinned against you, that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin? You have done to me that which ought not to be done."

UST

⁹ Abimelech then summoned Abraham, and said to him, "You should not have done that to us! Did I do something wrong to you? Did I make you want me and my people to become guilty of a great sin? You have done things to me that you should not have done!"

Genesis 20:10

What prompted you to do this thing?

“What caused you to do this?” or “Why did you do this?” What Abraham did can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “Why did you tell me that Sarah is your sister?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Abimelech said to Abraham, “What prompted you to do this thing?”

UST

¹⁰ Why did you do this?”

Genesis 20:11

Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Because I thought that since no one here fears God, someone may kill me so they can take my wife." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

no fear of God in this place

Here "place" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "no one here in Gerar fears God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

fear of God

This means to deeply respect God and show that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹¹ Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.'

UST

¹¹ Abraham replied, "I said that she was my sister because I thought, 'The people in this place certainly do not respect God. Certainly they do whatever wrong things they wish. So they will kill me to get my wife.'

Genesis 20:12

Besides, she is indeed my sister

“Also, it is true that Sarah is my sister” or “Also, Sarah really is my sister”

the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother

“we have the same father, but we have different mothers”

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

¹² Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife.

UST

¹² Besides, Sarah really can be considered my sister, because she is the daughter of my father, although she is not the daughter of my mother. She is the daughter of another woman, and I married her.

Genesis 20:13

General Information:

Verse 13 is a continuation of Abraham's answer to Abimelech.

my father's house

Here "house" stands for Abraham's family. Alternate translation: "my father and the rest of my family" or "my father's household" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother."'

This has quotations within quotations. They can be stated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "I said to Sarah that I wanted her to be faithful to me by telling people everywhere we go that I am her brother" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

ULT

13 When God caused me to leave my father's house and travel from place to place, I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother."'

UST

13 Later, when God told me to move away from my father's household, I said to her, 'This is the way you can show that you are faithful to me: Everywhere we go, say about me, "This is my brother."'

Genesis 20:14

Abimelech took

“Abimelech brought some”

Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- flock, herd
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

14 Then Abimelech took sheep and oxen, and male and female slaves, and gave them to Abraham. Then he returned Sarah, Abraham’s wife, to him.

UST

14 So Abimelech brought some sheep and cattle and gave them to Abraham. He also gave him some male and female slaves. Then he returned Abraham’s wife Sarah to him.

Genesis 20:15

Abimelech said

"Abimelech said to Abraham"

Look

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

my land is before you

This is a way of saying "I make all of my land available to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Settle wherever it pleases you

"Live wherever you want"

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Abimelech said, "Look, my land is before you. Settle wherever it pleases you."

UST

¹⁵ And Abimelech said to him, "Look! My land is in front of you. Live in whatever place you wish!"

Genesis 20:16

a thousand

"1,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

It is to cover any offense against you in the eyes of all who are with you

Giving money to prove to others that Sarah is innocent is spoken of as if he is placing a cover over an offense so no one can see it. Alternate translation: "I am giving this to him, so that those who are with you will know that you have done nothing wrong" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "in the opinion" or "in the judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

before everyone, you are completely made right

The passive phrase "made right" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone will know that you are innocent" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

16 To Sarah he said, "Look, I have given your brother a thousand pieces of silver. It is to cover any offense against you in the eyes of all who are with you, and before everyone, you are completely made right."

UST

16 And he said to Sarah, "Look! I am giving a thousand pieces of silver to your brother. This is to ensure that no one will bring up this matter again and say that you have done anything wrong."

Genesis 20:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

¹⁷ Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech, his wife, and his female slaves so that they were able to have children.

UST

¹⁷ Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech's wife and his slave girls so that they could have children.

Genesis 20:18

completely infertile

“totally unable to have children”

because of Sarah, Abraham’s wife

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “because Abimelech had taken Abraham’s wife Sarah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

18 For Yahweh had caused all the women of the household of Abimelech to be completely infertile, because of Sarah, Abraham’s wife.

UST

18 This was because Yahweh had caused it to be impossible for any of the women in Abimelech’s household to bear children, because Abimelech had taken Abraham’s wife Sarah.

Genesis 21

Genesis 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sarah's anger

After Sarah was able to have her own child, and he survived infancy, she began to get angry with Abraham's other son, Ishmael. He would have been a constant reminder of her own sin. God blessed Ishmael, but he was not able to inherit the promises given to Abraham. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Abandoning Ishmael

According to the law at this time, Hagar was able to gain her freedom from slavery by abandoning any claim to receive an inheritance. This is why Hagar would have abandoned her son under the tree. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Treaty

The Gentile king, Abimelech, made a covenant or treaty with Abraham. It is possible that he did this because he recognized the power of Abraham's God, but his exact reasons are unknown. (See: [covenant](#))

Genesis 21:1

Yahweh paid attention to Sarah

Here the phrase “paid attention to” refers to Yahweh helping Sarah have a baby. Alternate translation: “Yahweh helped Sarah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹ Yahweh paid attention to Sarah as he had said he would, and Yahweh did for Sarah just as he had promised.

UST

¹ Yahweh acted very kindly toward Sarah, just as he said he would do. He did for Sarah exactly what he promised to do,

Genesis 21:2

bore a son to Abraham

“gave birth to Abraham’s son”

in his old age

“when Abraham was very old”

at the set time of which God had spoken to him

“at the exact time that God had told him it would happen”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- feast, feasting

ULT

² Sarah conceived and bore a son to Abraham in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.

UST

² for she became pregnant and gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was very old, at the time God promised it would happen.

Genesis 21:3

Abraham named his son, the one who had been born to him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac

“Abraham named his newborn son, the one Sarah gave birth to, Isaac” or “Abraham named their newborn son Isaac”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

³ Abraham named his son, the one who had been born to him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac.

UST

³ Abraham gave the name “Isaac” to the son Sarah delivered.

Genesis 21:4

Abraham circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old

"When his son Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him"

eight days

"8 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

had commanded him

"had commanded Abraham to do"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

⁴ Abraham circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old, just as God had commanded him.

UST

⁴ He also circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old, just as God had commanded him to do.

Genesis 21:5

one hundred

“100” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁵ Abraham was one hundred years old when his son Isaac was born to him.

UST

⁵ Abraham was one hundred years old when his son Isaac was born.

Genesis 21:6

God has made me laugh

Sarah was laughing because she was surprised and happy. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God has caused me to laugh joyfully" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

every one who hears

What people would hear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "everyone who hears about what God has done for me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

⁶ Sarah said, "God has made me laugh; every one who hears will laugh with me."

UST

⁶ Sarah said, "Although I was sad before because I did not have any children, God has now enabled me to laugh with joy, and everyone who hears about what God has done for me will laugh with me."

Genesis 21:7

Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one would have ever said to Abraham that Sarah will nurse children" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

nurse children

This is a polite way of referring to breast-feeding babies. Alternate translation: "feed a baby her own milk" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁷ She also said, "Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children, and yet I have borne him a son in his old age!"

UST

⁷ She also said, "No one would have said to Abraham that some day I would nurse a child, but I have given birth to a son when Abraham is very old."

Genesis 21:8

The child grew and...Isaac was weaned

“Wean” here is a polite way of saying the child was finished with breast feeding. Alternate translation: “Isaac grew, and when he no longer needed his mother’s milk, Abraham had a large feast” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

⁸ The child grew and was weaned, and Abraham made a great feast on the day that Isaac was weaned.

UST

⁸ The baby grew. The day came when he was taken off his mother’s milk. On that day, Abraham prepared a large feast to celebrate.

Genesis 21:9

the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham

The name of Hagar's son can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "Ishmael, the son of Hagar the Egyptian and Abraham" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

mocking

It can be stated explicitly that he was jeering or laughing at Isaac. Alternate translation: "laughing at Isaac" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

⁹ Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham, mocking.

UST

⁹ One day Sarah noticed that Hagar's son Ishmael was making fun of Isaac.

Genesis 21:10

she said to Abraham

"Sarah said to Abraham"

Drive out

"send away" or "get rid of"

this slave woman and her son

This refers to Hagar and Ishmael. Sarah probably did not refer to them by name because she was angry with them.

with my son, with Isaac

"with my son Isaac"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son

ULT

¹⁰ So she said to Abraham, "Drive out this slave woman and her son, for the son of this slave woman will not be heir with my son, with Isaac."

UST

¹⁰ So she said to Abraham, "Get rid of that slave woman from Egypt and her son! I do not want the son of that slave woman to take what my son Isaac will inherit."

Genesis 21:11

This thing was very grievous to Abraham

"Abraham was very unhappy about what Sarah said"

because of his son

"because it was about his son." It is implied that this means his son, Ishmael. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

11 This thing was very grievous to Abraham because of his son.

UST

11 Abraham was very upset about the matter, because he was also concerned about his son Ishmael.

Genesis 21:12

Do not be grieved because of the lad, and because of your servant woman

“Do not be upset about the boy and your handmaid”

Listen to her words in all she says to you about this matter

“Do everything that Sarah says to you about them”

it is through Isaac that your descendants will be named

The phrase “will be named” means those born through Isaac are the ones God considers to be the descendants that he promised Abraham. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Isaac is the one who will be the forefather of the descendants I promised to give you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- voice
- afflict, affliction, distress
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- voice
- afflict, affliction, distress
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹² But God said to Abraham, “Do not be grieved because of the lad, and because of your servant woman. Listen to her words in all she says to you about this matter, because it is through Isaac that your descendants will be named.

UST

¹² But God said to Abraham, “Do not be upset about your son, Ishmael, and about your servant Hagar. Listen to everything that Sarah tells you to do, and do it, because Isaac is the one who will be the forefather of the descendants I promised to give you.

Genesis 21:13

I will also make the son of the servant woman into a nation

The word “nation” means God will give him many descendants so that they become a great nation of people. Alternate translation: “I will make the servant woman’s son also become the father of a great nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- seed, semen
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- seed, semen
- nation

ULT

¹³ I will also make the son of the servant woman into a nation, because he is your descendant.”

UST

¹³ But I will also cause the son of your servant Hagar to be the ancestor of a great people group, because he is also your son.”

Genesis 21:14

took bread

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to food in general or 2) this refers to bread specifically. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a skin of water

"a bag of water." The water container was made out of animal skin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

14 Abraham rose up early in the morning, took bread and a skin of water, and gave it to Hagar, putting it on her shoulder. He gave her the boy and sent her away. She departed and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.

UST

14 So Abraham got up early the next morning. He got some food ready, put water in a bag, and gave it to Hagar. He put the bag on her shoulder, handed her Ishmael, and sent them away into the wilderness of Beersheba.

Genesis 21:15

When the water in the waterskin was gone

“When the water bag was empty” or “When they had drank all of the water”

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring

Translation Words - UST

- children, child, offspring

ULT

15 When the water in the waterskin was gone, she abandoned the child under one of the bushes.

UST

15 After Hagar and her son had drunk all the water in the bag, she put the boy under one of the bushes there.

Genesis 21:16

about the distance of a bowshot away

This refers to the distance that a person could shoot an arrow with a bow. This is about 100 meters.

Let me not look upon the death of the child

The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “die.” Alternate translation: “I do not want to watch the boy die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

she lifted up her voice and wept

Here “voice” stands for the sound of her crying. To “life up her voice” means to cry loudly. Alternate translation: “she cried out loudly and wept” or “she wept loudly” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#), [child](#), [offspring](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children](#), [child](#), [offspring](#)

ULT

16 Then she went, and sat down a short distance from him, about the distance of a bowshot away, for she said, “Let me not look upon the death of the child.” As she sat there across from him, she lifted up her voice and wept.

UST

16 Then she went and sat nearby, about as far as someone can shoot an arrow. She thought, “I cannot endure seeing my son die!” As she sat there, she began to cry loudly.

Genesis 21:17

the voice of the lad

“the boy’s voice.” Here “voice” stands for the sound of the boy crying or speaking. Alternate translation: “the sound of Ishmael” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the angel of God

“a messenger from God” or “God’s messenger”

out of heaven

Here “heaven” means the place where God lives.

What troubles you

“What is wrong” or “Why are you crying”

the voice of the lad where he is

Here “voice” stands for the sound of the boy crying or speaking. Alternate translation: “the sound of the boy lying over there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

17 God heard the voice of the lad, and the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said to her, “What troubles you, Hagar? Do not be afraid, for God has heard the voice of the lad where he is.

UST

17 Soon God heard the sound of Ishmael, so he sent one of his angels to call out from heaven to Hagar. He said, “Hagar, what is the matter with you? Do not be afraid, because God has heard the boy crying there.

Genesis 21:18

raise up the lad

"help the boy stand up"

I will make him into a great nation

To make Ishmael into a great nation means God will give him many descendants who will become a great nation. Alternate translation: "I will make his descendants become a great nation" or "I will make him become the ancestor of a great nation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

18 Get up, raise up the lad, and encourage him; for I will make him into a great nation."

UST

18 Go lift the boy up and help him be brave, because I will cause his descendants to become a great people group."

Genesis 21:19

God opened her eyes, and she saw

God making Hagar aware of the well is spoken of as if he literally opened her eyes. Alternate translation: “God caused Hagar to see” or “God showed her” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the skin

“the container made of skin” or “the bag”

the lad

“the boy” or “Ishmael”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

19 Then God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water. She went and filled the skin with water, and gave the lad a drink.

UST

19 Then God showed her a well of water. So she went to the well and filled the container with water, and gave the boy a drink.

Genesis 21:20

God was with the lad

Here the phrase “was with” is an idiom that means God helped or blessed the boy. Alternate translation: “God guided the boy” or “God blessed the boy” (See: [Idiom](#))

became an archer

“became very skilled at using a bow and arrows”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁰ God was with the lad, and he grew. He lived in the wilderness and became an archer.

UST

²⁰ God helped the boy as he grew up in the wilderness, and he became a good archer.

Genesis 21:21

got a wife

“found a wife”

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness

ULT

²¹ He lived in the wilderness of Paran, and his mother got a wife for him from the land of Egypt.

UST

²¹ He lived in the wilderness of Paran. Hagar got a wife for him from Egypt.

Genesis 21:22

It came about at that time

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Phicol

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

captain of his army

“commander of his army”

his army

The word “his” refers to Abimelech.

God is with you in all that you do

Here the phrase “is with you” is an idiom that means God helps or blesses Abraham. Alternate translation: “God blesses everything you do” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

22 It came about at that time that Abimelech and Phicol the captain of his army spoke to Abraham, saying, “God is with you in all that you do.”

UST

22 At that time, King Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, said to Abraham, “It is clear that God helps you in all that you do.”

Genesis 21:23

Now therefore

The word “Now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows. Alternate translation: “Therefore” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

swear to me here by God

This is an idiom meaning to make a solemn oath witnessed by a higher authority, in this instance, God. Alternate translation: “promise me with God as your witness” (See: [Idiom](#))

that you will not deal falsely with me

“that you will not lie to me”

will not deal falsely...with my descendants

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “will deal honestly with me and my descendants” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Show to me...covenant faithfulness that I have shown to you

The two men had made a covenant with each other. The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “loyal.” Alternate translation: “Be as faithful to me and to the land as I have been to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to the land

Here “land” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “to the people of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- God
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

23 Now therefore swear to me here by God that you will not deal falsely with me, nor with my offspring, nor with my descendants. Show to me and to the land in which you have been staying the same covenant faithfulness that I have shown to you.”

UST

23 So now, solemnly promise to me here, as God is listening, that you will not deceive me and my children, or my descendants. Act faithfully toward me and toward all the people here in the country where you are now living. Act faithfully toward me, as I have acted toward you.”

Genesis 21:24

I swear

This can be stated with the understood information. Alternate translation: "I swear to be as faithful to you and your people as you have been to me" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)
- [oath](#), [swear](#), [swearing](#), [swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)
- [oath](#), [swear](#), [swearing](#), [swear by](#)

ULT

²⁴ Abraham said, "I swear."

UST

²⁴ So Abraham swore an oath to do that.

Genesis 21:25

Abraham also complained to Abimelech

Possible meanings are 1) Abraham was complaining about what happened or 2) "Abraham also rebuked Abimelech"

concerning a well of water that Abimelech's servants had seized from him

"because Abimelech's servants had taken one of Abraham's wells"

seized from him

"taken from Abraham" or "had taken control of"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁵ Abraham also complained to Abimelech concerning a well of water that Abimelech's servants had seized from him.

UST

²⁵ Abraham also complained to Abimelech about one of Abraham's wells of water that Abimelech's servants had taken control of.

Genesis 21:26

I have not heard of it until today

"This is the first time I have heard about it"

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁶ Abimelech said, "I do not know who has done this thing. You did not tell me before now; I have not heard of it until today."

UST

²⁶ But Abimelech said, "I do not know who has done that. You did not tell me previously, and I did not hear about it until today."

Genesis 21:27

Abraham took sheep and oxen and gave them to Abimelech

This is a sign of friendship and that Abraham agrees to make covenant with Abimelech. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

²⁷ So Abraham took sheep and oxen and gave them to Abimelech, and the two men made a covenant.

UST

²⁷ So Abraham brought some sheep and cattle and gave them to Abimelech, and the two of them solemnly agreed to have peace between themselves.

Genesis 21:28

Abraham set seven female lambs of the flock by themselves

“Abraham separated seven female lambs from the flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

²⁸ Then Abraham set seven female lambs of the flock by themselves.

UST

²⁸ Abraham went to his flock and chose seven female lambs from it.

Genesis 21:29

What is the meaning of these seven female lambs that you have set by themselves?

“Why have you separated these seven lambs from the flock?”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram

ULT

²⁹ Abimelech said to Abraham, “What is the meaning of these seven female lambs that you have set by themselves?”

UST

²⁹ Abimelech asked Abraham, “Why have you taken these seven female lambs from your flock?”

Genesis 21:30

you will receive

“you will take”

from my hand

Here “hand” stands for Abraham. Alternate translation: “from me”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

it may be a witness

The word “it” refers to the gift of seven lambs.

so that it may be a witness for me

The abstract noun “witness” can be stated as “to prove.” Alternate translation: “to prove to everyone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

ULT

³⁰ He replied, “These seven female lambs you will receive from my hand, so that it may be a witness for me, that I dug this well.”

UST

³⁰ Abraham replied, “I want you to accept these female lambs from me. In this way, my gift to you will be proof to everyone that this well belongs to me because I dug it.”

Genesis 21:31

he called that place

"Abraham called that place"

Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying "Beersheba can mean either 'well of the oath' or 'well of seven.'"

they both

"Abraham and Abimelech"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

31 So he called that place Beersheba, because there they both swore an oath.

UST

31 So Abimelech accepted the lambs. Then Abraham named that place Beersheba, which means 'Well of the oath,' because he and Abimelech had sworn an oath there to be peaceful toward each other.

Genesis 21:32

Phicol

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 21:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

³² They made a covenant at Beersheba, and then Abimelech and Phicol, the captain of his army, returned to the land of the Philistines.

UST

³² After they made the treaty at Beersheba, Abimelech and his army commander, Phicol, left and returned to the land of the Philistines.

Genesis 21:33

a tamarisk tree

This is an evergreen tree that can grow in the desert. It can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: “a tree” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the eternal God

“the God who lives forever”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³³ Abraham planted a tamarisk tree in Beersheba. There he worshiped Yahweh, the eternal God.

UST

³³ Abraham planted a tamarisk tree there, and there he worshiped Yahweh, the eternal God.

Genesis 21:34

many days

“for a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- Philistines

ULT

³⁴ Abraham remained as a foreigner in the land of the Philistines many days.

UST

³⁴ Abraham stayed as an outsider in the land of the Philistine people for a long time.

Genesis 22

Genesis 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sacrificing his son

Although Isaac was not Abraham's only son, he was the son who was to inherit Abraham's promised blessings. It is possible this parallels God's actual sacrifice of his son, Jesus, for the sins of man. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Covenant affirmation

After important events, it is common for Scripture to affirm the tenants of a covenant. This serves as a reminder of the covenant and affirms it. (See: [covenant](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God tests Abraham

Extra care should be taken when translating "testing." It is best to avoid using the same word used for "tempting" even though they overlap in meaning. This is because Scripture also says God does not tempt anyone. (See: [test](#), [tested](#), [testing](#), [testing in the fire](#) and [tempt](#), [temptation](#) and James 2:13)

Genesis 22:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

after these things

This phrase refers to the events in chapter 21.

God tested Abraham

It is implied that God tests Abraham to learn if Abraham will be faithful to him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: God tested Abraham's faithfulness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹ It came about after these things that God tested Abraham. He said to him, "Abraham!" Abraham said, "Here I am."

UST

¹ Several years later, God tested Abraham to find out whether Abraham would obey him. He called out to Abraham, and Abraham replied, "I am here."

Genesis 22:2

your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “your only son whom I have promised” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

whom you love

This emphasizes Abraham’s love for his son, Isaac.

the land of Moriah

“the land called Moriah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

² Then God said, “Take your son, your only son, whom you love, Isaac, and go to the land of Moriah. Offer him there as a burnt offering upon one of the mountains there, which I will tell you about.”

UST

² God said, “Your son, Isaac, whom you love very much, is the only son I promised to give you. Take him with you and go together to the land of Moriah, and go up a mountain I will show you, and offer him as a burnt offering.”

Genesis 22:3

saddled his donkey

"loaded his donkey" or "put on his donkey what he needed for the journey"

young men

"servants"

set out on his journey

"started his journey" or "started traveling"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- donkey, mule
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- donkey, mule
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³ So Abraham rose early in the morning, saddled his donkey, and took two of his young men with him, along with Isaac his son. He cut the wood for the burnt offering, then set out on his journey to the place that God had told him about.

UST

³ So Abraham got up early the next morning, put a saddle on his donkey, and took with him two of his servants along with his son, Isaac. He also chopped some wood for a fire for a burnt offering. Then they started traveling to the place God told him about.

Genesis 22:4

On the third day

The word “third” is the ordinal number for three. Alternate translation: “After traveling for three days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

saw the place afar off

“saw far away the place that God had spoken of”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)

ULT

⁴ On the third day Abraham looked up and saw the place afar off.

UST

⁴ On the third day that they were traveling, Abraham looked up and saw in the distance the place where God wanted him to go.

Genesis 22:5

young men

“servants”

We will worship

The word “we” refers only to Abraham and Isaac, but not to the young men. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

come again to you

“return to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁵ Abraham said to his young men, “Stay here with the donkey, and I and the lad will go over there. We will worship and come again to you.”

UST

⁵ Abraham said to his servants, “You two stay here with the donkey while the boy and I go over there. We will worship God there, and then we will come back to you.”

Genesis 22:6

put it on Isaac his son

"had Isaac, his son, carry it"

He took in his own hand

Here "his own hand" emphasizes that Abraham himself carried these things. Alternate translation: "Abraham himself carried" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the fire

Here "fire" stands for a pan containing burning coals or a torch or lamp. Alternate translation: "something for starting a fire" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they went both of them together

"they left together" or "the two of them went together"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [hand](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [hand](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

ULT

⁶ Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and put it on Isaac his son. He took in his own hand the fire and the knife; and they went both of them together.

UST

⁶ Then Abraham took the wood to start a fire for the burnt offering and placed it on his son Isaac for him to carry. Abraham carried in his hand something for starting a fire. He also carried a knife, and the two of them walked along together.

Genesis 22:7

My father

This is a loving way for a son to speak to his father.

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?" See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

my son

This is a loving way for a father to speak to his son.

the fire

Here "fire" stands for a pan containing burning coals or a torch or lamp. See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:6](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the lamb for the burnt offering

"the lamb that you will give as a burnt offering"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

ULT

7 Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, "My father," and he said, "Here I am, my son." He said, "See, here is the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"

UST

7 Then Isaac spoke to his father Abraham, saying, "My father." Abraham replied, "Yes, my son, I am here!" Isaac said, "Look, we have wood and coals to light a fire, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"

Genesis 22:8

God himself

Here “himself” emphasizes that it is God who will provide the lamb.
(See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

will provide

“will give us”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

⁸ Abraham said, “God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son.” So they went on, both of them together.

UST

⁸ Abraham replied, “My son, God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering.” So the two of them continued walking along together.

Genesis 22:9

When they came to the place

"When Abraham and Isaac arrived at the place"

he bound

"he tied up"

on the altar, on top of the wood

"on top of the wood that was on the altar"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar (2)
- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar (2)
- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

⁹ When they came to the place that God had told him about, Abraham built an altar there and laid the wood on it. Then he bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.

UST

⁹ They arrived at the place God had told him about. There, Abraham built a stone altar and arranged the wood on top of it. Then he tied his son Isaac and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.

Genesis 22:10

reached out with his hand and took up the knife

“picked up the knife”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- hand

ULT

10 Abraham reached out with his hand and took up the knife to kill his son.

UST

10 Then Abraham took the knife and reached out to kill his son.

Genesis 22:11

the angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or 2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or 3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel." See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

from heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?" See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

11 Then the angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" and he said, "Here I am."

UST

11 But the angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham! Abraham!" Abraham replied, "I am here!"

Genesis 22:12

Do not lay your hand upon the lad, nor do anything to harm him

The phrase “Do no lay your hand upon” is a way of saying “do not harm.” God said basically the same thing twice to emphasize that Abraham should not hurt Isaac. Alternate translation: “Do not hurt the boy in any way” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Parallelism](#))

now I know...from me

The words “I” and “me” refer to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the words “I” and “me” when referring to Yahweh.

you fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

seeing that

“because I see that”

you have not withheld your son...from me

“you have not held back your son...from me.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you were willing to offer your son...to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

your son, your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 22:2](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹² He said, “Do not lay your hand upon the lad, nor do anything to harm him, for now I know that you fear God, seeing that you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me.”

UST

¹² The angel said, “Do not harm the boy, because now I know that you respect and obey God. I know this because you have not refused to sacrifice your only son.”

Genesis 22:13

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

was a ram caught in the bushes by his horns

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “was a ram whose horns were stuck in the bushes” or “was a ram stuck in the bushes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

went and took the ram

“Abraham went over to the ram and took it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

ULT

13 Abraham looked up and behold, behind him was a ram caught in the bushes by his horns. Abraham went and took the ram and offered him up as a burnt offering instead of his son.

UST

13 Then Abraham looked up and saw a ram nearby, in a thicket that had caught its horns. So Abraham went over and grabbed the ram and killed it, and sacrificed it on the altar as a burnt offering, instead of his son.

Genesis 22:14

will provide...will be provided

Use the same word for “provide” as you used in [Genesis 22:8](#).

to this day

“even now.” This means even to the time that the author was writing this book.

it will be provided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he will provide” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

14 So Abraham called that place, “Yahweh will provide,” and it is said to this day, “On the mountain of Yahweh it will be provided.”

UST

14 Abraham named that place “Yahweh will provide.” To the present day people say, “On Yahweh’s mountain, he will provide.”

Genesis 22:15

The angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or 2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or 3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "The angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel." See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

a second time

The word "second" is the ordinal number for two. Alternate translation: "again" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

from heaven

Here the word "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

15 The angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second time from heaven

UST

15 The angel of Yahweh called out to Abraham from heaven a second time.

Genesis 22:16

said—this is Yahweh's declaration

“spoke this message from Yahweh” or “declared these words of Yahweh.” This is a formal way of saying that the words that follow come directly from Yahweh.

by myself I have sworn

“I have promised and I am my witness.” To swear means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made. There is nothing more powerful for Yahweh to swear by than himself.

you have done this thing

“you obeyed me”

have not withheld your son

“have not kept back your son.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “were willing to offer your son to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

your son, your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 22:2](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [punish, punished, punishment, unpunished](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

16 and said—this is Yahweh's declaration—by myself I have sworn that because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son,

UST

16 He said, “I, Yahweh, declare to you that you did what I told you, and you have not held back your only son. So I solemnly swear, with myself as my witness,

Genesis 22:17

surely bless

“certainly bless”

I will greatly multiply your descendants

“I will cause your descendants to increase again and again” or “I will cause your descendants to be very many”

as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore

God compared Abraham’s descendants to the stars and the sand. Just as people cannot count the huge number of stars or the grains of sand, so there would be so many of Abraham’s descendants that people would not be able to count them. Alternate translation: “beyond what you can count” (See: [Simile](#))

as the stars of the heavens

Here the word “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

will possess the gate of their enemies

Here “gate” represents the whole city. To “possess the gate of their enemies” means destroying their enemies. Alternate translation: “will completely triumph over their enemies” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

ULT

17 I will surely bless you and I will greatly multiply your descendants as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore; and your descendants will possess the gate of their enemies.

UST

17 that some day your descendants will be as many as the stars in the sky and the grains of sand on the seashore. Your descendants will defeat their enemies and capture their cities.

Genesis 22:18

General Information:

The angel of Yahweh continues speaking to Abraham.

all the nations of the earth will be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I, the Lord, will bless all the people living everywhere" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

nations of the earth

Here "nations" stands for the people of the nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))

you have obeyed my voice

Here "voice" stands for what God said. Alternate translation: "you have obeyed what I said" or "you have obeyed me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [voice](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [voice](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

18 Through your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed my voice."

UST

18 You obeyed me, so by means of your descendants the people of all the nations on the earth will be blessed."

Genesis 22:19

Abraham returned

Only Abraham was named because he was the father, but it was implied that his son went with him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Abraham and his son went back” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

young men

“servants”

they departed

“they left that place”

he lived at Beersheba

Only Abraham was mentioned because he was the leader of his family and servants, but it was implied that they were with him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Abraham and his people stayed in Beersheba” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

19 So Abraham returned to his young men, and they departed and went together to Beersheba, and he lived at Beersheba.

UST

19 Then Abraham and Isaac returned to where his servants were waiting, and they went back together to Beersheba, and Abraham and his people continued to stay there.

Genesis 22:20

It came about after these things

"After these events." The phrase "these things" refers to the events of Genesis 22:1-19. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Abraham was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told Abraham" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Milkah has borne children, as well

"Milkah has also borne children"

Milkah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son

ULT

²⁰ It came about after these things that Abraham was told, "Milkah has borne children, as well, to your brother Nahor."

UST

²⁰ After these things happened, someone told Abraham, "Your brother Nahor's wife, Milkah, has also given birth to children."

Genesis 22:21

They were Uz his firstborn, Buz his brother

"The name of his firstborn was Uz, and the names of the rest of his children were Buz his brother"

Uz...Buz...Kemuel...Aram

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these except Aram are the sons of Nahor and Milkah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

ULT

²¹ They were Uz his firstborn, Buz his brother, Kemuel the father of Aram,

UST

²¹ Now the oldest son was Uz. The next was Buz. After him was Kemuel, the father of Aram.

Genesis 22:22

Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these are the sons of Nahor and Milkah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²² Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel.

UST

²² After Kemuel was Kesed, then Hazo, then Pildash, then Jidlaph, then Bethuel.

Genesis 22:23

Bethuel became the father of Rebekah

“Later Bethel became the father of Rebekah”

These were the eight children that Milkah bore to Nahor, Abraham’s brother

“These were the eight children of Milkah and Nahor, Abraham’s brother.” This refers to the children that were listed in [Genesis 22:21-22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

²³ Bethuel became the father of Rebekah. These were the eight children that Milkah bore to Nahor, Abraham’s brother.

UST

²³ Bethuel was the father of Rebekah. Those were the eight sons of Milkah, wife of Abraham’s brother, Nahor.

Genesis 22:24

His concubine

“Nahor’s concubine”

Reumah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

also bore

“also gave birth to”

Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁴ His concubine, whose name was Reumah, also bore Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.

UST

²⁴ Nahor also had a concubine, whose name was Beumah. She gave birth to four sons: Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.

Genesis 23

Genesis 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abraham's character

Abraham's interaction with the people show that he was greatly respected. This would have been unusual for a foreigner and indicates that Abraham was a man of great character. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Burial

Burial was a common practice when Abraham lived, but only the wealthy were able to bury their dead relatives in this way.

Genesis 23:1

Sarah lived a hundred and twenty-seven years

"Sarah lived 127 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

These were the years of the life of Sarah

Some translations do not include this sentence. (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

¹ Sarah lived a hundred and twenty-seven years. These were the years of the life of Sarah.

UST

¹ When Sarah was 127 years old,

Genesis 23:2

Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abraham mourned and wept for Sarah

“Abraham was very sad and cried because Sarah died”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

² Sarah died in Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan. Abraham mourned and wept for Sarah.

UST

² she died at the city of Kiriath Arba, which is now called Hebron, in the land of Canaan. Then Abraham mourned over her.

Genesis 23:3

rose up and went from his dead wife

“got up and left his wife’s body”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” or “the Hittites” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- face, facial

ULT

³ Then Abraham rose up and went from his dead wife, and spoke to the sons of Heth, saying,

UST

³ He left the body of his wife and spoke to some of the descendants of Heth. He said,

Genesis 23:4

among you

This idea may be expressed in terms of location. "in your country" or "here"

Please grant me a property

"Sell me some land" or "Allow me to buy a piece of land"

my dead

The nominal adjective "dead" can be stated as an adjective or a verb. Alternate translation: "my dead wife" or "my wife who has died" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

ULT

⁴ "I am a foreigner among you. Please grant me a property for a burial place among you, so that I may bury my dead."

UST

⁴ "I am a temporary settler living among you, so I do not own any land here. Sell me some land here so that I can bury my wife's body."

Genesis 23:5

The sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “The descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

⁵ The sons of Heth answered Abraham, saying,

UST

⁵ They replied to him,

Genesis 23:6

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

a prince of God

This is an idiom. This probably means “a powerful man” or “a mighty leader.” (See: [Idiom](#))

your dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “your wife who has died” or “your wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

the choicest of our tombs

“the best of our burial places”

refuse you his tomb

“withhold his burial place from you” or “refuse to give to you his tomb”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- bury, buried, burial
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- bury, buried, burial
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

6 “Listen to us, my master. You are a prince of God among us. Bury your dead in the choicest of our tombs. None of us will refuse you his tomb, so that you may bury your dead.”

UST

6 “Sir, you are a powerful man among us. Choose one of our finest tombs and bury your wife’s body in it. None of us will refuse to sell land to you for a tomb for your wife’s body.”

Genesis 23:7

bowed down

This means to bend over or kneel down very low to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth

“to the sons of Heth who lived in the area”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁷ Abraham arose and bowed down to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth.

UST

⁷ Then Abraham stood up and bowed in respect in front of the people who owned the land, the descendants of Heth.

Genesis 23:8

my dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “my wife who has died” or “my wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Ephron...Zohar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

⁸ He spoke to them, saying, “If you agree that I should bury my dead, then hear me and plead with Ephron son of Zohar, for me.

UST

⁸ He said to them, “If you say that you are willing for me to bury my wife’s body here, listen to me, and ask Ephron son of Zohar,

Genesis 23:9

the cave of Machpelah, which he owns, which is at the end of his field

“his cave that is at the end of his field in Machpelah”

the cave of Machpelah

“the cave in Machpela.” Machpela was the name of an area or region. Ephron owned a field in Machpela and the cave that was in the field. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which he owns

This tells something about the cave. Ephron owned the cave. (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

which is at the end of his field

This also tells something about the cave. The cave was at the end of Ephron’s field. (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

sell it to me publicly

“sell it to me in front of you all” or “sell it to me in your presence”

as a property

“as a piece of land that I may own and use”

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

ULT

⁹ Ask him to sell me the cave of Machpelah, which he owns, which is at the end of his field. For the full price let him sell it to me publicly as a property for a burial place.”

UST

⁹ to sell me the cave in the Machpelah area, which is at the end of his field. Ask him to sell it to me for the full price he wants, and to sell it to me in front of you all. In this way I can have a burial ground.”

Genesis 23:10

Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth

Here “Now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Ephron. (See: [Background Information](#))

Ephron

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the hearing of the sons of Heth

The abstract noun “the hearing” can be stated as “hear” or “listening.” Alternate translation: “so that all the sons of Heth could hear him” or “while all the sons of Heth were listening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all those who had come into the gate of his city

This tells which sons of Heth were listening. Alternate translation: “all those who had gathered at the gate of his city” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

gate of his city

The city gate was where the leaders of the city would meet to make important decisions.

his city

“the city where he lived.” This phrase shows that Ephron belonged to that city. It does not mean that he owned it.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Hittite
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Hittite
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

¹⁰ Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth, and Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the hearing of the sons of Heth, of all those who had come into the gate of his city, saying,

UST

¹⁰ Now Ephron was sitting among the people at the city gate where many descendants of Heth had gathered. He had heard what Abraham said to them.

Genesis 23:11

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

in the presence of the sons of my people

Here “presence” stands for the people serving as witnesses.
Alternate translation: “with my fellow countrymen as my witnesses”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

sons of my people

This means “my fellow countrymen” or “my fellow Hittites”

my people

This phrase shows that Ephron was part of that group of people. It does not mean that he was their leader.

I give it to you to bury your dead

“I give it to you. Bury your dead”

your dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “your wife who has died” or “your wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- people, people group,
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- people, people group,
- bury, buried, burial

ULT

11 “No, my master, hear me. I give you the field, and the cave that is in it. I give it to you in the presence of the sons of my people. I give it to you to bury your dead.”

UST

11 Ephron said, “No, sir, listen to me. I will give to you the field and the cave in it, without charge, with the people here as witnesses. Please bury your wife there.”

Genesis 23:12

bowed himself down

This means to bend over or kneel down very low to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

people of the land

“people who lived in that area”

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

¹² Then Abraham bowed himself down before the people of the land.

UST

¹² Abraham again bowed before the people who lived in the land,

Genesis 23:13

in the hearing of the people of the land

The abstract noun “the hearing” can be stated as “hear” or “listening”
Alternate translation: “so that the people who lived in the area could hear” or “while the people who lived in the area were listening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

But if you are willing

The word “but” shows a contrast. Ephron wanted to give the field to Abraham; Abraham wanted to pay for it. Alternate translation: “No, but if you are willing” or “No, but if you agree with this”

I will pay for the field

“I will give you money for the field”

my dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “my wife who has died” or “my wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

13 He spoke to Ephron in the hearing of the people of the land, saying, “But if you are willing, please hear me. I will pay for the field. Take the money from me, and I will bury my dead there.”

UST

13 and said to Ephron, as all the others were listening, “No, listen to me. If you are willing, I will pay for the field. You tell me what the price is, and I will give it to you. If you accept it, the field will become mine, and I can bury my wife’s body there.”

Genesis 23:14

Ephron

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Ephron answered Abraham, saying,

UST

¹⁴ Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him,

Genesis 23:15

Please, my master, listen to me

"Hear me, my master" or "Listen to me, kind sir"

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that between me and you?

Ephron meant that since he and Abraham were both so wealthy, 400 pieces of silver was a small amount. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The piece of land is worth only four hundred shekels of silver. For you and me, that is nothing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

four hundred shekels of silver

This is about 4.5 kilograms of silver. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

four hundred

"400" (See: [Numbers](#))

Bury your dead

The nominal adjective "dead" can be stated as a verb or simply as "wife." Alternate translation: "Go bury your wife who has died" or "Go bury your wife" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- silver
- bury, buried, burial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- silver
- bury, buried, burial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

15 "Please, my master, listen to me. A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that between me and you? Bury your dead."

UST

15 "Sir, listen to me. The land is worth four hundred pieces of silver. But the price is not important to you and me. Give me the money and bury your wife's body there."

Genesis 23:16

Abraham weighed out to Ephron the amount of silver

"Abraham weighed the silver and gave Ephron the amount" or
"Abraham counted out to Ephron the amount of silver"

the amount of silver that he had spoken

"the amount of silver that Ephron had said"

in the hearing of the sons of Heth

The abstract noun "the hearing" can be stated as "hear" or
"listening." Alternate translation: "so that all the sons of Heth could
hear him" or "while all the sons of Heth were listening" (See: [Abstract
Nouns](#))

the sons of Heth

Here "sons" stands for those who descended from Heth. See how
you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: "the descendants of Heth" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

according to the standard measurement of the merchants

"using the standard measurement of weight that merchants used." This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate
translation: "He weighed the silver the same way that the merchants used to weigh it"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

16 Abraham listened to Ephron and
Abraham weighed out to Ephron the
amount of silver that he had spoken in
the hearing of the sons of Heth, four
hundred shekels of silver, according to
the standard measurement of the
merchants.

UST

16 Abraham agreed with Ephron about
the price, and weighed for Ephron the
four hundred pieces of silver he had
suggested, as everyone was listening.
He used the standard weights for silver
used by people who sold things.

Genesis 23:17

Machpelah

Machpela was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that is, the field, the cave that was in it, and all the trees

This phrase explains what the author meant when he wrote “the field of Ephron.” It was not only the field, but also the cave and trees in the field.

passed

“became property that belonged”

ULT

17 So the field of Ephron, which was in Machpelah, which was next to Mamre, that is, the field, the cave that was in it, and all the trees that were in the field and all around its border, passed

UST

17 So Ephron’s field in the Machpelah area, near Mamre, and the cave in the field, and all the trees that were in the field and those marking the land’s boundary, they all became Abraham’s possession.

Genesis 23:18

to Abraham by purchase

These words complete the idea that begins with the word “passed” in verse 17. “became Abraham’s possession when he purchased it” or “belonged to Abraham after he bought it”

in the presence of the sons of Heth

Here “presence” stands for the people serving as witnesses. Alternate translation: “with the people of Heth watching as witnesses” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all those who had come into the gate of his city

This tells which sons of Heth saw Abraham buy the property. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:10](#). (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

gate of his city

The city gate was where the leaders of the city would meet to make important decisions.

his city

“the city where he lived.” This phrase shows that Ephron belonged to that city. It does not mean that he owned it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

18 to Abraham by purchase in the presence of the sons of Heth, before all those who had come into the gate of his city.

UST

18 This is how Abraham bought the property, as all the descendants of Heth were listening there at the city gate.

Genesis 23:19

After this

“After he bought the field”

the cave of the field

“the cave in the field”

the field of Machpelah

“the field in Machpelah”

that is, Hebron

Possible meanings are 1) Mamre was another name for Hebron or 2) Hebron was formerly called Mamre or 3) Mamre was very near the larger city of Hebron, so people usually called it Hebron.

ULT

19 After this, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which is next to Mamre, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan.

UST

19 After that, Abraham buried his wife Sarah's body in the cave in the field in the Machpelah area near Mamre, which is now called Hebron, in the land of Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Canaan, Canaanite
- bury, buried, burial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- Canaan, Canaanite
- bury, buried, burial
- face, facial

Genesis 23:20**passed to Abraham as a property for a burial place from the sons of Heth**

“became Abraham’s property for a burial ground when he bought it from the sons of Heth”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

ULT

²⁰ So the field and the cave in it passed to Abraham as a property for a burial place from the sons of Heth.

UST

²⁰ So the field and the cave in it were officially sold to Abraham by the descendants of Heth, for him to use as a burial ground.

Genesis 24

Genesis 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 24:60.

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage

Abraham would not allow his son to marry anyone from the people of Canaan. This is because it would cause his son to worship other gods. Intermarriage and worshiping false gods are things that frequently caused Abraham's descendants to struggle. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Abraham's wealth

There are many instances recorded in this chapter which highlight Abraham's significant wealth. He owned more than 10 camels and had large amounts of gold.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Put your hand under my thigh"

Many scholars believe this is a euphemism. Putting one's hand on a man's genitals was a way to make an important oath. It represented power and progeny. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Genesis 24:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

¹ Now Abraham was very old and Yahweh had blessed Abraham in all things.

UST

¹ Abraham was now a very old man. Yahweh had blessed Abraham in many ways.

Genesis 24:2

Put your hand under my thigh

Abraham was about to ask the servant to swear to do something. Putting his hand under Abraham's thigh would show that he would certainly do what he would swear to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [hand](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [hand](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

² Abraham said to his servant, the one who was the oldest of his household and who was in charge of all that he had, "Put your hand under my thigh

UST

² One day Abraham said to the chief servant of his household, the man who was in charge of all Abraham owned, "Put your hand between my thighs to solemnly promise you will do what I tell you.

Genesis 24:3

I will make you swear

This can be expressed as a command. Alternate translation: “swear” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

swear by Yahweh

The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made. “promise me with Yahweh as your witness”

the God of heaven and the God of the earth

“the God of heaven and earth.” The words “heaven” and “earth” are used together to mean every thing that God created. Alternate translation: “the God of everything in heaven and earth” (See: [Merism](#))

heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

from the daughters of the Canaanites

“from the Canaanite women” or “from the Canaanites.” This refers to Canaanite females.

among whom I make my home

“among whom I live.” Here, “I” stands for Abraham and all of his family and servants. Alternate translation: “among whom we live” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

ULT

³ and I will make you swear by Yahweh, the God of heaven and the God of the earth, that you will not get a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I make my home.

UST

³ Knowing that Yahweh, God who created the heavens and the earth, is listening, promise that you will not get a wife for my son, Isaac, from the daughters of the Canaan people among whom I am now living.

- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Genesis 24:4

But you will go

This can be stated as a command. Alternate translation: "Swear that you will go" or "But go" (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

my relatives

"my family"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁴ But you will go to my country, and to my relatives, and get a wife for my son Isaac."

UST

⁴ Instead, go to my country and to my relatives. Get a wife for my son Isaac from among them."

Genesis 24:5

What if

"What should I do if"

will not be willing to follow me

"will not follow me" or "refuses to come back with me"

Must I take your son back to the land from which you came

"Should I take you son to live in the land from which you came"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- restore, restoration
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- restore, restoration
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁵ The servant said to him, "What if the woman will not be willing to follow me to this land? Must I take your son back to the land from which you came?"

UST

⁵ The servant asked him, "If I find a woman among your relatives, what should I do if she is not willing to come back with me to this land? Should I take your son back there to the country you came from, so he can find a wife and live there?"

Genesis 24:6

Make sure that you do not take my son back there

The phrase “Make sure” emphasizes the command that follows. “Be careful not to take my son back there” or “You definitely must not take my son there”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- restore, restoration
- Abraham, Abram
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- son
- restore, restoration
- Abraham, Abram
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

⁶ Abraham said to him, “Make sure that you do not take my son back there!

UST

⁶ Abraham replied to him, “No! Be certain that you do not take my son there!

Genesis 24:7

who took me from my father's house

Here "house" stands for the people in his family. Alternate translation: "who took me from my father and the rest of my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

promised me with a solemn oath

"swore an oath to me"

saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land,'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "saying that he would give this land to my offspring" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he will send his angel

The words "he" and "his" refer to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

7 Yahweh, the God of heaven, who took me from my father's house and from the land of my relatives, and who promised me with a solemn oath saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land,' he will send his angel before you, and you will get a wife for my son from there.

UST

7 Yahweh, the God who created the heavens, brought me here. He brought me from my father's household and from the land where my relatives lived. He spoke to me and made a solemn promise to me. He said, 'I will give this land of Canaan to your descendants.' He will send an angel who will go there ahead of you and enable you to get a wife for my son and bring her to live here.

Genesis 24:8

General Information:

Verse 8 is a continuation of the instructions Abraham gave his servant.

But if the woman is not willing to follow you

“But if the woman refuses to come with you.” Abraham was answering the servant’s question from [Genesis 24:5](#). (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

you will be free from this oath of mine

“you will be released from the oath you made to me.” Not having to fulfill an oath is spoken of as if the person is free from an object to which he was bound. Alternate translation: “you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

⁸ But if the woman is not willing to follow you, then you will be free from this oath of mine. Only you are not to take my son back there.”

UST

⁸ But if the woman you find will not come back with you, you are free to disregard the promise you are making. The only thing that you must not do is to take my son to live there.”

Genesis 24:9

put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master

This was to show that he would certainly do what he was swearing to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

swore to him

“made an oath to him”

concerning this matter

“concerning Abraham’s request” or “that he would do what Abraham said”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- appoint, appointed
- Abraham, Abram
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- appoint, appointed
- Abraham, Abram
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

⁹ So the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master, and swore to him concerning this matter.

UST

⁹ So the servant put his hand between Abraham’s thighs and made a solemn promise about the matter.

Genesis 24:10

departed. He also took

The sentence starting with “He also took” gives additional information about what the servant took with him on the journey. He gathered them before he departed.

He also took with him all kinds of gifts from his master

This means he also took many good things that his master wanted to give to the woman's family.

departed and went

“set out and went” or “he left and went”

the city of Nahor

Possible meanings are 1) the city where Nahor lived” or 2) “the city called Nahor.” If you can translate it without choosing a meaning, do so. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

10 The servant took ten of his master's camels and departed. He also took with him all kinds of gifts from his master. He departed and went to the region of Aram Naharaim, to the city of Nahor.

UST

10 Then the servant took ten of his master's camels and loaded them with all kinds of goods that his master gave him to take along. Then he left to go to Aram Naharaim, which is in northern Mesopotamia. He arrived in the city of Nahor.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- camel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- camel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 24:11

He made the camels kneel down

Camels are tall animals with long legs. He made them bend their legs and lower their bodies to the ground. "He made the camels lie down"

well of water

"water well" or "well"

draw water

"get water"

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

11 He made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water. It was evening, the time that women go out to draw water.

UST

11 When the servant arrived at Nahor, it was in late afternoon, at the time when the women go to the well to get water. He made the camels kneel down near the well, which was outside the city.

Genesis 24:12

Then he said

"Then the servant said"

grant me success today and show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham

You can state this with the connecting word "by." This makes clear how the servant wants God to show covenant faithfulness. Alternate translation: "Show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham by granting me success today" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

grant me success

"give me success." The servant wanted to find a good wife for Abraham's son. The abstract noun "success" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "help me to succeed" or "make me able to do what I have come here to do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful." Alternate translation: "be faithful to the covenant you have with my master Abraham" or "be faithful to my master Abraham" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram

ULT

¹² Then he said, "Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, grant me success today and show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham.

UST

¹² The servant prayed, "Yahweh, God whom my master Abraham worships, enable me to be successful today! Keep faith with my master, Abraham!

Genesis 24:13

Look, here I am standing

"You can see me standing here"

the spring of water

"the spring" or "the well"

the daughters of the men of the city

"the young women of the city"

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹³ Look, here I am standing by the spring of water, and the daughters of the men of the city are coming out to draw water.

UST

¹³ Listen to me. I am standing near a well of water, and the daughters of the people of the city are coming to get water.

Genesis 24:14

Let it happen like this

“Let it happen this way” or “Make this happen”

When I say to a young woman, ‘Please lower your pitcher so that I may drink,’

This is a quotation within a quotation. This can be expressed with an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “When I ask a young woman to let me have a drink of water from her jar” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Please lower your pitcher

The women carried the pitchers on their shoulder. She would have to lower it to give the man a drink.

pitcher

a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids

that you have shown covenant faithfulness to my master

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “been faithful.” Alternate translation: “that you have been faithful to the covenant you have with my master Abraham” or “you have been faithful to my master Abraham” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- camel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- camel
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

14 Let it happen like this. When I say to a young woman, ‘Please lower your pitcher so that I may drink,’ and she says to me, ‘Drink, and I will water your camels too,’ then let her be the one that you have appointed for your servant Isaac. By this I will know that you have shown covenant faithfulness to my master.”

UST

14 I am asking you this: I will say to one of the girls, ‘Please lower your jar so that I may drink some water.’ If she says, ‘Drink some water, and I will draw some water for your camels, too,’ I will know that she is the woman whom you chose to be a wife for your servant, Isaac, and I will know that you have kept faith with my master.”

Genesis 24:15

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Rebekah was born to Bethuel son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother

“Rebekah's father was Bethuel. Bethuel's parents were Milkah and Nahor. Nahor was Abraham's brother”

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah's father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahor

This is the name of a man. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 11:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Milkah

Milkah was Nahor's wife and Bethuel's mother. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 11:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [consume, devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [consume, devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

15 It came about that even before he had finished speaking, behold, Rebekah came out with her water pitcher on her shoulder. Rebekah was born to Bethuel son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother.

UST

15 Before he finished praying, a young woman named Rebekah arrived there, carrying a jar on her shoulder. She was the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milkah, the wife of Abraham's younger brother Nahor.

Genesis 24:16

She went down to the spring...and came up

The spring was somewhere lower in elevation than where the servant was standing.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- virgin, virginity
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- virgin, virginity
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

16 The young woman was very beautiful and a virgin. She had known no man. She went down to the spring, filled her pitcher and came up.

UST

16 She was very beautiful and a virgin. No man had ever slept with her. She went down to the edge of the well, filled her jar with water, and then came back up.

Genesis 24:17

to meet her

"to meet the young woman"

a little drink of water

"a little water"

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 Then the servant ran to meet her and said, "Please give me a little drink of water from your pitcher."

UST

17 Abraham's servant immediately ran to meet her, and said, "Please give me a little water from your jar."

Genesis 24:18

my master

“sir.” Here the woman uses this term of respect to refer to the man, though she is not his slave.

she quickly let down her pitcher on her hand

“she quickly lowered her pitcher.” She was carrying the pitcher on her shoulder. She had to lower it to get water for the servant.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand

ULT

18 She said, “Drink, my master,” and she quickly let down her pitcher on her hand, and gave him a drink.

UST

18 She replied, “Drink some, sir!” She lowered her jar from her shoulder to her hands and gave him a drink.

Genesis 24:19

I will draw water

"I will get water"

Translation Words - ULT

- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- consume, devour

ULT

¹⁹ When she had finished giving him a drink, she said, "I will draw water for your camels also, until they have finished drinking."

UST

¹⁹ After she had finished giving him a drink, she said, "I will also get some water for your camels, until they have had enough to drink."

Genesis 24:20

So she hurried and emptied her pitcher

"So she quickly emptied her pitcher"

the trough

"the animals' water trough." A trough is a long open container for holding water for animals to drink.

Translation Words - ULT

- camel

Translation Words - UST

- camel

ULT

²⁰ So she hurried and emptied her pitcher into the trough, then ran again to the well to draw water, and drew water for all his camels.

UST

²⁰ She quickly emptied the water in her jar into the animals' water trough. Then she ran back to the well, and kept getting water for all the camels.

Genesis 24:21

The man

"The servant"

watched her

"watched Rebekah" or "watched the young woman"

to see

Learning something is often spoken of as if it were seeing. Alternate translation: "to know" or "to determine" (See: [Metaphor](#))

had prospered his journey

"had fulfilled the purpose of his journey" or "had made his journey successful." You can make explicit what specifically the servant was trying to determine. Alternate translation: "was showing him the woman who would become Isaac's wife" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

or not

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "or not prospered his journey" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [tongue, language](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [tongue, language](#)

ULT

²¹ The man watched her in silence to see whether Yahweh had prospered his journey or not.

UST

²¹ The servant just watched her, without saying anything. He wanted to know if Yahweh had caused his trip to be successful or not.

Genesis 24:22

a gold nose ring weighing half a shekel

“a gold nose ring that weighed six grams.” The weight indicates the value of the ring. Alternate translation: “an expensive gold nose ring” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

two gold bracelets for her arms weighing ten shekels

“two gold bracelets for her arms that weighed 110 grams.” The weight shows their size and value. Alternate translation: “two large gold bracelets for her arms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

22 As the camels finished drinking, the man brought out a gold nose ring weighing half a shekel, and two gold bracelets for her arms weighing ten shekels,

UST

22 Finally, after the camels finished drinking, the servant took out a gold nose ring that weighed six grams, and two gold bracelets for her arms, each weighing about 110 grams, gave them to Rebekah, and told her to put them on.

Genesis 24:23

Whose daughter are you

"Who is your father"

is there room in your father's house

"is there a place in your father's house"

for us

Apparently other men went on this journey with Abraham's servant. Here "us" refers to the servant and those traveling with him, but not to those to whom he was speaking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

to spend the night

"to stay tonight" or "to stay for the night"

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²³ and asked, "Whose daughter are you? Tell me please, is there room in your father's house for us to spend the night?"

UST

²³ Then he said, "Tell me whose daughter you are. Also, tell me, is there room in your father's house for me and my men to sleep there tonight?"

Genesis 24:24

She said

"Rebekah said" or "the young woman said"

to him

"to the servant"

I am the daughter of Bethuel son of Milkah, whom she bore to Nahor

"Bethuel is my father, and his parents are Milkah and Nahor"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- son
- pray, prayer

ULT

²⁴ She said to him, "I am the daughter of Bethuel son of Milkah, whom she bore to Nahor."

UST

²⁴ She replied, "My father's name is Bethuel. He is the son of Nahor and his wife Milkah.

Genesis 24:25

We have plenty of both straw and feed

It is understood that the straw and feed are for the camels. You can make clear this understood information. Alternate translation: "We have plenty of straw and feed for the camels" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

for you to spend the night

"for you to stay tonight" or "where you can stay for the night"

for you

Here "you" refers to the servant and those traveling with him. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ULT

²⁵ She also said to him, "We have plenty of both straw and feed, and also room for you to spend the night."

UST

²⁵ Yes, we have room where you all can sleep tonight, and we also have plenty of straw and grain to feed the camels."

Genesis 24:26

the man

“the servant”

bowed down

This is a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

26 Then the man bowed down and worshiped Yahweh.

UST

26 The servant bowed and worshiped Yahweh.

Genesis 24:27

has not forsaken his covenant faithfulness and his trustworthiness toward my master

“has not stopped showing his covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness to my master.” The abstract nouns “faithfulness” and “trustworthiness” can be stated as “to be faithful and trustworthy.” Alternate translation: “has not stopped being faithful to his covenant and trustworthy toward my master” or “has not stopped being faithful and trustworthy to my master” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

has not forsaken

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “continues to show” (See: [Litotes](#))

my master’s relatives

“my master’s family” or “my master’s clan”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [true, truth](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

ULT

²⁷ He said, “Blessed be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not forsaken his covenant faithfulness and his trustworthiness toward my master. As for me, Yahweh has led me directly to the house of my master’s relatives.”

UST

²⁷ He said, “I thank Yahweh, God whom my master Abraham worships. He has continued to show that he is faithful and trustworthy toward my master. Yahweh led me on this journey straight to the house of my master’s relatives!”

- [house](#)

Genesis 24:28

ran and told her mother's household

Here "household" stands for all the people living in her mother's house. Alternate translation: "ran to the house and told her mother and everyone there" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all of these things

"everything that had just happened"

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

28 Then the young woman ran and told her mother's household about all of these things.

UST

28 The girl ran and told everyone in her mother's household about what had happened.

Genesis 24:29

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Rebekah. The author introduces her brother, Laban, to the story. (See: [Background Information](#) and [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)

ULT

²⁹ Now Rebekah had a brother, and his name was Laban. Laban ran to the man who was out at the road by the spring.

UST

²⁹ Rebekah had a brother whose name was Laban. Laban went quickly to the servant, who was outside by the well.

Genesis 24:30

When he had seen the nose ring...and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister

These things happened before he ran out to the man. This tells why Laban ran out to the man. (See: [Order of Events](#))

when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, "This is what the man said to me,"

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "when he had heard his sister Rebekah tell what the man had said to her" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

behold, he

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. "it was just as she had said: he"

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

³⁰ When he had seen the nose ring and the bracelets on his sister's arms, and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, "This is what the man said to me," he went to the man, and, behold, he was standing by the camels at the spring.

UST

³⁰ He was surprised to have seen the nose ring and the bracelets on his sister's arms and to have heard Rebekah tell what the man had said to her. So he went out and saw the man standing near the camels, close to the well.

Genesis 24:31

Come, you

"Come in, you" or "Enter, you"

you blessed of Yahweh

"you whom Yahweh has blessed"

you

Here the word "you" refers to Abraham's servant. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Why are you standing outside?

Laban used this question to invite Abraham's servant into his house.

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You do not need to stay outside." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³¹ Then Laban said, "Come, you blessed of Yahweh. Why are you standing outside? I have prepared the house, and a place for the camels."

UST

³¹ He said to the man, "You who have been blessed by Yahweh, come! Why are you standing out here? I have prepared a room for you in the house, and a place for the camels to stay."

Genesis 24:32

So the man came to the house

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

he unloaded the camels

It is not clear who did this work. This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Laban’s servants unloaded the camels” or “the camels were unloaded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The camels were given straw and feed, and water was provided

This does not say who did the work. If you state this in active form use “Laban’s servants” as the subject. Alternate translation: “Laban’s servants gave straw and feed to the camels, and they provided water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to wash his feet...him

“for Abraham’s servant and the men who were with him to wash their feet”

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

³² So the man came to the house and he unloaded the camels. The camels were given straw and feed, and water was provided to wash his feet and the feet of the men who were with him.

UST

³² So the servant went to the house, and Laban’s servants unloaded the camels. They brought straw and grain for the camels, and water for him and the men with him to wash their feet.

Genesis 24:33

They set

Here, the word “they” refers to Laban’s family members or to the household servants.

set food before him

“gave food to the servant”

said what I have to say

“spoken my words” or “told you why I am here”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

³³ They set food before him to eat, but he said, “I will not eat until I have said what I have to say.” So Laban said, “Speak on.”

UST

³³ They set food in front of him for him to eat, but he said, “I will not eat until I tell you what I need to tell you.” So Laban said, “Tell us!”

Genesis 24:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³⁴ He said, "I am Abraham's servant.

UST

³⁴ So the servant said, "I am Abraham's servant.

Genesis 24:35

he has become great

Here the word "he" refers to Abraham.

become great

"become very wealthy"

He has given

The word "he" refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- silver
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- silver
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³⁵ Yahweh has blessed my master very much and he has become great. He has given him flocks and herds, silver and gold, male servants and female servants, and camels and donkeys.

UST

³⁵ Yahweh has greatly blessed my master so that he has become very rich. Yahweh has given him many sheep and cattle, a lot of gold and silver, male and female servants, camels and donkeys.

Genesis 24:36

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

bore a son to my master

"gave birth to a son"

he has given...to him

"my master has given...to his son"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

ULT

³⁶ Sarah, my master's wife, bore a son to my master when she was old, and he has given everything that he owns to him.

UST

³⁶ My master's wife, Sarah, bore a son for him when she was very old, and my master has given to his son everything he owns.

Genesis 24:37

My master made me swear, saying

"My master made me swear that I would do what he told me to do. He said"

from the daughters of the Canaanites

This refers to Canaanite females. Alternate translation: "from the Canaanite women" or "from the Canaanites"

in whose land I make my home

"among whom I live." Here, "I" stands for Abraham and all of his family and servants. Alternate translation: "among whom we live" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- pray, prayer
- Canaan, Canaanite
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- pray, prayer
- Canaan, Canaanite
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

37 My master made me swear, saying, 'You must not get a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites, in whose land I make my home.

UST

37 My master made me solemnly promise, saying, 'Do not get a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaan people, in whose land we are living.

Genesis 24:38

to my relatives

“to my own clan”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- walk, walked
- house

ULT

³⁸ Instead, you must go to my father’s family, and to my relatives, and get a wife for my son.’

UST

³⁸ Instead, go back to my father’s family, to my own clan, and get from them a wife for my son.’

Genesis 24:39

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

Perhaps the woman will not follow me.

This is something that could possibly happen. Alternate translation: "What if the woman will not come back with me?" or "What should I do if the woman will not come back with me?" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- walk, walked

ULT

39 I said to my master, 'Perhaps the woman will not follow me.'

UST

39 Then I asked my master, 'What shall I do if the woman they give me will not come back with me?'

Genesis 24:40

before whom I walk

Serving Yahweh is spoken of as if Abraham were walking in Yahweh's presence. Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will prosper your way

"he will make your journey successful"

family line

"family"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- messenger
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- messenger
- walk, walked

ULT

40 But he said to me, 'Yahweh, before whom I walk, will send his angel with you and he will prosper your way, so that you will get a wife for my son from among my relatives and from my father's family line.

UST

40 He replied, 'Yahweh, whom I have always obeyed, will send his angel with you, and he will cause your journey to be successful. He will make you able to get a wife for my son from my clan, from my father's family.

Genesis 24:41

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath

This is a hypothetical situation that Abraham did not think was likely to happen. Possible meanings are 1) "There is only one way for you to be free from my oath: if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you, then you will be free from my oath" or, 2) building on verse 40, "If you go to my father's family and ask for a girl, you will have done what I told you to do. If they will not give her to you, then you will be free from the oath you swore to me." (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

you will be free from my oath

"you will be released from the oath you made to me." Not having to fulfill an oath is spoken of as if the person is free from an object to which he was bound. Alternate translation: "you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you come to my relatives

Languages use the words come and go differently. Alternate translation: "if you arrive at my relatives' home" or "if you go to my relatives" (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [family, household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [innocent](#)
- [family, household](#)

ULT

41 But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath.'

UST

41 But if my clan refuses to allow her to return with you, you will be freed from being cursed because you could not obey me.'

Genesis 24:42

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

the spring

"the well"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- walk, walked

ULT

⁴² So I arrived today at the spring, and said, 'O Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, please, if you do indeed intend to make my journey successful—

UST

⁴² When I came today to the well, I prayed, 'Yahweh, God whom my master, Abraham, worships, if you are going to make me successful on this journey, please do this for me:

Genesis 24:43

let the young woman who comes...the woman to whom I say

The servant goes back to stating his request. These are the first two things he has to say about the woman whom he hopes will come.

to draw water

“to get water”

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer

ULT

⁴³ here I am, standing by the spring of water—let the young woman who comes out to draw water, the woman to whom I say, “Please give me a little water from your pitcher to drink,”

UST

⁴³ I am standing alongside a well, where girls will come to draw water. I am asking you that if I say to a girl, “Please, give me a little water to drink from your jar,”

Genesis 24:44

the woman who says to me, "Drink...camels"

The thought that begins with the words "let the young woman who comes" in verse 43 ends here. This is the third of the three things the servant has to say about the woman whom he hopes will come.

let her be the woman

The servant finishes his request.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh

ULT

⁴⁴ the woman who says to me, "Drink, and I will also draw water for your camels"—let her be the woman whom you, Yahweh, have chosen for my master's son.'

UST

⁴⁴ and if she says to me, "Certainly, drink some, and I will also draw some water for your camels," then let that be the woman whom you have chosen for my master's son!'

Genesis 24:45

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

speaking in my heart

To pray silently in one's mind is spoken of as if he were speaking in his heart. The word "heart" refers to his thoughts and his mind.

Alternate translation: "praying" or "praying quietly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

behold, Rebekah came

"suddenly Rebekah came" or "I was surprised because I saw Rebekah coming"

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

she went down to the spring

The phrase "went down" is used because the spring was somewhere lower than where the servant was standing.

spring

opening in the ground from which fresh water comes

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [consume, devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [consume, devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Even before I had finished speaking in my heart, behold, Rebekah came out with her pitcher on her shoulder and she went down to the spring and drew water. So I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'

UST

⁴⁵ Before I finished praying, Rebekah approached with her water jar on her shoulder. She went down to the well and got some water. I said to her, 'Please give me a drink!'

Genesis 24:46

watered the camels

“gave water to the camels”

Translation Words - ULT

- camel

Translation Words - UST

- camel

ULT

⁴⁶ She quickly lowered her pitcher from her shoulder and said, ‘Drink, and I will give your camels water also.’ So I drank, and she watered the camels also.

UST

⁴⁶ She quickly lowered her jar and said, ‘Drink some! And I will draw water for your camels, too.’ So I drank some water, and she also got water for the camels.

Genesis 24:47

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milkah bore to him

"My father is Bethuel. His parents are Nahor and Milkah"

ring...bracelets

In this story, all of these items were made of gold. See how you translated these in [Genesis 24:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter are you?' She said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milkah bore to him.' Then I put the ring in her nose and the bracelets on her arms.

UST

⁴⁷ Then I asked her, 'Whose daughter are you?' She said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, the son of Nahor and his wife, Milkah.' I had her put the ring in her nose and put the bracelets on her arms.

Genesis 24:48

I bowed down

This is a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

led me by the right way

“brought me here”

who had led me

The connecting word “because” can be used to show this is why the servant worshiped God. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh led me” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

my master’s relative

This refers to Bethuel, the son of Abraham’s brother Nahor.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Abraham, Abram
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Abraham, Abram
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

48 Then I bowed down and worshiped Yahweh, and blessed Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who had led me by the right way to find the daughter of my master’s relative for his son.

UST

48 Then I bowed and worshiped Yahweh, and I thanked Yahweh God, the one my master Abraham worships, the one who led me on the right road to get the granddaughter of my master’s brother to be a wife for my master’s son.

Genesis 24:49

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

Now therefore

"Now." Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

if you are prepared to show covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness to my master, tell me

How they could show the covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "tell me if you will be faithful and trustworthy to my master by giving Rebekah to be his son's wife" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you

The word "you" refers to Laban and Bethuel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

faithfulness and trustworthiness

These abstract nouns can be stated as "faithful and trustworthy." (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

But if not

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But if you are not prepared to treat my master with family faithfulness and trustworthiness" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

so that I may turn to the right hand or to the left

Possible meanings are 1) deciding what to do is spoken of as if the person will physically turn one direction or another. Alternate translation: "so that I will know what do" or 2) the servant wants to know if he needs to travel somewhere else. Alternate translation: "so that I may continue on my journey" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth

ULT

⁴⁹ Now therefore, if you are prepared to show covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness to my master, tell me. But if not, tell me, so that I may turn to the right hand or to the left."

UST

⁴⁹ Now, if you act faithfully toward my master as part of his extended family, tell me that you will do what I am asking. If you will not do that, tell me that also, so I may know what to do."

Genesis 24:50

Bethuel

This was the father of Laban and Rebekah.

The thing has come from Yahweh

“Yahweh has caused all of this to happen”

we cannot speak to you either bad or good

They are saying they do not have the authority to decide whether what God has done is good or bad. Alternate translation: “we dare not judge what Yahweh is doing” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁵⁰ Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, “The thing has come from Yahweh; we cannot speak to you either bad or good.

UST

⁵⁰ Laban and Bethuel answered, “This clearly has come from Yahweh. So we two cannot say that it is the right thing or the wrong thing to do.

Genesis 24:51

Look, Rebekah is

"You can see Rebekah here"

Rebekah is before you

"Here is Rebekah"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵¹ Look, Rebekah is before you. Take her and go, so she may be the wife of your master's son, as Yahweh has spoken."

UST

⁵¹ Rebekah is here in front of you. Take her and go, and let her be a wife for your master's son, just as Yahweh has indicated."

Genesis 24:52

their words

“what Laban and Bethuel said”

he bowed himself down

Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

52 When Abraham’s servant heard their words, he bowed himself down to the ground to Yahweh.

UST

52 When Abraham’s servant heard these words, he bowed down to the ground to Yahweh.

Genesis 24:53

articles of silver and articles of gold

“silver and gold items” or “things made of silver and gold”

precious gifts

“expensive gifts” or “valuable gifts”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- brother
- silver
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- brother
- silver
- gold, golden
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

53 The servant brought out articles of silver and articles of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave precious gifts to her brother and to her mother.

UST

53 Then the servant brought out silver and gold jewelry and clothes, and gave them to Rebekah. And he gave gifts to her brother Laban and to her mother.

Genesis 24:54

he and the men who were with him

"Abraham's servant and his men"

stayed there overnight

"slept there that night"

arose in the morning

"got up the next morning"

Send me away

"Let me leave and return"

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

54 Then he and the men who were with him ate and drank. They stayed there overnight, and when they arose in the morning, he said, "Send me away to my master."

UST

54 Then they ate a meal and drank. The men who were with Abraham's servant also slept there that night. The next morning, the servant said, "Allow me now to return to my master."

Genesis 24:55

a few more days, at least ten

“at least ten more days”

After that

“Then”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- walk, walked

ULT

⁵⁵ Her brother and her mother said, “Let the young woman stay with us for a few more days, at least ten. After that she may go.”

UST

⁵⁵ But her brother and her mother replied, “Let the girl remain with us for about ten days. After that, you may take her and go.”

Genesis 24:56

he said

"Abraham's servant said"

to them

"to Rebekah's brother and mother"

Do not hinder me

"Do not delay me" or "Do not make me wait"

Yahweh has prospered my way

Here "way" stands for a journey. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has caused me to succeed in the purpose my journey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Send me on my way

"Allow me to leave"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ But he said to them, "Do not hinder me, since Yahweh has prospered my way. Send me on my way so that I may go to my master."

UST

⁵⁶ But he replied to them, "Yahweh has made my journey successful, so do not delay me. Let me take her back to my master now!"

Genesis 24:57

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

ULT

⁵⁷ They said, "We will call the young woman and ask her."

UST

⁵⁷ They said, "Let us call the girl and ask her to say what she wants to do."

Genesis 24:58

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁵⁸ So they called Rebekah and asked her, "Will you go with this man?" She replied, "I will go."

UST

⁵⁸ So they summoned Rebekah and asked her, "Will you go with this man now?" She replied, "Yes, I will go."

Genesis 24:59

So they sent their sister Rebekah

“So the family sent Rebekah”

their sister

Rebekah was Laban’s sister. Alternate translation: “their relative” or “Laban’s sister”

her female servant

This refers to the female servant who had fed Rebekah when she was a baby, cared for her when she was a child, and still served her.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁵⁹ So they sent their sister Rebekah, along with her female servant, on her journey with Abraham’s servant and his men.

UST

⁵⁹ So they sent Rebekah, along with the female servant who had cared for her all her life, to go with Abraham’s servant and the men who had come with him.

Genesis 24:60

Our sister

Rebekah was not the sister to everyone in her family. But they called her this to show that they loved her. Alternate translation: “Our dear Rebekah”

may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands

Here “mother” stands for ancestor. Alternate translation: “may you be the ancestor of millions of people” or “may you have very many descendants”

thousands of ten thousands

This means a very large number or an uncountable number. (See: [Numbers](#))

may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them

Armies would break through the gate of their enemies' cities and conquer the people. Alternate translation: “may your descendants completely defeat those who hate them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)

ULT

60 They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.”

UST

60 Then they asked God to bless Rebekah and said to her, “Our sister, we ask that Yahweh will cause you to have millions of descendants, and allow them to completely defeat all those that hate them.”

Genesis 24:61

Then Rebekah arose, and she and her servant girls mounted the camels

“Then Rebekah and her servant girls went and got on the camels”

Thus the servant took Rebekah, and went his way

“In this way Abraham’s servant took Rebekah with him and returned to where he had come from”

Translation Words - ULT

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁶¹ Then Rebekah arose, and she and her servant girls mounted the camels, and followed the man. Thus the servant took Rebekah, and went his way.

UST

⁶¹ Then Rebekah and her servant girls got ready. They got on their camels and went with Abraham’s servant. He took Rebekah and left.

Genesis 24:62

Now

This word marks a change in the story. It was telling about the servant finding a wife, and now it will tell about Isaac.

Beer Lahai Roi

This is the name of a water well in the Negev. See how you translated it in [Genesis 16:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Negev](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Negev](#)

ULT

62 Now Isaac was living in the Negev, and had just returned from Beer Lahai Roi.

UST

62 Now Isaac was living in the southern Judean wilderness. He had come from Beer Lahai Roi.

Genesis 24:63

Isaac went out to meditate in the field in the evening

“One evening Isaac went out to the field to think.” This must have been a long time after the servant and Rebekah left her home since they had to travel a long distance.

When he looked up and saw, behold, there were camels coming!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. “When he looked up he was surprised to see camels coming”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- camel

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- camel

ULT

⁶³ Isaac went out to meditate in the field in the evening. When he looked up and saw, behold, there were camels coming!

UST

⁶³ One evening he went out into the field to meditate as he walked. He looked up and was surprised to see some camels coming.

Genesis 24:64

Rebekah looked

“Rebekah looked up”

she jumped down from the camel

“she quickly got off the camel”

Translation Words - ULT

- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

⁶⁴ Rebekah looked, and when she saw Isaac, she jumped down from the camel.

UST

⁶⁴ Rebekah also looked up and saw Isaac. She got off the camel

Genesis 24:65

So she took her veil, and covered herself

"So she covered her face with her veil." This is a sign of respect and modesty towards the man she will marry. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

veil

a piece of cloth used to cover a person's head, shoulders and face

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

65 She said to the servant, "Who is that man who is walking in the field to meet us?" The servant said, "It is my master." So she took her veil, and covered herself.

UST

65 and asked the servant, "Who is that man who is approaching?" The servant replied, "That is Isaac, my master." So she took her veil and covered her face, in order to show modesty in front of him.

Genesis 24:66

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁶⁶ The servant recounted to Isaac all the things that he had done.

UST

⁶⁶ The servant told Isaac all that had happened.

Genesis 24:67

took Rebekah, and she became his wife

Both of these phrases mean that Isaac married Rebekah. Alternate translation: “married Rebekah” or “took her as his wife” (See: [Doublet](#))

So Isaac was comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “So Rebekah comforted Isaac” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved

ULT

67 Then Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent and took Rebekah, and she became his wife, and he loved her. So Isaac was comforted after his mother's death.

UST

67 Then Isaac took Rebekah into the tent that had belonged to his mother, Sarah, and she became his wife. He loved her. In this way Isaac was comforted about his mother's death.

Genesis 25

Genesis 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 25:23.

Special concepts in this chapter

Polygamy

Abraham married another wife. This was sinful of him. Many other Hebrew leaders came to marry multiple wives. This is known as “polygamy.” It has never been an acceptable practice. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Inheritance

In the ancient Near East, inheritance was passed on through the eldest son. Even though Esau and Jacob were twins, it is very important that Esau was born first. It was his birthright to receive his inheritance, but he foolishly gave it up. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [birthright](#) and [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God fulfill's his promise

God begins to fulfill the promise he gave to Abraham about making his descendants numerous. Many of these children through his concubines would become large people groups. This may not be easy to understand without the remainder of the Old Testament and the history it records. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 25:1

General Information:

See [How to Translate Names](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham](#), [Abram](#)

ULT

¹ Abraham took another wife; her name was Keturah.

UST

¹ Some time after Sarah died, Abraham married another woman, whose name was Keturah.

Genesis 25:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

² She bore him Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.

UST

² She later gave birth to six sons:
Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian,
Ishbak, and Shuah.

Genesis 25:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

³ Jokshan became the father of Sheba and Dedan. The descendants of Dedan were the Assyrian people, the Letush people, and the Leum people.

UST

³ Jokshan became the father of two sons, Sheba and Dedan. The descendants of Dedan were the people groups of the Assyrians, the Letush, and the Leum.

Genesis 25:4

All these

This refers to the people named in verses 2-4.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son

ULT

⁴ Midian's sons were Ephah, Epher, Hanok, Abida, and Eldaah. All these were Keturah's descendants.

UST

⁴ The sons of Midian were Ephah, Epher, Hanok, Abida, and Eldaah. They were all descendants of Keturah.

Genesis 25:5

Abraham gave all that he owned to Isaac

"Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned." It was normal for the father to divide his wealth when he was old and not leave that for others to do after he died.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

⁵ Abraham gave all that he owned to Isaac.

UST

⁵ Abraham declared that after he died, Isaac would inherit everything he owned.

Genesis 25:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram
- concubine
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Abraham, Abram
- concubine
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁶ However, while he was still living, he gave gifts to the sons of his concubines and sent them to the land of the east, away from Isaac, his son.

UST

⁶ But while Abraham was still living, he gave gifts to the sons of his concubines and sent them away to live in a land to the east, to keep them far from his son.

Genesis 25:7

These were the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, 175 years

"These were...he lived, one hundred and seventy-five years."
Abraham lived 175 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

⁷ These were the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, 175 years.

UST

⁷ Abraham lived until he was 175 years old.

Genesis 25:8

Abraham breathed his last and died

"Abraham took his last breath and died." The phrases "breathed his last" and "died" mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "Abraham died" (See: [Doublet](#))

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

at a good old age, an old man with a full life

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Abraham lived a very long time. Alternate translation: "when he had lived a very long time and was very old" (See: [Doublet](#))

an old man with a full life

Living a long life is spoken of as if life were a container that becomes full. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he was gathered to his people

This means that after Abraham died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he joined his family members who had already died" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Abraham, Abram
- elder, older, old
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Abraham, Abram
- elder, older, old
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

⁸ Abraham breathed his last and died at a good old age, an old man with a full life, and he was gathered to his people.

UST

⁸ He died at a very old age and joined his ancestors who had died previously.

Genesis 25:9

the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron

Ephron owned a field in Machpelah and the cave that was in that field. Abraham bought the field from Ephron.

Machpelah

Machpelah was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephron...Zohar

These are names of men. See how you translated these men's names in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which is near Mamre

Machpela was near Mamre.

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this place name in [Genesis 23:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

⁹ Isaac and Ishmael, his sons, buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron son of Zohar the Hittite, which is near Mamre.

UST

⁹ His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried his body in the cave at Machpelah area, near Mamre, in the field that Abraham had bought from Ephron son of Zohar, a descendant of Heth.

Genesis 25:10

This field Abraham had bought

"Abraham had bought this field"

sons of Heth

"the descendants of Heth" or "the Hittites." See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:5](#).

Abraham was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They buried Abraham" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram \(2\)](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Abraham, Abram \(2\)](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

ULT

¹⁰ This field Abraham had bought from the sons of Heth. Abraham was buried there with Sarah his wife.

UST

¹⁰ It was there that Isaac and Ishmael buried his body, where Abraham previously buried the body of his wife Sarah.

Genesis 25:11

Beer Lahai Roi

This name means “the well of the living one who sees me.” See how you translated this place name in [Genesis 16:14](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

ULT

11 After the death of Abraham, God blessed Isaac his son, and Isaac lived near Beer Lahai Roi.

UST

11 After Abraham died, God blessed his son Isaac. Isaac continued living near Beer Lahai Roi.

Genesis 25:12

Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and information about Ishmael.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Egypt, Egyptian
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- generation

ULT

12 Now these were the descendants of Ishmael, Abraham's son, whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's servant, bore to Abraham.

UST

12 These are those who descended from Abraham's son, Ishmael, whom Sarah's female slave, Hagar from Egypt, gave birth to.

Genesis 25:13

General Information:

See [How to Translate Names](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹³ These were the names of Ishmael's sons, according to their birth order: Nebaioth—the firstborn of Ishmael, Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,

UST

¹³ These were their names, in the order in which they were born: Ishmael's oldest son was named Nebaioth. After him were born Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,

Genesis 25:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁴ Mishma, Dumah, Massa,

UST

¹⁴ Mishma, Dumah, Massa,

Genesis 25:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁵ Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.

UST

¹⁵ Hadar, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.

Genesis 25:16

These were Ishmael's sons, and these were their names, by their villages, and by their encampments; twelve princes according to their tribes

This can be stated as two sentences. "These were the names of Ishmael's twelve sons. They led tribes that were named after them, and they each had their own villages and campsites"

twelve

"12" (See: [Numbers](#))

princes

Here the word "princes" means that the men were leaders or rules of the tribes; it does not mean that they were the sons of a king.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

¹⁶ These were Ishmael's sons, and these were their names, by their villages, and by their encampments; twelve princes according to their tribes.

UST

¹⁶ The twelve sons of Ishmael became the leaders of the tribes that had those names. They each had their own settlement and campsite.

Genesis 25:17

These were the years of the life of Ishmael, 137 years

"These were...Ishmael, one hundred and thirty-seven years." Ishmael lived 137 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

breathed his last and died

The terms "breathed his last" and "died" mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Doublet](#))

was gathered to his people

This means that after Ishmael died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he joined his family members who had already died" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

¹⁷ These were the years of the life of Ishmael, 137 years. He breathed his last and died, and was gathered to his people.

UST

¹⁷ Ishmael lived until he was 137 years old. Then he died and joined his ancestors who had previously died.

Genesis 25:18

They lived

“His descendants settled”

from Havilah to Ashhur

“between Havilah and Ashhur”

Havilah

Havilah was located somewhere in the Arabian Desert. See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

as one goes toward

“in the direction of”

They lived in hostility with each other

Possible meanings are 1) “they did not live in peace together,” or 2) “they lived away from their other relatives.”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- face, facial
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

18 They lived from Havilah to Ashhur, which is near Egypt, as one goes toward Assyria. They lived in hostility with each other.

UST

18 His descendants settled in the area between Shur and Havilah, near the border of Egypt as a person travels toward Asshur. But they did not live in peace together.

Genesis 25:19

These were the events concerning Isaac, Abraham's son

This sentence introduces the account of Isaac's descendants in Genesis 25:19-35:29. Alternate translation: "This is the account of the descendants of Isaac, Abraham's son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- generation

ULT

¹⁹ These were the events concerning Isaac, Abraham's son. Abraham became the father of Isaac.

UST

¹⁹ This is what happened concerning Abraham's son, Isaac. Abraham became the father of Isaac.

Genesis 25:20

forty years old

“40 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

when he took as his wife Rebekah

“when he married Rebekah”

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah’s father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁰ Isaac was forty years old when he took as his wife Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean of Paddan Aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean.

UST

²⁰ When Isaac was forty years old, he married Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel. Bethuel was one of the descendants of Aram from Paddan Aram. Rebekah was the sister of Laban, who belonged to the Aram people.

Genesis 25:21

she was childless

“she was unable to become pregnant”

Rebekah his wife conceived

It can be made explicit that Rebekah was pregnant with two babies at the same time: “Rebekah, his wife, became pregnant with twins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

²¹ Isaac prayed to Yahweh for his wife because she was childless, and Yahweh answered his prayer, and Rebekah his wife conceived.

UST

²¹ For a long time after they were married, Rebekah still had no children. So Isaac prayed to Yahweh concerning his wife, and Yahweh answered his prayer. His wife Rebekah became pregnant.

Genesis 25:22

The children struggled together within her

“the babies inside her kept bumping against each other” or “The babies pushed against each other within her”

The children...within her

Rebekah was pregnant with twins. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

She went to ask Yahweh about this

“She went and asked Yahweh about this.” It is not clear where she went. She may have gone somewhere private to pray, or she may have gone somewhere to offer a sacrifice.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- seek, search, look for

ULT

22 The children struggled together within her, and she said, “Why is this happening to me?” She went to ask Yahweh about this.

UST

22 There were two babies in her womb, and they kept jostling each other. So she said, “Why is this happening to me?” So she asked Yahweh about it.

Genesis 25:23

said to her

"said to Rebekah"

Two nations...serve the younger

This is poetic language. If your language has a way to indicate poetry, you could use it here. (See: [Poetry](#))

Two nations are in your womb

Here "two nations" stands for the two children. Each child will be the father of a nation. Alternate translation: "Two nations will come from the twins within you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

two peoples will be separated from within you

Here "two peoples" stands for the two children. Each child will be the father of a people. This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "when you give birth to these two children they will be rivals" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the older will serve the younger

Possible meanings are 1) "the older son will serve the younger son" or 2) "the descendants of the older son will serve the descendants of the younger son." If possible, translate it so that people could understand either meaning.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²³ Yahweh said to her, "Two nations are in your womb, and two peoples will be separated from within you. One people will be stronger than the other, and the older will serve the younger."

UST

²³ Yahweh said to her, "Two nations will come from the twins within you. And those two nations will separate from each other, and one will be stronger than the other. And the older will serve the younger."

Genesis 25:24

behold, there

“she was surprised to learn that there”

ULT

²⁴ When it was time for her to give birth, behold, there were twins in her womb.

UST

²⁴ When Rebekah gave birth, it was true! Twin boys were born!

Genesis 25:25

red all over like a hairy garment

Possible meanings are 1) his skin was red and he had a lot of hair on his body or 2) he had a lot of red hair on his body. Alternate translation: "red and hairy like a garment made of animal hair" (See: [Simile](#))

Esau

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Esau sounds like the word 'hairy.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

²⁵ The first child came out red all over like a hairy garment. They called his name Esau.

UST

²⁵ The first one born was red, and his body had hair all over it, like a garment made of hair. So they named him Esau.

Genesis 25:26

grasping Esau's heel

"holding the back part of Esau's foot"

Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.'"

sixty years old

"60 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²⁶ After that, his brother came out. His hand was grasping Esau's heel. He was called Jacob. Isaac was sixty years old when his wife bore them.

UST

²⁶ Then his brother was born, grasping Esau's heel. So they named him Jacob. Isaac was sixty years old when the twins were born.

Genesis 25:27

became a skillful hunter

“became good at hunting and killing animals for food”

a quiet man

“a peaceful man” or “a less active man”

who spent his time in the tents

This speaks about time as if it were a commodity that someone could spend. Alternate translation: “who remained in the tents much of the time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²⁷ The boys grew up, and Esau became a skillful hunter, a man of the field; but Jacob was a quiet man, who spent his time in the tents.

UST

²⁷ When the boys grew up, Esau became a very good hunter of wild animals. He spent a lot of time out in the fields. However, Jacob was a quiet man who stayed close to the campsite.

Genesis 25:28

Now

This word is used to mark a change in focus, shifting from the story to background information about Isaac and Rebekah. (See:

[Background Information](#))

Isaac loved

Here the word "loved" means "favored" or "preferred."

because he ate the animals that he had hunted

"because he ate the animals that Esau had hunted" or "because he enjoyed eating the wild animal meat that Esau caught"

Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

28 Now Isaac loved Esau because he ate the animals that he had hunted, but Rebekah loved Jacob.

UST

28 Isaac liked Esau more, because he enjoyed the taste of the meat of the animals that Esau killed. But Rebekah liked Jacob more.

Genesis 25:29

Jacob cooked

Since this is the beginning of a story about something that happened one time, some translators may want to start it with a phrase like “One day, Jacob cooked” in a similar manner to the UST.

cooked some stew

“boiled some food” or “cooked some soup.” This stew was made of boiled lentils ([Genesis 25:34](#)).

he was weak from hunger

“he was weak because he was very hungry” or “he was very hungry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁹ Jacob cooked some stew. Esau came in from the field, and he was weak from hunger.

UST

²⁹ One day while Jacob was cooking some stew, Esau came home from the field, very hungry.

Genesis 25:30

I am exhausted

"I am weak from hunger" or "I am very hungry"

Edom

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Edom means 'red.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

³⁰ Esau said to Jacob, "Feed me with that red stew. Please, I am exhausted!" That is why his name was called Edom.

UST

³⁰ He said to Jacob, "Give me some of that red stew to eat right now, because I am starving!" (That is why Esau's other name was Edom.)

Genesis 25:31

birthright

right as firstborn to inherit most of the father's wealth

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

³¹ Jacob said, "First sell me your birthright."

UST

³¹ Jacob said, "I will give you some if you sell me your right as firstborn to inherit most of our father's wealth."

Genesis 25:32

I am about to die

Esau was exaggerating to emphasize how hungry he was. Alternate translation: "I am so hungry I feel like I could die" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

What good is the birthright to me?

Esau used a question to emphasize that eating was more important than a birthright. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My inheritance is no good to me if I die of hunger!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Esau
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Esau
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked

ULT

³² Esau said, "Look, I am about to die. What good is the birthright to me?"

UST

³² Esau replied, "Well, I am about to die from being so hungry. If I die now, my rights will not help me."

Genesis 25:33

First swear to me

What Jacob wanted Esau to swear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "First swear to me that you will sell me your birthright" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

³³ Jacob said, "First swear to me," so Esau swore an oath and in that way he sold his birthright to Jacob.

UST

³³ Jacob said, "Swear to me that you are giving me your rights as firstborn!" So that is what Esau did. He sold his firstborn rights to Jacob.

Genesis 25:34

lentils

These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Esau despised his birthright

“Esau showed that he did not value his birthright”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

³⁴ Jacob gave Esau bread and stew of lentils. He ate and drank, then got up and went on his way. In this manner Esau despised his birthright.

UST

³⁴ Then Jacob gave to Esau some bread and some stew made of lentils. Esau ate and drank, and then he got up and left. By doing that, Esau showed that he was not interested in his rights as firstborn.

Genesis 26

Genesis 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

When things in the land were bad, Isaac did not trust in Yahweh. Instead, he ran to the safety of Egypt. Even when Abraham's descendants did not trust in Yahweh's faithfulness to fulfill his covenant, Yahweh remained faithful to his covenant and blessed Isaac. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [covenant](#))

Wells

In the ancient Near East, wells were very important strategically. Therefore, they were a sign of power and a sign of God's blessing being upon Isaac.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"She is my sister"

Isaac was afraid the Egyptians would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Rebekah to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Isaac's sister, they would have shown favor to him. This is the same thing his father, Abraham, did. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 26:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

a famine happened

“there was a famine” or “there was another famine”

in the land

You can state explicitly the land to which this refers. Alternate translation: “in the land where Isaac and his family lived” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

that had been in the days of Abraham

“that had happened during Abraham’s life” or “that had happened while Abraham was alive”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [famine](#)

ULT

¹ Now a famine happened in the land, besides the first famine that had been in the days of Abraham. Isaac went to Abimelech, king of the Philistines at Gerar.

UST

¹ Some time later there was a severe famine in the land. That was different from the famine that occurred when Abraham was alive. So Isaac went southeast to the city of Gerar to talk to Abimelech, the king of the Philistine people.

Genesis 26:2

General Information:

Yahweh begins to speak to Isaac.

appeared to him

“appeared to Isaac”

Do not go down to Egypt

It was common to speak of leaving the promised land as “going down” to another place. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

ULT

² Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you to live in.

UST

² But Yahweh appeared to him and said, “Do not go down to Egypt! Live in the land that I tell you!

Genesis 26:3

for to you and to your descendants, I will give all these lands

“for I will give all these lands to you and your descendants”

I will fulfill the oath that I swore to Abraham your father

“I will do what I promised Abraham your father I would do”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

³ Stay in this very land, and I will be with you and will bless you; for to you and to your descendants, I will give all these lands, and I will fulfill the oath that I swore to Abraham your father.

UST

³ Stay in this land, and I will help you and bless you, because it is to you and your descendants that I will give all these lands, and I will do what I solemnly promised to your father.

Genesis 26:4

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Isaac.

I will multiply your descendants

"I will cause you to have very many descendants."

like the stars of heaven

This speaks about the number of Isaac's descendants as if they were the same as the number of stars. See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:17](#). (See: [Simile](#))

heaven

This refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

all the nations of the earth will be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bless all the nations of the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [nation](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁴ I will multiply your descendants like the stars of heaven, and will give to your descendants all these lands. Through your descendants all the nations of the earth will be blessed.

UST

⁴ I will cause your descendants to be as numerous as the stars in the sky. I will give to your descendants all these lands, and I will cause your descendants to be a blessing to all the people groups on the earth.

Genesis 26:5

Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws

The phrases “obeyed my voice” and “kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “Abraham obeyed me and did everything I commanded him to do” (See: [Parallelism](#))

obeyed my voice

Here “voice” stands for Yahweh. Alternate translation: “obeyed me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [voice](#)

ULT

⁵ I will do this because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws.”

UST

⁵ I will do that because Abraham obeyed me. He obeyed all that I told him to do, all that I commanded him to do, all that I declared and all the laws that I gave him.”

Genesis 26:6

So Isaac settled in Gerar

Only Isaac is mentioned because he is the leader of the family, but his whole family was with him. Alternate translation: “So Isaac and his family settled in Gerar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁶ So Isaac settled in Gerar.

UST

⁶ So Isaac stayed in Gerar along with his wife and sons.

Genesis 26:7

He feared to say

Here “fear” refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others. “He was afraid to say”

to get Rebekah

“in order to take Rebekah”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

7 When the men of the place asked him about his wife, he said, “She is my sister.” He feared to say, “She is my wife,” because he thought, “The men of this place will kill me to get Rebekah, because she is so beautiful.”

UST

7 When the men in Gerar asked who that woman was, Isaac said, “She is my sister.” He said that because he was afraid to say, “She is my wife.” He thought, “Rebekah is very beautiful, so they will want her. They will kill me to get her.”

Genesis 26:8

He saw, behold, Isaac

The word “behold” shows that what Abimelech saw surprised him.
Alternate translation: “And he was surprised to see that Isaac”

was caressing Rebekah

Possible meanings are 1) he was touching her the way a husband touches his wife or 2) he was laughing and talking with her the way a husband talks with his wife.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

⁸ After Isaac had been there a long time, Abimelech king of the Philistines happened to look out of a window. He saw, behold, Isaac was caressing Rebekah, his wife.

UST

⁸ When Isaac had been there a long time, one day Abimelech, the king of the Philistine people, looked down from a window in his palace and was surprised to see Isaac caressing his wife Rebekah.

Genesis 26:9

Abimelech called Isaac to him

Abimelech probably sent someone to tell Isaac that Abimelech wanted to see him. Alternate translation: "Abimelech sent someone to bring Isaac to him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why did you say, 'She is my sister'?

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Why did you say that she is your sister?" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to get her

"so he could take her"

Translation Words - ULT

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁹ Abimelech called Isaac to him and said, "Look, certainly she is your wife. Why did you say, 'She is my sister'?" Isaac said to him, "Because I thought someone might kill me to get her."

UST

⁹ So Abimelech summoned Isaac and said to him, "Now I realize that she is really your wife! So why did you say, 'She is my sister'?" Isaac replied to him, "I said that because I thought that someone here might kill me to get her."

Genesis 26:10

What is this you have done to us?

Abimelech used this question to scold Isaac. Alternate translation: "You should not have done this to us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

might easily have lain with your wife

The word "lain" here is a euphemism for "had sexual relations." (See: [Euphemism](#))

you would have brought guilt upon us

This speaks about causing someone to be guilty as if "guilt" were an object that is placed on someone. Alternate translation: "you would have caused us to be guilty of taking a man's wife" (See: [Metaphor](#))

upon us

Here "us" refers to Abimelech and his people. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

ULT

¹⁰ Abimelech said, "What is this you have done to us? One of the people might easily have lain with your wife, and you would have brought guilt upon us."

UST

¹⁰ Abimelech said, "You should not have done this to us! One of our people might have slept with your wife, and you would have caused us to be guilty of a great sin!"

Genesis 26:11

Whoever touches this man

Here “touches” means to touch in a harmful way. Alternate translation: “Whoever harms this man” (See: [Idiom](#))

will surely be put to death

Abimelech may have intended to tell someone to kill anyone who might harm Isaac or Rebekah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will put him to death” or “I will order my men to kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

ULT

11 So Abimelech warned all the people and said, “Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be put to death.”

UST

11 Then Abimelech commanded all his people, saying, “Do not harm this man or his wife! Anyone who does that will surely be executed!”

Genesis 26:12

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story. It changes from telling about Isaac calling Rebekah his sister, and it starts to tell about how Isaac became very rich and the Philistines were jealous of him.

in that land

“in Gerar”

a hundredfold

This means “one hundred times as much as he planted.” It can be translated more generally as “a very large crop.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹² Isaac planted crops in that land and reaped in the same year a hundredfold, because Yahweh blessed him.

UST

¹² Isaac planted grain in that land that year, and he harvested a very large crop, because Yahweh had blessed him.

Genesis 26:13

The man became rich

“Isaac became rich” or “He became rich”

grew more and more until he became very great

“he gained more and more until he became very wealthy”

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

¹³ The man became rich, and grew more and more until he became very great.

UST

¹³ Isaac continued to acquire more and more possessions, until finally he became very wealthy.

Genesis 26:14

sheep

This may also include goats. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a large household

Here “household” stands for workers or servants. Alternate translation: “many servants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The Philistines envied him

“The Philistines were jealous of him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [zeal, zealous](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [zeal, zealous](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

14 He had many sheep and cattle, and a large household. The Philistines envied him.

UST

14 He had large herds of sheep, goats, and cattle, and many slaves. Because of that, the Philistine people envied him.

Genesis 26:15

Now

Here this word does not mean “at this moment.” It is indicating where the action in the story begins. It can be translated with the connecting word “So” to show that this is a result of what happened in [Genesis 26:12-14](#). (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

in the days of Abraham his father

The phrase “in the days of” stands for a person’s lifetime. Alternate translation: “when Abraham, his father, was living” or “during his father Abraham’s lifetime”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

15 Now all the wells that his father’s servants had dug in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines stopped them up by filling them with earth.

UST

15 So all the wells that the servants of his father Abraham had dug, the people filled up with earth.

Genesis 26:16

Abimelech said

Possible meanings are 1) this is another action to force Isaac and his people to leave. Alternate translation: "Then Abimelech said" or "Finally Abimelech said" or 2) Abimelech made this decision because he saw that his people were jealous and acting in a hostile way towards Isaac. Alternate translation: "Therefore Abimelech said" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

much mightier than we

"much stronger than we are"

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked

ULT

16 Abimelech said to Isaac, "Go away from us, for you are much mightier than we."

UST

16 Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "You have become more numerous than we are, so I want you to leave from our area."

Genesis 26:17

So Isaac departed

Only Isaac is mentioned because he is the leader, but his family and servants went with him. Alternate translation: "So Isaac and his household left" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

17 So Isaac departed from there and settled in the Valley of Gerar, and lived there.

UST

17 So Isaac and his family moved from there. They went and set up their tents in the Valley of Gerar and settled there.

Genesis 26:18

Isaac dug out

Here "Isaac" stands for Isaac and his servants. Alternate translation: "Isaac and his servants dug out" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

which they had dug

"which Abraham's servants had dug"

in the days of Abraham his father

"during his father Abraham's lifetime" or "when Abraham, his father, was living"

The Philistines had stopped them up

This was the reason that Isaac dug them out. Possible ways to translate this are: 1) Since this happened first, this sentence can come before the sentence about Isaac digging them out, as in the UST. or 2) This sentence can start with "Isaac did this because the Philistines had stopped them up." (See: [Order of Events](#))

had stopped them up

"had filled them with earth"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- Philistines
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- name
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- Philistines
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

18 Once again Isaac dug out the wells of water, which they had dug in the days of Abraham his father. The Philistines had stopped them up after Abraham's death. Isaac called the wells by the same names that his father had called them.

UST

18 There were several wells in that area that had been dug when Isaac's father Abraham was living, but Philistine people had filled them up with earth after Abraham died. But Isaac and his servants dug the wells out again, and Isaac gave the wells the same names that his father had given to them.

Genesis 26:19

flowing water

This phrase refers to a natural spring they uncovered when they were digging a new well. It provided a continuous flow of fresh drinking water. Alternate translation: “fresh water” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

19 When Isaac's servants dug in the valley, they found there a well of flowing water.

UST

19 Isaac's servants dug in the valley and discovered a well of fresh water.

Genesis 26:20

herdsmen

men who tended livestock

This water is ours

Here "ours" refers to the herdsmen of Gerar. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Esek

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Esek means 'quarrel' or 'argue.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

20 The herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with Isaac's herdsmen, and said, "This water is ours." So Isaac called that well "Esek," because they had quarreled with him.

UST

20 But the men who herded animals in the Valley of Gerar argued with the men who took care of Isaac's animals. They said, "The water in this well is ours!" So Isaac named the well Esek, which means "dispute," because they disputed about who owned it.

Genesis 26:21

Then they dug

"Then Isaac's servants dug"

they quarreled

"the herdsmen of Gerar argued with Isaac's herdsmen"

so he gave it

"so Isaac gave it"

Sitnah

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Sitnah means 'oppose' or 'accuse.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

²¹ Then they dug another well, and they quarreled over that, too, so he gave it the name of "Sitnah."

UST

²¹ Then Isaac's servants dug another well, but they quarreled about who owned that one also. So Isaac named it Sitnah, which means "opposition."

Genesis 26:22

Rehoboth

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Rehoboth means 'make room for' or 'empty place.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

us...we

Isaac was speaking about himself and his household.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

22 He left there and dug yet another well, but they did not quarrel over that one. So he called it Rehoboth, and he said, "Now Yahweh has made room for us, and we will prosper in the land."

UST

22 They moved on from there and dug another well, but this time no one quarreled about who owned it. So he named it Rehoboth, which means "empty place," saying, "Yahweh has given us an empty place to live in, a place that is not wanted by other people, and we will become very prosperous here."

Genesis 26:23

Isaac went up from there to Beersheba

Here “went up” is probably a reference to going north. Say that he departed in the most natural way for your language. Alternate translation: “Isaac left there and went to Beersheba”

ULT

²³ Then Isaac went up from there to Beersheba.

UST

²³ From there Isaac went up to Beersheba.

Genesis 26:24

multiply your descendants

“will cause your descendants to increase greatly” or “will cause your descendants to be very many”

for my servant Abraham’s sake

“for my servant Abraham” or you can make the full meaning explicit. Alternate translation: “because I promised my servant Abraham that I would do this” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- pray, prayer
- Abraham, Abram
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

24 Yahweh appeared to him that same night and said, “I am the God of Abraham your father. Do not fear, for I am with you and will bless you and multiply your descendants, for my servant Abraham’s sake.”

UST

24 The first night that he was there, Yahweh appeared to him and said, “I am the God whom your father Abraham worshiped. Do not be afraid of anything. I will help you and bless you, and because of what I promised my servant Abraham, I will greatly increase the number of your descendants.”

Genesis 26:25

Isaac built an altar there

You can make explicit why Isaac built an altar. Alternate translation: "Isaac built an altar there to sacrifice to Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

called on the name of Yahweh

To "call on" means to pray or to worship. Here "name" stands for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh" or "worshiped Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- name
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- name
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

25 Isaac built an altar there and called on the name of Yahweh. There he pitched his tent, and his servants dug a well.

UST

25 So Isaac built an altar there and offered a sacrifice to worship Yahweh. He set up their tents there, and his servants started to dig a well.

Genesis 26:26

went to him

“went to Isaac”

Ahuzzath

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his friend

Possible meanings are 1) “Abimelech’s friend” or 2) “Abimelech’s advisor.”

Phicol

This is the name of a man. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 21:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

²⁶ Then Abimelech went to him from Gerar, with Ahuzzath, his friend, and Phicol, the captain of his army.

UST

²⁶ While they were digging the well, King Abimelech came to Isaac from Gerar, along with Ahuzzath, his advisor, and Phicol, the commander of his army.

Genesis 26:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁷ Isaac said to them, "Why are you coming to me, since you hate me and have sent me away from you?"

UST

²⁷ Isaac asked them, "You acted in a hostile way toward me before and sent me away. So why have you come to me now?"

Genesis 26:28

they said

This refers to Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol. One of them spoke and the other two agreed with what he said. It does not mean they all spoke at the same time. Alternate translation: "one of them said"

We have clearly seen

"We know" or "We are certain"

So let us make a covenant

"So we want to make a covenant"

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- cut off

ULT

28 Then they said, "We have clearly seen that Yahweh has been with you. So we decided that there should be an oath between us, yes, between us and you. So let us make a covenant with you,

UST

28 One of them answered, "We have seen that Yahweh helps you. So we said to each other, 'We should have an agreement between ourselves and Isaac.' So we should make a peace treaty with you,

Genesis 26:29

and as we have treated you well

This can also be translated as the beginning of a new sentence. "We have done only good to you"

you are blessed by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has blessed you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

ULT

²⁹ that you will do us no harm, just as we have not harmed you, and as we have treated you well and have sent you away in peace. Indeed, you are blessed by Yahweh."

UST

²⁹ stating that you will not harm us, in the same way that we did not molest you. We always treated you well, and we sent you away peacefully. And now Yahweh is blessing you."

Genesis 26:30

Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank

Eating a meal together was a part of making a covenant with one another. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for them

Here “them” refers to “Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol”

they ate

Here “they” refers to Isaac, Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol. Alternate translation: “they all ate”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- feast, feasting

ULT

³⁰ So Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.

UST

³⁰ So Isaac made a feast for them, and they all ate and drank.

Genesis 26:31

They rose early

"They awoke early"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

³¹ They rose early in the morning and swore an oath with each other. Then Isaac sent them away, and they left him in peace.

UST

³¹ Early the next morning they all swore to each other that they would do what they had promised. Then Isaac sent them home peacefully.

Genesis 26:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

³² That same day Isaac's servants came and told him about the well that they had dug. They said, "We have found water."

UST

³² That day Isaac's servants came to him and told him about the well that they had finished digging. They said, "We found water in the well!"

Genesis 26:33

He called the well Shibah

"So he called the well Shibah." Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Shibah sounds like the word that means 'oath.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying "Beersheba can mean either 'well of the oath' or 'well of seven.'" (See note on [Genesis 21:32](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³³ He called the well Shibah, so the name of that city is Beersheba to this day.

UST

³³ Isaac named the well Shibah, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "oath." To the present time the town there has the name Beersheba which means "peace treaty well."

Genesis 26:34

General Information:

Most of Genesis 26 was about Isaac. These verses are about his older son Esau.

forty

“40” (See: [Numbers](#))

he took a wife

“he married.” You can state explicitly that he married two women. Alternate translation: “he took two wives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Judith...Basemath

These are the names of Esau’s wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Beeri...Elon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Hittite

“the descendant of Heth” or “a descendant of Heth.” The Hittite people were the descendants of Heth. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Hittite
- Hittite
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Hittite
- Hittite
- Esau

ULT

34 When Esau was forty years old, he took a wife, Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and also Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite.

UST

34 When Esau was forty years old, he married Judith, the daughter of Beeri, and Basemath, the daughter of Elon. Both of those women were descendants of Heth, not from Isaac’s clan.

Genesis 26:35

They brought sorrow to Isaac and Rebekah

Here “they” refers to Judith and Basemath. To make someone sorrowful or miserable is spoken of as if “sorrow” were an object that a person could bring to another person. Alternate translation: “They made Isaac and Rebekah sorrowful” or “Isaac and Rebekah were miserable because of them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

ULT

³⁵ They brought sorrow to Isaac and Rebekah.

UST

³⁵ Esau's two wives made life miserable for Isaac and Rebekah.

Genesis 27

Genesis 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 27:27-29 and in 27:39-40.

Special concepts in this chapter

Blessing

In the ancient Near East, a father's blessing was very important. This spoken blessing was legally binding. Jacob previously received the birthright from Esau and was guaranteed the double portion of land money that was supposed to be inherited by the older son, Esau. In this chapter, Jacob tricks Isaac into giving him Esau's blessing. This means that he is to inherit the promises of the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [birthright](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [covenant](#))

Genesis 27:1

his eyes were dim

This speaks about being nearly blind as if the eyes were a lamp and the light has nearly gone out. Alternate translation: “he was nearly blind” or “he was almost blind” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Here I am

“I am here” or “I am listening.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

¹ When Isaac was old and his eyes were dim so that he could not see, he called Esau, his older son, and said to him, “My son.” Esau said to him, “Here I am,”

UST

¹ When Isaac was old, he became almost blind. One day he summoned Esau, his firstborn son, and said to him, “My son?” He replied, “Here I am!”

Genesis 27:2

See here

The phrase “see here” adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I do not know the day of my death

It is implied that Isaac knows he will die soon. Alternate translation: “I may die any day now” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

death

This refers to physical death.

Translation Words - ULT

- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

² and Isaac said, “See here, I am old. I do not know the day of my death.

UST

² Isaac said, “Listen to me. I am very old, and I do not know when I will die.

Genesis 27:3

General Information:

Isaac continues giving instructions to his older son Isaac.

your weapons

“your hunting equipment”

your quiver

A quiver is a case for holding arrows. Alternate translation: “your quiver of arrows” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

hunt game for me

“hunt a wild animal for me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [bow and arrow, a bow](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [bow and arrow, a bow](#)

ULT

³ Therefore take your weapons, your quiver and your bow, and go out to the field and hunt game for me.

UST

³ So take now your bow and quiver full of arrows and go out into the countryside, and hunt for a wild animal for me.

Genesis 27:4

Make delicious food for me, the sort that I love

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good.
Alternate translation: “Cook for me the tasty meat that I love” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bless you

In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- love, beloved
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- love, beloved
- devour

ULT

⁴ Make delicious food for me, the sort that I love, and bring it to me so I can eat it and bless you before I die.”

UST

⁴ Kill one and prepare the kind of tasty meat that I like. Then bring it to me so that after I eat it, I can give you a blessing before I die.”

Genesis 27:5

This verse is background information for the description of the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Now

This verse is background information for the description of the events that follow. The word “now” shows that the author is going to begin to talk about Rebekah and Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

Rebekah heard it when Isaac spoke to Esau his son

“Rebekah heard Isaac speaking to his son Esau”

to Esau his son

Esau was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Esau “his son” to emphasize that Isaac preferred Esau over Isaac.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

⁵ Now Rebekah heard it when Isaac spoke to Esau his son. Esau went to the field to hunt for game and bring it back.

UST

⁵ Rebekah was listening as Isaac said that to his son, Esau. So when Esau left the tent to go hunting,

Genesis 27:6

This verse continues the background information that begins with the words “Now Rebekah heard” in verse 5. It is background information for the description of the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Rebekah spoke to Jacob

This verse continues the background information that begins with the words “Esau went...bring it back” in verse 5. It is background information for the description of the events that follow. After Esau leaves, Rebekah speaks to Jacob because of what she has heard. “So when Esau went...bring it back, Rebekah spoke to Jacob” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#) and [Background Information](#))

to Jacob her son

Jacob was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Jacob “her son” here to emphasize that Rebekah preferred Jacob over Esau.

See here

The phrase “see here” adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁶ Rebekah spoke to Jacob her son and said, “See here, I heard your father speak to Esau your brother. He said,

UST

⁶ Rebekah said to her son, Jacob, “Listen to me. I heard your father talking to your brother, Esau, saying,

Genesis 27:7

'Bring me game and make me delicious food, that I may eat it and bless you in the presence of Yahweh before my death.'

These are the words that the author introduces with the words "He said" in verse 6. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "He told Esau to hunt a wild animal, and to make the tasty meat that he loves. Then before he dies, your father will bless Esau in the presence of Yahweh." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Bring me game

"Bring me a wild animal that you hunt and kill"

make me delicious food

"cook for me the tasty meat that I love." See how this was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

bless you in the presence of Yahweh

"bless you before Yahweh"

before my death

"before I die"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

7 'Bring me game and make me delicious food, that I may eat it and bless you in the presence of Yahweh before my death.'

UST

7 'Go and kill some wild animal and bring it here, and prepare the meat in a tasty way, so that I may eat it. Then before I die I will give you my blessing while Yahweh is listening.'

Genesis 27:8

General Information:

Rebekah continues to speak to her younger son Jacob.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

obey my voice as I command you

Rebekah said “my voice” to refer to what she was saying. Alternate translation: “obey me and do what I tell you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [voice](#)

ULT

⁸ Now therefore, my son, obey my voice as I command you.

UST

⁸ So now, my son, do what I am telling you.

Genesis 27:9

I will make delicious food from them for your father, just like he loves

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good. See how a similar sentence was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁹ Go to the flock, and bring me two good young goats; and I will make delicious food from them for your father, just like he loves.

UST

⁹ Go out to the flock and kill two nice young goats and bring the meat to me. Then I will prepare some tasty food for your father, the way he likes it.

Genesis 27:10

You will take it to your father

"Then take it to your father"

so that he may eat it, so that he may bless you

"and after he eats it, he will bless you"

he may bless you

The word "bless" refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

before his death

"before he dies"

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour

ULT

10 You will take it to your father, so that he may eat it, so that he may bless you before his death."

UST

10 Then you can take it to your father, in order that he can eat it, and then he will give you his blessing before he dies."

Genesis 27:11

I am a smooth man

"I am a man with smooth skin" or "I am not hairy"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

11 Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, "See, Esau my brother is a hairy man, and I am a smooth man.

UST

11 But Jacob said to his mother Rebekah, "My brother Esau's skin has hair all over it, and my skin is not like that! My skin is smooth!

Genesis 27:12

I will seem to him as a deceiver

"he will think that I am a liar" or "he will know that I am deceiving him"

I will bring a curse upon me and not a blessing

Being cursed or blessed is spoken of as if a curse and a blessing are objects that are placed on a person. Alternate translation: "Then because of this, he will curse me and not bless me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

12 Perhaps my father will touch me, and I will seem to him as a deceiver. I will bring a curse upon me and not a blessing."

UST

12 What will happen if my father touches me? He will realize that I am tricking him, and I will bring a curse on myself, not a blessing!"

Genesis 27:13

My son, let any curse fall on me

"let your curse be on me, my son." Being cursed is spoken of as if the curse were on object that is placed on the person. Alternate translation: "let your father curse me instead of you, my son" (See: [Metaphor](#))

obey my voice

Rebekah said "my voice" to refer to what she was saying. Alternate translation: "obey what I tell you" or "obey me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

bring them to me

"bring me the young goats"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [voice](#)

ULT

13 His mother said to him, "My son, let any curse fall on me. Just obey my voice, and go, bring them to me."

UST

13 His mother said to him, "If that happens, my son, let the curse be on me. You do what I am telling you. Go and get the goats for me!"

Genesis 27:14

made delicious food, just like his father loved

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good. See how a similar sentence was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

14 So Jacob went and got the young goats and brought them to his mother, and his mother made delicious food, just like his father loved.

UST

14 So Jacob went and killed two goats and brought them to his mother. Then his mother prepared some tasty food, just the way his father liked.

Genesis 27:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- temple
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- temple
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

15 Rebekah took the best clothes of Esau, her older son, which were with her in the house, and put them on Jacob, her younger son.

UST

15 Then Rebekah took her older son Esau's best clothes that were with her in the tent, and she put them on her younger son Jacob.

Genesis 27:16

She put the skins of the young goats on his hands

The goat skins still had the hair on them.

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

16 She put the skins of the young goats on his hands and on the smooth part of his neck.

UST

16 She also put the skins of the young goats on his hands and the smooth part of his neck.

Genesis 27:17

She put the delicious food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob

“She gave to her son Jacob the delicious food and bread which she had prepared”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- hand
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- hand
- bread

ULT

17 She put the delicious food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob.

UST

17 Then she put into his hands some bread and the tasty food that she had prepared.

Genesis 27:18

Here I am

“Yes, I am listening” or “Yes, what is it?” See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

18 Jacob went to his father and said, “My father.” His father said, “Here I am; who are you, my son?”

UST

18 Jacob took it and went to his father and said, “My father!” Isaac replied, “I am here; which of my sons are you?”

Genesis 27:19

I have done as you said to me

"I have done what you told me to do"

some of my game

The word "game" refers to wild animals that someone hunts and kills. See how "game" was translated in [Genesis 27:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- bless, blessed, blessing
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour
- firstborn

ULT

¹⁹ Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau your firstborn. I have done as you said to me. Now sit up and eat some of my game, that you may bless me."

UST

¹⁹ Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau, your firstborn son. I did what you told me to do. Sit up and eat some of the meat so that you can bless me."

Genesis 27:20

He said

"Jacob replied"

brought it to me

This is an idiom meaning that God caused it to happen. Alternate translation: "helped me to succeed while hunting" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ Isaac said to his son, "How is it that you have found it so quickly, my son?" He said, "Because Yahweh your God brought it to me."

UST

²⁰ But Isaac asked his son, "My son, how is it that you were able to find and kill an animal so quickly?" Jacob replied, "Because Yahweh, whom you worship, enabled me to be successful."

Genesis 27:21

whether you are my true son Esau or not

“if you are really my son Esau”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²¹ Isaac said to Jacob, “Come near me, so I may touch you, my son, and learn whether you are my true son Esau or not.”

UST

²¹ Isaac said to Jacob, “Come near to me, my son, so that I can touch you and find out whether you are really my son Esau.”

Genesis 27:22

Jacob went over to Isaac his father

"Jacob approached Isaac his father"

The voice is Jacob's voice

Here Issac speaks of Jacob's voice as representing Jacob. Alternate translation: "You sound like Jacob" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but the hands are the hands of Esau

Here Issac speaks of Esau's hands as representing Esau. Alternate translation: "but your hands feel like Esau's hands" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

ULT

²² Jacob went over to Isaac his father; and Isaac touched him and said, "The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau."

UST

²² So Jacob went close to his father, Isaac. Isaac touched him and said, "The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands feel hairy, like the hands of his older brother, Esau."

Genesis 27:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- brother
- Esau
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- brother
- Esau
- hand
- hand

ULT

²³ Isaac did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy, like his brother Esau's hands, so Isaac blessed him.

UST

²³ Isaac did not recognize him, because he was blind and because Jacob's hands were hairy, like those of his older brother, Esau. So Isaac got ready to bless him.

Genesis 27:24

He said

Isaac asks this question before blessing his son. Alternate translation: "But first Isaac asked" (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

²⁴ He said, "Are you really my son Esau?"
He replied, "I am."

UST

²⁴ But first Isaac asked, "Are you really my son Esau?" Jacob replied, "Yes, I am."

Genesis 27:25

eat of your game

The word “game” refers to a wild animal that people hunt and kill. See how “game” was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

he drank

“Isaac drank it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

²⁵ Isaac said, “Bring the food to me, and I will eat of your game, so that I may bless you.” Jacob brought the food to him. Isaac ate, and Jacob brought him wine, and he drank.

UST

²⁵ Isaac said, “My son, bring me some of the meat that you have cooked, so that I may eat it and then give you my blessing.” So Jacob brought him some, and he ate it. Jacob also brought him some wine, and he drank it.

Genesis 27:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²⁶ Then his father Isaac said to him,
"Come near now and kiss me, my son."

UST

²⁶ Then his father, Isaac, said to him,
"My son, come here and kiss me."

Genesis 27:27

he smelled the smell of his clothes and blessed him

It can be made explicit that the clothes smelled like Esau's clothes. Alternate translation: "he smelled his clothes and they smelled like Esau's clothes, so Isaac blessed him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he smelled

"Isaac smelled"

the smell

"the scent"

blessed him

"then he blessed him." This refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

See, the smell of my son

The word "see" is used as an emphatic figure of speech to mean "it is true." Alternate translation: "Truly, the smell of my son"

that Yahweh has blessed

Here the word "blessed" means that Yahweh has caused good things to happen to the field and it has become fruitful. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh has caused to be very productive" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

27 Jacob came near and kissed him, and he smelled the smell of his clothes and blessed him. He said, "See, the smell of my son is like the smell of a field that Yahweh has blessed.

UST

27 So Jacob went to him, and his father kissed him on the cheek. Isaac smelled the smell of the clothes Jacob was wearing. They smelled like Esau's clothes. So he said, "Truly, the smell of my son is like the smell of a field that Yahweh has blessed.

Genesis 27:28

General Information:

This is Isaac's blessing. He thought he was speaking to Esau, but he was speaking to Jacob.

give you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Jacob. But the blessing would also apply to Jacob's descendants. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

dew of heaven

"Dew" is drops of water that form on the plants during the night. This can be made explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: "night mist from heaven to water your crops" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fatness of the earth

Having fertile land is spoken of as if the earth were fat or rich. Alternate translation: "good soil for producing crops" (See: [Metaphor](#))

plenty of grain and new wine

If "grain" and "wine" are unknown, this can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "plenty of food and drink" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

28 May God give you a portion of the dew of heaven, a portion of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and new wine.

UST

28 I ask that God will send down to you dew from heaven to water your fields, and cause you to have abundant crops from the soil, and good harvests of grain, and grapes for wine.

Genesis 27:29

you...your

Here these pronouns are singular and refer to Jacob. But the blessing also applies to Jacob's descendants. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

nations bow down

Here "nations" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "people from all nations bow down" (See: [Metonymy](#))

bow down

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Be master over your brothers

"Become a master over your brothers"

your brothers...your mother's sons

Isaac is speaking this blessing directly to Jacob. But, it also applies to Jacob's descendants who will rule over the descendants of Esau and the descendants of any other of Jacob's brothers that he may have. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

may your mother's sons bow down to you

"your mother's sons will bow down to you"

May every one who curses you be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God curse everyone who curses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

may every one who blesses you be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God bless everyone who blesses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁹ May peoples serve you and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brothers, and may your mother's sons bow down to you. May every one who curses you be cursed; may every one who blesses you be blessed."

UST

²⁹ I ask that people of many people groups serve you and bow down to you. I ask that you rule over your brothers, and that your mother's descendants also bow down to you. I ask that God curse those who curse you, and bless those who bless you."

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- brother
- son
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- prostrate, worship
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 27:30

had scarcely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father

“had just left the tent of Isaac his father”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial
- consume, devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial
- consume, devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁰ As soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, and Jacob had scarcely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, Esau his brother came in from his hunting.

UST

³⁰ After Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, and Jacob had just left the room where his father was, his older brother, Esau, returned from hunting.

Genesis 27:31

delicious food

“tasty meat that I love.” See how this was translated in [Genesis 27:3](#).

some of your son's game

Here “your son's” was a polite way of Esau referring to his own food he prepared. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

your son's game

The word “game” refers to wild animals that people hunt to eat. See how “game” was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

bless me

This refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

31 He also made delicious food and brought it to his father. He said to his father, “Father, get up and eat some of your son's game, so that you may bless me.”

UST

31 Esau cooked some tasty meat and brought it to his father. He said to his father, “My father, please sit up and eat some of the meat that I have cooked, so that you can then give me your blessing!”

Genesis 27:32

said to him

"said to Esau"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn

ULT

³² Isaac his father said to him, "Who are you?" He said, "I am your son, your firstborn, Esau."

UST

³² His father, Isaac, said to him, "Who are you?" He answered, "I am Esau, your firstborn son!"

Genesis 27:33

Isaac trembled

"Isaac began to shake"

hunted this game

Game refers to a wild animal that people hunt and kill. See how "game" was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

33 Isaac trembled very much and said, "Who was it that hunted this game and brought it to me? I ate it all before you came, and I have blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed."

UST

33 Then Isaac began to tremble very violently. He said, "Then who is it that brought me some meat from an animal that he had hunted and killed, and I ate it all? He was here just before you came. I blessed him, and I cannot take back that blessing."

Genesis 27:34

he cried with a very great and bitter cry

Esau's anguish was similar to the taste of something bitter. Alternate translation: "he cried loudly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

34 When Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a very great and bitter cry, and said to his father, "Bless me, me also, my father."

UST

34 When Esau heard those words of his father, he cried loudly. He was very disappointed. He said to his father, "My father, bless me, too!"

Genesis 27:35

has taken away your blessing

This is a figure of speech meaning Jacob took what was Esau's. Alternate translation: "I have blessed him instead of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [brother](#)

ULT

³⁵ Isaac said, "Your brother came here deceitfully and has taken away your blessing."

UST

³⁵ But his father said, "Your brother came, tricked me, and took your blessing!"

Genesis 27:36

Is he not rightly named Jacob?

Esau uses a question to emphasize his anger at Jacob. Alternate translation: "Jacob is certainly the right name for my brother!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.' In the original language the name 'Jacob' also sounds like the word for 'he deceives.'"

He took away my birthright

This speaks about a birthright as if it were an object that a person could take away. Alternate translation: "What was once my birthright is now his because he tricked me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

now he has taken away my blessing

This speaks about a blessing as if it were an object that person could take away. Alternate translation: "now he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Have you not reserved a blessing for me

Esau knows that his father cannot bless him with the same things that he blessed Jacob. Esau is asking if there is anything left to say to him that Isaac did not say while blessing Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

³⁶ Esau said, "Is he not rightly named Jacob? For he has cheated me these two times. He took away my birthright, and, see, now he has taken away my blessing." Then he said, "Have you not reserved a blessing for me?"

UST

³⁶ Esau said, "It is right that his name is Jacob, because he tricked me two times. The first time he took my rights as firstborn, and this time he took my blessing!" Then he asked, "Do you not have any blessing left for me?"

Genesis 27:37

What more can I do for you, my son?

Isaac uses a question to emphasize that there is nothing else he can do. Alternate translation: “There is nothing else I can do for you!”
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- grain, grainfields

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- grain, grainfields

ULT

37 Isaac answered and said to Esau, “Look, I have made him your master, and I have given to him all his brothers as servants, and I have given him grain and new wine. What more can I do for you, my son?”

UST

37 Isaac answered and said to Esau, “I have declared that your younger brother will rule over you, and I have declared that all his relatives will serve him. And I have said that God will give him plenty of grain and grapes for wine. So, my son, what can I do for you?”

Genesis 27:38

Have you not even one blessing for me, my father

This can be stated in positive form. "My father, do you have one more blessing for me"

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Esau
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Esau
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³⁸ Esau said to his father, "Have you not even one blessing for me, my father? Bless me, even me too, my father." Esau wept loudly.

UST

³⁸ Esau said to his father, "My father, do you have only one blessing? My father, bless me, too!" Then Esau cried very loudly.

Genesis 27:39

said to him

“said to Esau”

Look, the place

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the place”

far from the richness of the earth

This is a figure of speech referring to the earth’s fertility. Alternate translation: “far from the fertile soil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

dew of the sky above

“Dew” is drops of water that form on the plants during the night. This can be made explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: “the night mist from the sky to water your crops” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

³⁹ Isaac his father answered and said to him, “Look, the place where you live will be far from the richness of the earth, away from the dew of the sky above.”

UST

³⁹ His father Isaac answered and said to him, “The place where you will live will be far from the fertile soil and from the dew that God sends from heaven to water the fields.”

Genesis 27:40

your...you

In 27:39-40 these pronouns are singular and refer to Esau, but what Isaac says also applies to Esau's descendants (See: [Synecdoche](#))

By your sword you will live

Here "sword" stands for violence. Alternate translation: "You will rob and kill people in order to get what you need to live" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will shake his yoke from off your neck

This speaks about someone having a master as if the master's control over the person were a yoke that the person had to carry. Alternate translation: "you will free yourself from his control" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- sword, swordsmen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- sword, swordsmen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

40 By your sword you will live, and you will serve your brother. But when you rebel, you will shake his yoke from off your neck."

UST

40 You will rob and kill people in order to get what you need to live, and you will be as though you are your brother's slave. But when you decide to rebel against him, you will free yourself from his control."

Genesis 27:41

Esau said in his heart

Here “heart” stands for Esau himself. Alternate translation: “Esau said to himself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

days of mourning for my father are near

This refers to a number of days a person grieves when a family member dies.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

41 Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing that his father had given him. Esau said in his heart, “The days of mourning for my father are near; after that I will kill my brother Jacob.”

UST

41 Because of the blessing that his father had given to Jacob, Esau hated his brother. Esau said to himself, “After my father dies and we finish mourning for him, I will kill Jacob!”

Genesis 27:42

The words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Rebekah about Esau's plan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

is consoling himself

"is making himself feel better"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son (2)
- Esau
- Esau
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son (2)
- Esau
- Esau
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁴² The words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah. So she sent and called Jacob her younger son and said to him, "See, your brother Esau is consoling himself about you by planning to kill you.

UST

⁴² But Rebekah found out what her older son, Esau, was thinking. So she summoned her younger son, Jacob, and said to him, "Listen to me. Your older brother, Esau, is comforting himself by planning to kill you, to get revenge for you tricking your father.

Genesis 27:43

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

flee to Laban

“leave here quickly and go to Laban”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- voice

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- voice

ULT

⁴³ Now therefore, my son, obey me and flee to Laban, my brother, in Haran.

UST

⁴³ So now, my son, listen carefully to what I am telling you. Escape quickly and go and stay with my brother Laban, in Haran.

Genesis 27:44

for a while

“for a period of time”

until your brother’s fury subsides

“until you brother calms down”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration
- wrath, fury

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- wrath, fury

ULT

⁴⁴ Stay with him for a while, until your brother’s fury subsides,

UST

⁴⁴ Stay with him a while, until your older brother is no longer angry.

Genesis 27:45

until your brother's anger turns away from you

No longer being angry is spoken of as if the anger turns to a different direction away from the person. Alternate translation: "until he is no longer angry with you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why should I lose you both in one day?

Rebekah uses a question to emphasize her concern. Alternate translation: "I do not want to lose both of you in one day!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I lose you both in one day

It is implied that if Esau kills Jacob, then they will execute Esau as a murderer. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I lose

This is a polite way of referring to her sons dying. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ until your brother's anger turns away from you, and he forgets what you have done to him. Then I will send and bring you back from there. Why should I lose you both in one day?

UST

⁴⁵ When he forgets what you did to him, I will send a message to you to tell you to return from there. If Esau killed you, then others would kill him, and then both my sons would die at the same time!"

Genesis 27:46

I am weary of life

Rebekah is exaggerating to emphasize how upset she is about the Hittite women that Esau married. Alternate translation: "I am terribly upset" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the daughters of Heth

"these Hittite women" or "descendants of Heth"

like these women, some of the daughters of the land

The phrase "daughters of the land" means the local females. Alternate translation: "like these women who live in this land" (See: [Idiom](#))

what good will my life be to me?

Rebekah uses a question to emphasize how upset she would be if Jacob marries a Hittite woman. Alternate translation: "My life will be awful!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am weary of life because of the daughters of Heth. If Jacob takes one of the daughters of Heth as a wife, like these women, some of the daughters of the land, what good will my life be to me?"

UST

⁴⁶ Rebekah then said to Isaac, "These foreign women whom Esau has married, who are descendants of Heth, are making my life miserable. If Jacob also marries a woman from the descendants of Heth in this area, my life will be worthless!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Genesis 28

Genesis 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Even though Jacob tricked his father in order to receive Esau's blessing, the chapter repeats the blessing, ensuring he inherits the blessings promised to Abraham. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob's dream

Jacob had a dream or received a vision. The purpose of this dream is to show that, despite Jacob's sin, God is giving Abraham's covenant promises to Jacob and his descendants. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [covenant](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Bethel

This was an important city for Abraham and his descendants. It is possible that there is some theological significance to the city of Bethel.

Genesis 28:1

You must not take

“Do not take”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

¹ Isaac called Jacob, blessed him, and commanded him, “You must not take a wife from the Canaanite women.

UST

¹ Then Isaac summoned Jacob and gave him a blessing. He told him this: “Do not marry a woman from the women of the Canaanite people.

Genesis 28:2

Arise, go

“Go right away”

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

house of

This refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. Alternate translation: “family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah’s father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

your mother’s father

“your grandfather”

one of the daughters

“from the daughters”

your mother’s brother

“your uncle”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

² Arise, go to Paddan Aram, to the house of Bethuel your mother’s father, and take a wife from there, one of the daughters of Laban, your mother’s brother.

UST

² Instead, go right away to Paddan Aram, to the house of your mother’s father Bethuel. Ask one of the daughters of your mother’s brother Laban to marry you.

Genesis 28:3

General Information:

Isaac continues speaking to Jacob

make you fruitful and multiply you

The word “multiply” explains how God would make Jacob “fruitful.”
Alternate translation: “give you many children and descendants”
(See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

ULT

³ May God Almighty bless you, make you fruitful and multiply you, so that you may become a multitude of peoples.

UST

³ I will pray that God Almighty bless you, and enable you to have many descendants, in order that they will become many different people groups.

Genesis 28:4

May he give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to your descendants after you

This speaks about blessing someone as if a blessing were an object that a person can give. The abstract noun “the blessing” can be stated as “bless.” Alternate translation: “May God bless you and your descendants as he blessed Abraham” or “May God give to you and your descendants what he promised to Abraham” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

that you may inherit the land

God giving the land of Canaan to Jacob and his descendants is spoken of as if a child were inheriting money or possessions from his father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the land where you have been living

“the land where you have been staying”

which God gave to Abraham

“which God promised to Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [possess, possessed, possession, dispossess](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [possess, possessed, possession, dispossess](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁴ May he give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to your descendants after you, that you may inherit the land where you have been living, which God gave to Abraham.”

UST

⁴ I also will pray that he bless you and your descendants by enabling you to possess the land in which you are now living as a foreigner, the land that God promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.”

Genesis 28:5

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah's father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

⁵ So Isaac sent Jacob away. Jacob went to Paddan Aram, to Laban son of Bethuel the Aramean, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother.

UST

⁵ So Isaac sent Jacob to Paddan Aram to live with Rebekah's brother Laban son of Bethuel, who belonged to the people group of the Arameans. (It was this Rebekah who would later give birth to Jacob and Esau.)

Genesis 28:6

General Information:

The story changes from Jacob to Esau

Now

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Esau. (See: [Background Information](#))

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to take a wife

"to take a wife for himself"

He also saw that Isaac had blessed him

"Esau also saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob"

You must not take

"Do not take"

women of Canaan

"daughters of Canaan" or "Canaanite women"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

⁶ Now Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and sent him away to Paddan Aram, to take a wife from there. He also saw that Isaac had blessed him and given him a command, saying, "You must not take a wife from the women of Canaan."

UST

⁶ Esau found out that his father Isaac had blessed Jacob and then sent him to Paddan Aram. He also found out that when his father blessed Jacob, he told him, "Do not marry a woman from the Canaanite people,"

Genesis 28:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁷ Esau also saw that Jacob had obeyed his father and his mother, and had gone to Paddan Aram.

UST

⁷ and that Jacob had obeyed his father and mother, and had gone to Paddan Aram.

Genesis 28:8

General Information:

This continues the background information about Esau.

Esau saw

“Esau realized”

the women of Canaan did not please Isaac his father

“his father Isaac did not approve of the women of Canaan”

women of Canaan

“daughters of Canaan” or “the Canaanite women”

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁸ Esau saw that the women of Canaan did not please Isaac his father.

UST

⁸ Esau also realized that his father Isaac did not approve of women from the Canaan people.

Genesis 28:9

So he went

“Because of that, he went”

besides the wives that he had

“in addition to the wives that he already had”

Mahalath

This is the name of one of Ishmael's daughters. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Esau

ULT

⁹ So he went to Ishmael, and took, besides the wives that he had, Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael, Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth, to be his wife.

UST

⁹ Because of that, Esau went to see his relative Ishmael and married Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael. Mahalath was the sister of Nabaioth and the granddaughter of Abraham.

Genesis 28:10

General Information:

The story switches back to Jacob

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Jacob left Beersheba and went toward Haran.

UST

¹⁰ Meanwhile, Jacob left Beersheba and started to go toward Haran.

Genesis 28:11

He came to a certain place and stayed there all night, because the sun had set

“He came to a certain place and, because the sun had set, he decided to stay for the night”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed

ULT

11 He came to a certain place and stayed there all night, because the sun had set. He took one of the stones in that place, put it under his head, and lay down in that place to sleep.

UST

11 When he arrived at a certain place, he stopped there because the sun had gone down. He took one of the stones there and put it under his head to use as a pillow. Then he lay down and slept there.

Genesis 28:12

He dreamed

"Jacob had a dream"

set up on the earth

"with the bottom of it touching the ground"

reached to heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- head
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- head
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

12 He dreamed and saw a stairway set up on the earth. Its top reached to heaven and the angels of God were ascending and descending on it.

UST

12 While he was sleeping, he had a dream in which he saw a stairway. The bottom of the stairway was on the earth and the top was in the sky. Jacob also saw that God's angels were going up and down the stairway.

Genesis 28:13

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Yahweh stood above it

Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway” or 2) “Yahweh was standing next to Jacob”

Abraham your father

Here “father” means “ancestor.” Alternate translation: “Abraham your ancestor” or “Abraham your forefather”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

13 Behold, Yahweh stood above it and said, “I am Yahweh, the God of Abraham your father, and the God of Isaac. The land on which you are lying, I will give to you and to your descendants.

UST

13 Then he saw Yahweh standing at the top of the stairway, saying “I am Yahweh God, whom your grandfather Abraham worshiped and whom Isaac worships. I will give to you and to your descendants the land on which you are lying.

Genesis 28:14

General Information:

God continues to talk to Jacob in a dream.

Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth

God compares Jacob's descendants to the dust of the earth to emphasize their huge number. Alternate translation: "You will have more descendants than you can count" (See: [Simile](#))

you will spread far out to the west

The word "you" is singular and refers to Jacob. Here Jacob represents his descendants. Alternate translation: "your descendants will spread out to the west" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will spread far out

This means the people will extend the borders of their land and occupy more territory.

to the west, to the east, to the north, and to the south

This phrases are used together to mean "all directions." Alternate translation: "in all directions" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Through you and through your descendants will all the families of the earth be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bless all families on the earth through you and your descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

14 Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth, and you will spread far out to the west, to the east, to the north, and to the south. Through you and through your descendants will all the families of the earth be blessed.

UST

14 Your descendants will be as numerous as the particles of dust that are on the earth, and their territory will be very large. It will extend in all directions, to the east and to the west, to the north and to the south. I will bless all the clans and people groups on earth through you and your descendants.

Genesis 28:15

Behold, I am

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I am”

for I will not leave you. I will do all

“for I will not leave you until I have done all”

I will keep you

“I will keep you safe” or “I will protect you”

I will bring you into this land again

“I will bring you back to this land”

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- walk, walked
- return

ULT

15 Behold, I am with you, and I will keep you wherever you go. I will bring you into this land again; for I will not leave you. I will do all that I have promised to you.”

UST

15 I will help you and protect you wherever you go, and I will bring you back to this land. I will not leave you; I will do for you all that I have promised to do.”

Genesis 28:16

awoke out of his sleep

“woke up from his sleep”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

16 Jacob awoke out of his sleep, and he said, “Surely Yahweh is in this place, and I did not know it.”

UST

16 During the night, when Jacob woke up from sleeping, he thought, “Surely Yahweh is in this place, and until now I was not aware of it!”

Genesis 28:17

the house of God...the gate of heaven

The phrase “the gate of heaven” explains that this place is the entrance to “the house of God” and “the entrance to where God lives.” (See: [Doublet](#))

This is the gate of heaven

This speaks about the entrance to the place where God lives as if it were a literal kingdom that had a gate that someone has to open to let people in. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 He was afraid and said, “How terrifying is this place! This is none other than the house of God. This is the gate of heaven.”

UST

17 He was afraid, and he said, “This place is terrifying! This is surely the place where God lives, and this is the entrance to heaven!”

Genesis 28:18

pillar

This is a memorial pillar, that is, simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

poured oil upon the top of it

This action symbolizes that Jacob is dedicating the pillar to God. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “poured oil on the top of it in order to dedicate the pillar to God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- head
- olive

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- head
- olive

ULT

18 Jacob arose early in the morning and took the stone that he had put under his head. He set it up as a pillar and poured oil upon the top of it.

UST

18 The next morning Jacob got up, took the stone that he had put under his head, and set it up on its end to mark the place where God had appeared to him. He poured some olive oil on top of the stone to set it apart for God.

Genesis 28:19

Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

Luz

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

19 He called the name of that place Bethel, but the name of the city originally was Luz.

UST

19 He named that place Bethel, which means "house of God." Previously its name was Luz.

Genesis 28:20

Connecting Statement:

Jacob begins to make a vow to Yahweh.

vowed a vow

“made a vow” or “solemnly promised God”

If God will...clothes to wear

Jacob is speaking to God in the third person. This can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “If you will...clothes to wear” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

on this road on which I am walking

This stands for Jacob’s journey to find a wife and to return home. Alternate translation: “on this journey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will give me bread to eat

Here “bread” stands for food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

²⁰ Jacob vowed a vow, saying, “If God will be with me and will protect me on this road on which I am walking, and will give me bread to eat, and clothes to wear,

UST

²⁰ Jacob solemnly promised God, saying, “If you will help me and protect me while I am taking this journey, and if you give me enough food to eat and clothes to wear,

Genesis 28:21

Connecting Statement:

The vow that began with the words “If God will...clothes to wear” in verse 20 continues here.

so that I return safely...then Yahweh will be my God

The vow that began with the words “If God will...clothes to wear” in verse 20 continues here. Jacob is speaking to God in the third person. This can be stated in the second person. “If you will...clothes to wear...so that I return safely...then you, Yahweh, will be the God that I will worship” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

to my father’s house

Here “house” stands for Jacob’s family. Alternate translation: “to my father and the rest of my family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²¹ so that I return safely to my father’s house, then Yahweh will be my God.

UST

²¹ in order that I can later return safely to my father’s house, then you, Yahweh, will be the God that I will worship.

Genesis 28:22

a sacred stone

This means that the stone will mark the place where God appeared to him and it will be a place where people can worship God.

Alternate translation: "God's house" or "God's place"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- house

ULT

22 Then this stone that I have set up as a pillar will be a sacred stone. From everything that you give me, I will surely give a tenth back to you."

UST

22 This stone that I have set up will mark the place where you appeared to me. And I will give back to you a tenth of everything that you give to me."

Genesis 29

Genesis 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the conflict between Jacob's wives, Rachel and Leah. This account continues into the next chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Shepherds

Although the exact reasoning for the shepherds' unwillingness to give water to the sheep is unknown, it is probable they were being lazy. The actions of these shepherds contrast Jacob's actions.

Kissing

It was common in the ancient Near East for relatives to greet each other with a kiss. There was nothing sexual about this type of kissing.

Marriage

It was customary in the ancient Near East for a man to work for a woman's father in order to earn the right to marry her. It is unknown how common it was for a father to have his younger daughter marry before an older daughter. It was also sinful for Jacob to marry more than one wife. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Genesis 29:1

the people of the east

This means the people of Paddan Aram, which is a land east of the land of Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹ Then Jacob went on his journey and came to the land of the people of the east.

UST

¹ Jacob continued on the road, and he reached the land that was east of the land of Canaan.

Genesis 29:2

and, behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there by it

The word “behold” marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

For out of that well

“For from that well.” This phrase marks a change from the story to background information about how the shepherds watered the flocks. (See: [Background Information](#))

they would water

“the shepherds would water” or “those taking care of the sheep would water”

the well's mouth

Here “mouth” is a way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: “the opening of the well” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

ULT

² As he looked, he saw a well in the field, and, behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there by it. For out of that well they would water the flocks, and the stone over the well's mouth was large.

UST

² There he saw a well in a field, and three flocks of sheep were lying near the well. It was the well from which shepherds normally got water for their sheep. There was a large stone covering the top of the well.

Genesis 29:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- return

Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- return

ULT

³ When all the flocks had gathered there, the shepherds would roll the stone from the well's mouth and water the sheep, and then put the stone again over the well's mouth, back in its place.

UST

³ When all the flocks were gathered there, the shepherds would work together to roll the stone away from the top of the well and get water for the sheep. When they finished doing that, they would put the stone back in its place over the top of the well.

Genesis 29:4

Jacob said to them

"Jacob said to the shepherds"

My brothers

This is a polite way to greet a stranger.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

⁴ Jacob said to them, "My brothers, where are you from?" They replied, "We are from Haran."

UST

⁴ On that day, Jacob asked the shepherds who were sitting there, "Where are you from?" They replied, "We are from the city of Haran."

Genesis 29:5

Laban son of Nahor

Here “son” refers to a male descendant. Another possible meaning is “Laban the grandson of Nahor.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- son
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁵ He said to them, “Do you know Laban son of Nahor?” They said, “We know him.”

UST

⁵ He asked them, “Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor?” They replied, “Yes, we know him.”

Genesis 29:6

and, look there, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep

"Now look! Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep"

Translation Words - ULT

- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁶ He said to them, "Is he well?" They said, "He is well, and, look there, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep."

UST

⁶ Jacob asked them, "Is Laban well?" They replied, "Yes, he is well. Look! Here comes his daughter Rachel with the sheep!"

Genesis 29:7

it is the middle of the day

"the sun is still high in the sky" or "the sun is still shining brightly"

for the flocks to be gathered together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for you to gather the flocks" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be gathered together

This means to gather them together inside a fence for them to stay for the night. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let them graze

"let them eat grass in the field"

Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

ULT

⁷ Jacob said, "See, it is the middle of the day. It is not the time for the flocks to be gathered together. You should water the sheep and then go and let them graze."

UST

⁷ Jacob said, "But the sun is still high in the sky. It is not time for the flocks to be gathered for nighttime. Why do you not give the sheep some water and then take them back to graze in the pastures?"

Genesis 29:8

We cannot water them

"We have to wait to water them." This has to do with timing, not permission.

until all the flocks are gathered together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until the other shepherds gather their flocks" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the well's mouth

Here "mouth" is way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: "from the well" or "from the opening of the well" (See: [Idiom](#))

and we will water the sheep

"then we will water the sheep"

Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

ULT

⁸ They said, "We cannot water them until all the flocks are gathered together. The men will then roll the stone from the well's mouth, and we will water the sheep."

UST

⁸ They replied, "No, we cannot do that until all the flocks are gathered here and the stone is removed from the top of the well. After that, we will give water to the sheep."

Genesis 29:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁹ While Jacob was still speaking with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep, for she was tending them.

UST

⁹ While he was still talking with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep. She was the one who took care of her father's sheep.

Genesis 29:10

his mother's brother

"his uncle"

the well's mouth

Here "mouth" is a way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: "the well" or "the opening of the well" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother (2)
- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- flock, herd (2)

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother (2)
- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- flock, herd (2)

ULT

10 When Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban, his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban, his mother's brother, Jacob came over, rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the flock of Laban, his mother's brother.

UST

10 When Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban, his mother's brother, and Laban's sheep, he went over and by himself rolled away the stone that covered the top of the well, and he got water for his uncle's sheep.

Genesis 29:11

Jacob kissed Rachel

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. However, it is normally done between men. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

wept loudly

Jacob weeps because he is so happy. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

11 Jacob kissed Rachel and wept loudly.

UST

11 Then Jacob kissed Rachel on the cheek, and he cried loudly because he was so happy.

Genesis 29:12

her father's relative

"related to her father"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹² Jacob told Rachel that he was her father's relative, and that he was Rebekah's son. Then she ran and told her father.

UST

¹² Jacob told Rachel that he was one of her father's relatives, the son of her aunt Rebekah. So she ran and told that to her father.

Genesis 29:13

his sister's son

"his nephew"

embraced him

"hugged him"

kissed him

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. However, it is normally done between men. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

Jacob told Laban all these things

"then Jacob told Laban everything he told Rachel"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

ULT

13 When Laban heard the news about Jacob his sister's son, he ran to meet him, embraced him, kissed him, and brought him to his house. Jacob told Laban all these things.

UST

13 As soon as Laban heard that Jacob, his sister's son, was there, he ran to meet him. He embraced him and kissed him on the cheek. Then he brought him to his home, and then Jacob told him all that had happened to him.

Genesis 29:14

my bone and my flesh

This phrase means they are directly related. Alternate translation: “my relative” or “a member of my family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

14 Laban said to him, “You are indeed my bone and my flesh.” Then Jacob stayed with him for about one month.

UST

14 Then Laban said to him, “Truly, you are part of my family!” Jacob stayed there and worked for Laban for a month.

Genesis 29:15

Should you serve me for nothing...my relative?

Laban uses a question to emphasize that he should pay Jacob for working for him. The question can be translated as a statement. This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "It is certainly right that I should pay you for working for me even though you are my relative." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [reward, prize, deserve,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [reward, prize, deserve,](#)

ULT

15 Then Laban said to Jacob, "Should you serve me for nothing because you are my relative? Tell me, what will your wages be?"

UST

15 Then Laban said to him "You should not work for me for nothing just because you are a relative of mine! Tell me how much you want me to pay you."

Genesis 29:16

Now Laban had

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Laban and his daughters. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)

ULT

16 Now Laban had two daughters. The name of the older was Leah, and the name of the younger was Rachel.

UST

16 Now Laban had two daughters. The older one was named Leah, and the younger one was named Rachel.

Genesis 29:17

Leah's eyes were tender

Possible meanings are 1) "Leah's eyes were pretty" or 2) "Leah's eyes were plain"

ULT

17 Leah's eyes were tender, but Rachel was beautiful in form and appearance.

UST

17 Leah had pretty eyes, but Rachel had a very attractive figure and was beautiful.

Genesis 29:18

Jacob loved Rachel

Here the word "loved" refers to a romantic attraction between a man and a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

18 Jacob loved Rachel, so he said, "I will serve you seven years for Rachel, your younger daughter."

UST

18 Jacob was in love with Rachel, and he said, "I will work for you for seven years. That will be my payment for you giving me permission to marry your younger daughter, Rachel."

Genesis 29:19

than that I should give her to another man

“rather than give her to another man”

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

ULT

19 Laban said, “It is better that I give her to you, than that I should give her to another man. Stay with me.”

UST

19 Laban replied, “It is better for me to let you marry her than for her to marry some other man! You should stay here with us.”

Genesis 29:20

and they seemed to him only a few days

“but the time seemed to him to be only a few days”

for the love he had for her

“on account of the love he had for her” or “because of his love for her”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁰ So Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed to him only a few days, for the love he had for her.

UST

²⁰ So Jacob worked for Laban for seven years to get Rachel, but to him it seemed like it was only a few days, because he loved her so much.

Genesis 29:21

Give me my wife, for my days have been completed—so that I may marry her!

The phrase “have been completed” can be stated in active form. The statement is emphatic. Alternate translation: Give me my wife, so that I may marry her, for I have completed the length of time that I was to work for you! “Give me Rachel so that I may marry her, for I have worked seven years for you!” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

ULT

21 Then Jacob said to Laban, “Give me my wife, for my days have been completed—so that I may marry her!”

UST

21 After the seven years were ended, Jacob said to Laban, “Let me marry Rachel now, because the time we agreed upon for me to work for you has ended, and I want to marry her.”

Genesis 29:22

made a feast

“prepared a wedding feast.” Most likely Laban had others prepare the feast. Alternate translation: “had others prepare a wedding feast” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [feast, feasting](#)

ULT

²² So Laban gathered together all the men of the place and made a feast.

UST

²² So Laban gathered together all the people who lived in that area and made a feast.

Genesis 29:23

who went in to her

“who had sexual relations with her.” You may need to use other, more polite words here. (See: [Euphemism](#))

ULT

²³ In the evening, Laban took Leah his daughter and brought her to Jacob, who went in to her.

UST

²³ But that evening, instead of taking Rachel to Jacob, Laban took his older daughter, Leah, to him. But because it was already dark, he could not see that it was Leah and not Rachel, and he slept with her.

Genesis 29:24

Laban gave his female servant Zilpah...her servant

Here the author gives background information about Laban giving Zilpah to Leah. Most likely he gave Zilpah to Leah before the wedding. (See: [Background Information](#))

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁴ Laban gave his female servant Zilpah to his daughter Leah, to be her servant.

UST

²⁴ (Laban had already given his slave girl Zilpah to his daughter Leah to be her maid.)

Genesis 29:25

behold, it was Leah

"Jacob was surprised to see it was Leah in bed with him." The word "behold" here shows that Jacob was surprised by what he saw.

What is this you have done to me?

Jacob uses a question to express his anger and surprise. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe you did this to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did I not serve you for Rachel?

Jacob uses these questions to express his hurt that Laban had tricked him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I served you for seven years to marry Rachel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

25 In the morning, behold, it was Leah! Jacob said to Laban, "What is this you have done to me? Did I not serve you for Rachel? Why then have you tricked me?"

UST

25 The next morning, Jacob was shocked to see that it was Leah who was with him! So he went to Laban and told him very angrily, "What you have done to me is disgusting! I worked for you to get Rachel, did I not? So why did you deceive me?"

Genesis 29:26

It is not our custom to give

"In our family we do not give"

ULT

²⁶ Laban said, "It is not our custom to give the younger daughter before the firstborn."

UST

²⁶ Laban replied, "In this land, it is not our custom to give a younger daughter to be married before we let someone marry our firstborn daughter."

Genesis 29:27

Complete the bridal week of this daughter

"Finish celebrating Leah's bridal week"

we will give you the other also

The full meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "next week we will give you Rachel also" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

²⁷ Complete the bridal week of this daughter, and we will give you the other also in return for serving me another seven years."

UST

²⁷ After we finish this week of celebration, we will let you marry the younger one also. But in return, you must pay for Rachel by working for me for another seven years."

Genesis 29:28

Jacob did so, and completed Leah's week

"And Jacob did what Laban asked, and finished celebrating Leah's bridal week"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²⁸ Jacob did so, and completed Leah's week. Then Laban gave him Rachel his daughter as his wife also.

UST

²⁸ So that is what Jacob did. After the week of celebration was ended, Laban gave him his daughter, Rachel, to be his wife.

Genesis 29:29

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

²⁹ Laban also gave Bilhah to his daughter Rachel, to be her servant.

UST

²⁹ Laban gave his slave girl, Bilhah, to Rachel to be her servant.

Genesis 29:30

Jacob went in to Rachel

"Jacob had sexual relations with Rachel." You may need to use other, more polite words here. See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 29:23](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

he loved Rachel

This refers to the romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#), [beloved](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love](#), [beloved](#)

ULT

³⁰ So Jacob went in to Rachel, too, but he loved Rachel more than Leah. So Jacob served Laban for seven more years.

UST

³⁰ Jacob married Rachel also, and he loved Rachel more than he loved Leah. He worked for Laban for another seven years.

Genesis 29:31

Leah was not loved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jacob did not love Leah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

not loved

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that Jacob loved Rachel more than Leah. Alternate translation: "loved less than Rachel" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

so he opened her womb

God causing Leah to be able to become pregnant is spoken of as if God is opening her womb. (See: [Metaphor](#))

was childless

"was not able to become pregnant"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

31 Yahweh saw that Leah was not loved, so he opened her womb, but Rachel was childless.

UST

31 When Yahweh saw that Jacob did not love Leah very much, he enabled her to become pregnant. But Rachel was not able to become pregnant.

Genesis 29:32

Leah conceived and bore a son

"Leah became pregnant and gave birth to a son"

she called his name Reuben

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Reuben means 'See, a son.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh has looked upon my affliction

Leah was experiencing emotional pain because Jacob had rejected her. The abstract noun "affliction" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "Yahweh saw that I was suffering" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Reuben
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Reuben
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

³² Leah conceived and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben. For she said, "Because Yahweh has looked upon my affliction; surely now my husband will love me."

UST

³² Leah gave birth to a son, whom she named Reuben. She said, "Yahweh has seen that I was miserable, and because of that he has given me a son. Now, surely my husband will love me for giving birth to a son for him."

Genesis 29:33

Then she conceived

"Then Leah became pregnant"

bore a son

"gave birth to a son"

Yahweh has heard that I am unloved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has heard that my husband does not love me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

she called his name Simeon

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Simeon means 'heard.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

33 Then she conceived again and bore a son. She said, "Because Yahweh has heard that I am unloved, he has therefore given me this son also," and she called his name Simeon.

UST

33 Later she became pregnant again and gave birth to another son. She said, "Because Yahweh has heard that my husband does not love me, he has given me this son, too." So she named him Simeon, which means "someone who hears."

Genesis 29:34

will my husband be attached to me

"my husband will embrace me"

I have borne him three sons

"I have given birth to three sons for him"

his name was called Levi

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Levi means 'attached.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

34 Then she conceived again and bore a son. She said, "Now this time will my husband be attached to me, because I have borne him three sons." Therefore his name was called Levi.

UST

34 Later she became pregnant again, and gave birth to another son. She said, "Now, finally, my husband will hold me close to him." So she named him Levi, which means "hold close."

Genesis 29:35

She conceived again

“Leah became pregnant again”

bore a son

“gave birth to a son”

she called his name Judah

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Judah means ‘praise.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- Yahweh
- name
- Judea

ULT

35 She conceived again and bore a son. She said, “This time I will praise Yahweh.” Therefore she called his name Judah; then she stopped having children.

UST

35 Later she became pregnant again and gave birth to another son. She said, “This time I will praise Yahweh,” so she called his name Judah. After that, she did not give birth to any more children.

Genesis 30

Genesis 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of the conflict between Rachel and Leah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Women and their children

In the ancient Near East, it was important for a married woman to have many children. If a woman did not have many children, people believed it brought shame upon her. This is one of the reasons why Rachel and Leah were always jealous of each other. (See: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Speckled and spotted

Speckled and spotted sheep were considered to be imperfect. Therefore, they were considered to be much less valuable than the spotless sheep. Despite Jacob's fair offer, Laban once again tried to cheat him out of something he deserved. Jacob anticipated Laban's cheating.

Genesis 30:1

When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children

"When Rachel realized that she was unable to become pregnant"

I will die

Rachel is exaggerating to show how upset she is about not having children. Alternate translation: "I will feel completely worthless" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Give me children

"Cause me to become pregnant"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- zeal, zealous
- pray, prayer
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- zeal, zealous
- pray, prayer
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

¹ When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister. She said to Jacob, "Give me children, or I will die."

UST

¹ Rachel realized that she was not becoming pregnant at all. So she became jealous of her older sister, Leah, because Leah had given birth to four sons. She said to Jacob, "Make me pregnant so I can have children. If you do not do that, I will die!"

Genesis 30:2

Jacob's anger burned against Rachel

Jacob's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "Jacob was very angry with Rachel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Am I in the place of God, who has kept you from having children?

This is a rhetorical question that Jacob uses to scold Rachel. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not God! I am not the one who is preventing you from having children!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pray, prayer
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Translation Words - UST

- God
- pray, prayer
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

ULT

² Jacob's anger burned against Rachel. He said, "Am I in the place of God, who has kept you from having children?"

UST

² Jacob became angry with Rachel and said, "I am not God! He is the one who has prevented you from becoming pregnant!"

Genesis 30:3

She said

"Rachel said"

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

there is my servant Bilhah...I will have children by her

At that time, this was an acceptable way for a barren woman to have children that would legally belong to her. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#).

Go in to her

This is a polite way of talking about sexual relations. You may need to use different words in your language. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

on my knees

This is a way of saying that the child that Bilhah gives birth to will belong to Rachel. Alternate translation: "for me" (See: [Idiom](#))

I will have children by her

"and in this way she will cause me to have children"

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

³ She said, "See, there is my servant Bilhah. Go in to her, so she might give birth to children on my knees, and I will have children by her."

UST

³ Then she said, "Look, here is my slave, Bilhah. Sleep with her so that she will have children in my place. In that way I will have legal children."

Genesis 30:4

Jacob went in to her

This is a polite way of talking about sexual relations. You may need to use different words in your language. Alternate translation: "Jacob had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴ So she gave him her servant Bilhah as a wife, and Jacob went in to her.

UST

⁴ So she gave him her slave, Bilhah, to be another wife for him, and Jacob slept with her.

Genesis 30:5

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#).

bore Jacob a son

“gave birth to a son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁵ Bilhah conceived and bore Jacob a son.

UST

⁵ She became pregnant and bore Jacob a son.

Genesis 30:6

she called his name

"Rachel gave him the name"

called his name Dan

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Dan means 'he judged.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [voice](#)

ULT

⁶ Then Rachel said, "God has vindicated me, and he has heard my voice and given me a son." For this reason she called his name Dan.

UST

⁶ Rachel said, "God gave me justice. He has heard me when I prayed to him, and his justice was to give me a son." She named him Dan, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "he gives me justice."

Genesis 30:7

Bilhah...conceived again

"Bilhah...became pregnant again"

bore Jacob a second son

"gave birth to a second son for Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ Bilhah, Rachel's servant, conceived again and bore Jacob a second son.

UST

⁷ Later, Rachel's slave Bilhah became pregnant again and gave birth to another son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:8

With mighty wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister

The phrase “wrestlings have I wrestled” is an idiom used for emphasis. It is also a metaphor that speaks of Rachel's attempts to have a child like her sister as if she were having a physical fight with Leah. Alternate translation: “I have had a great struggle to have children like my older sister, Leah” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

have prevailed

“I have won” or “I have succeeded”

called his name Naphtali

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Naphtali means ‘my struggle.’”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁸ Rachel said, “With mighty wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister and have prevailed.” She called his name Naphtali.

UST

⁸ Then Rachel said, “I have had a great struggle to have children like my older sister, but truly I have a son.” So she named him Naphtali, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means “struggle.”

Genesis 30:9

When Leah saw that

“When Leah became aware that”

she took Zilpah, her servant, and gave her to Jacob as a wife

“she gave Zilpah, her servant, to Jacob as a wife”

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah’s female servant. See how you translated this in [Genesis 29:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁹ When Leah saw that she had stopped having children, she took Zilpah, her servant, and gave her to Jacob as a wife.

UST

⁹ When Leah realized that she was not having any more children, she took her slave, Zilpah, and gave her to Jacob to be another wife for him.

Genesis 30:10

bore Jacob a son

“gave birth to a son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁰ Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a son.

UST

¹⁰ Zilpah soon became pregnant and gave birth to a son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:11

This is fortunate!

"How fortunate!" or "What good luck!"

called his name Gad

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Gad means 'fortunate.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Gad
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Gad
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

11 Leah said, "This is fortunate!" so she called his name Gad.

UST

11 Leah said, "I am truly fortunate!" So she named him Gad, which means "fortunate."

Genesis 30:12

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore Jacob a second son

"gave birth to a second son for Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹² Then Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a second son.

UST

¹² Later Leah's slave, Zilpah, gave birth to another son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:13

I am happy!

“How blessed I am!” or “How happy I am!”

the daughters

“the women” or “the young women”

called his name Asher

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Asher means ‘happy.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

¹³ Leah said, “I am happy! For the daughters will call me happy.” So she called his name Asher.

UST

¹³ Leah said, “Now I am very happy, and people will call me happy.” So she named him Asher, which means “happy.”

Genesis 30:14

Reuben went

"Reuben went out"

in the days of wheat harvest

Here the phrase "in the days of" is an idiom that refers to the season or time of year. Alternate translation: "at the time of year of the wheat harvest" or "during the wheat harvest" (See: [Idiom](#))

mandrakes

This is a fruit that was said to increase fertility and the desire to sleep with one's lover. Alternate translation: "love fruit" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

14 Reuben went in the days of wheat harvest and found mandrakes in the field. He brought them to his mother Leah. Then Rachel said to Leah, "Give me some of your son's mandrakes."

UST

14 During the time when they were harvesting wheat, Reuben went out into the fields and saw some mandrakes. He brought some of them to his mother Leah. But Rachel saw them and said to Leah, "Please give me some of those plants that your son brought to you!"

Genesis 30:15

Is it a small matter to you...my husband?

"Do you not care...my husband?" This is a rhetorical question used to scold Rachel. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is bad enough...my husband." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do you now want...too?

This is a rhetorical question, used to scold Rachel. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now you want...too!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Then he will lie with you

Here "lie with" is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob will have sexual intercourse with you" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

15 Leah said to her, "Is it a small matter to you, that you have taken away my husband? Do you now want to take away my son's mandrakes, too?" Rachel said, "Then he will lie with you tonight, in exchange for your son's mandrakes."

UST

15 But Leah said to her, "No! It was bad that you stole my husband! Now are you going to take my son's mandrake plants?" So Rachel said, "All right, Jacob can sleep with you tonight, if you give me some of your son's mandrake plants." So Leah agreed with Rachel.

Genesis 30:16

You must come in to me

Here “come in to” is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “You must have sexual intercourse with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

with my son’s mandrakes

“for the price of my son’s mandrakes.” See how you translated “mandrake” in [Genesis 30:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

ULT

16 Jacob came from the field in the evening. Leah went out to meet him and said, “You must come in to me, for I have hired you with my son’s mandrakes.” So Jacob lay with Leah that night.

UST

16 When Jacob returned from the wheat fields that evening, Leah went out to meet him. She said, “You must sleep with me tonight, because I gave Rachel some mandrake plants to pay her for allowing us to do that.” So Jacob slept with her that night.

Genesis 30:17

she conceived

“She became pregnant”

bore Jacob a fifth son

“gave birth to a fifth son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God

ULT

17 God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore Jacob a fifth son.

UST

17 God answered Leah’s prayers, and she became pregnant and bore a fifth son to Jacob.

Genesis 30:18

God has given me my wages

God rewarding Leah is spoken of as if he were a boss paying wages to someone who works for him. Alternate translation: "God has given my due" or "God has rewarded me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

She called his name Issachar

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Issachar means 'there is a reward.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

18 Leah said, "God has given me my wages, because I gave my servant woman to my husband." She called his name Issachar.

UST

18 Leah said, "God has rewarded me for giving my slave to my husband to be another wife for him." So she named him Issachar, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "reward."

Genesis 30:19

Leah conceived again

“Leah became pregnant again”

bore a sixth son to Jacob

“gave birth to a sixth son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

19 Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son to Jacob.

UST

19 Leah became pregnant again and bore a sixth son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:20

She called his name Zebulun

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Zebulun means 'honor.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- name
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- name
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

²⁰ Leah said, "God has given me a good gift. Now my husband will honor me, because I have borne him six sons." She called his name Zebulun.

UST

²⁰ Leah said, "God has given me a precious gift. This time my husband will honor me, because I have given birth to six sons for him." So she named him Zebulun.

Genesis 30:21

called her name Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

21 Afterwards she bore a daughter and called her name Dinah.

UST

21 Later she gave birth to a daughter and named her Dinah.

Genesis 30:22

God called Rachel to mind and listened to her

The phrase “call to mind” means to remember. This does not mean God forgot about Rachel. It means he considered her request. Alternate translation: “God considered Rachel and granted to her what she wanted” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

22 God called Rachel to mind and listened to her. He caused her to become pregnant.

UST

22 Then God thought about what Rachel wanted. He heard her pray and enabled her to become pregnant.

Genesis 30:23

God has taken away my shame

God causing Rachel to no longer feel ashamed is spoken of as if “shame” were an object that person could take away from someone else. The abstract noun “shame” can be stated as “ashamed.” Alternate translation: “God has caused me to no longer feel ashamed” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

ULT

²³ She conceived and bore a son. She said, “God has taken away my shame.”

UST

²³ She became pregnant and gave birth to a son. She said, “God has caused me to be ashamed no longer for not having children.”

Genesis 30:24

She called his name Joseph

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Joseph means 'may he add.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh has added to me another son

Rachel's first sons were through her female servant Bilhah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

24 She called his name Joseph, saying, "Yahweh has added to me another son."

UST

24 She named him Joseph, which sounds like the Hebrew words that mean, "Yahweh gave me another son."

Genesis 30:25

After Rachel had borne Joseph

“After Rachel gave birth to Joseph”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²⁵ After Rachel had borne Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, “Send me away, so that I may go to my own home and to my country.

UST

²⁵ After Rachel had given birth to Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, “Now allow me to stop working for you and let me return to my own land.

Genesis 30:26

and let me go

“so I can go”

you know the service I have given you

Jacob is reminding Laban of their contract ([Genesis Gen 29:27](#)). The abstract noun “service” can be stated as “served.” Alternate translation: “you know that I have served you long enough” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

26 Give me my wives and my children for whom I have served you, and let me go, for you know the service I have given you.”

UST

26 You know the work that I have done for you. So let me take my wives and my children for whom I worked for you to get them, and leave.”

Genesis 30:27

Laban said to him

"Laban said to Jacob"

If now I have found favor in your eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "If I have found favor with you" or "If you are pleased with me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

found favor

This is an idiom that means that someone is approved of by someone else. (See: [Idiom](#))

wait, because

"please stay, because"

I have learned by using divination

"I have discovered by my own spiritual and magical practices"

for your sake

"because of you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁷ Laban said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, wait, because I have learned by using divination that Yahweh has blessed me for your sake."

UST

²⁷ But Laban said to him, "If you are pleased with me, stay here, because I have found out by performing a magic ritual that Yahweh has blessed me because of what you have done for me."

Genesis 30:28

Name your wages

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "Tell me how much I have to pay to keep you here" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

28 Then he said, "Name your wages, and I will pay them."

UST

28 Tell me what you want me to pay you for continuing to work for me, and that is what I will pay you."

Genesis 30:29

Jacob said to him

"Jacob said to Laban"

how your livestock have fared with me

"how well your livestock have done since I started taking care of them"

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁹ Jacob said to him, "You know how I have served you, and how your livestock have fared with me.

UST

²⁹ Jacob said to him, "You know how I have worked for you, and you know that your livestock have increased greatly as I have taken care of them.

Genesis 30:30

For you had little before I came

“your herds were small before I worked for you”

and it has increased abundantly

“but now your wealth has greatly increased”

Now when will I provide for my own household also?

“Now when will I take care of my own family?” Jacob uses a question to emphasize that he wants to start providing for his own family. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Now I want to take care of my family!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

30 For you had little before I came, and it has increased abundantly. Yahweh has blessed you wherever I worked. Now when will I provide for my own household also?”

UST

30 You had only a few animals before I came here. But now you have a large number of animals and Yahweh has caused them to increase into an even larger number everywhere I have taken them. But now I need to start taking care of the needs of my own family.”

Genesis 30:31

What will I pay you

“What can I pay you” or “What can I give you.” This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “What can I pay you so that you stay and work for me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If you will do this thing for me

The connecting word “But” can be used at the beginning to show that what Jacob is about to say contrasts with what he just said. Alternate translation: “But if you will do this thing for me” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

this thing

The phrase “this thing” refers to what Jacob will propose in verse 32.

feed your flock and keep it

“feed and take care of your flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

ULT

31 So Laban said, “What will I pay you?” Jacob said, “You will not give me anything. If you will do this thing for me, I will again feed your flock and keep it.”

UST

31 Laban replied, “What do you want me to pay you?” Jacob replied, “I do not want you to pay me anything. But if you will do this one thing for me, I will continue to take care of your flocks and protect them.”

Genesis 30:32

removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every black one among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats

“and remove every sheep with spots, every black sheep, and every goat with spots”

These will be my wages

“This will be the cost of keeping me here”

Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- flock, herd

ULT

³² Let me walk through all your flock today, removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every black one among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats. These will be my wages.

UST

³² Allow me to go and look at all of your flocks today and remove from them all the speckled sheep, all the spotted sheep, and every dark-colored lamb, all the goats that are speckled, and all the goats that are spotted. I want to keep them for myself. They will be my wages.

Genesis 30:33

My integrity will testify for me later on

The word “integrity” means “honesty.” This speaks about integrity as if it were a person who could testify for or against another person. Alternate translation: “And later you will know if I have been honest with you or not” (See: [Personification](#))

Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and black among the sheep, if any are found with me, will be considered to be stolen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you find any goats without spots or any sheep that are not black, you can consider them stolen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

33 My integrity will testify for me later on, when you come to check on my wages. Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and black among the sheep, if any are found with me, will be considered to be stolen.”

UST

33 In that way, in the future, you will be able to know whether I have been honest regarding what you have paid me. If any of my goats have no speckles or spots, and if any of my lambs are not dark-colored, you will know that I have stolen them from you.”

Genesis 30:34

Let it be according to your word

"Let it be as you say" or "We will do what you have said"

ULT

³⁴ Laban said, "Agreed. Let it be according to your word."

UST

³⁴ Laban agreed and said, "Yes, we will do as you have said."

Genesis 30:35

that were striped and spotted

“that had stripes and spots”

that were speckled and spotted

“that had spots”

every one that had white in it

“every goat that had some white in it”

all the black ones among the sheep

“all the black sheep”

gave them into the hand

Here “hand” stands for control or care. Alternate translation: “had his sons take care of them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

³⁵ That day Laban removed the male goats that were striped and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted, every one that had white in it, and all the black ones among the sheep, and gave them into the hand of his sons.

UST

³⁵ But on that same day, Laban removed all the male goats that had black and white stripes on them or were spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled or spotted, all the goats that were partly white, and all the dark-colored lambs. He separated them from the other animals and put his sons in charge of them.

Genesis 30:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd

ULT

³⁶ Laban also put three days' journey between himself and Jacob. So Jacob kept tending the rest of Laban's flocks.

UST

³⁶ Then Laban and his sons took these animals and journeyed for three days from where Jacob was. Jacob continued to take care of the rest of Laban's flocks.

Genesis 30:37

fresh poplar...almond...plane tree

These are all trees with white wood. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

peeled white streaks in them, and made the white inner wood appear that was in the sticks

“peeled off pieces of bark so that the white wood underneath would show”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

³⁷ Jacob took fresh cut branches of fresh poplar, and of the almond and of the plane tree, and peeled white streaks in them, and made the white inner wood appear that was in the sticks.

UST

³⁷ Then Jacob cut some branches of poplar, almond, and plane trees. He peeled strips of bark from the branches. In this way, where he peeled the bark off, the branches were light in color.

Genesis 30:38

the watering troughs

long open containers for holding water for animals to drink

Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

38 Then he set the sticks that he had peeled in front of the flocks, in front of the watering troughs where they came to drink. They conceived when they came to drink.

UST

38 Then he placed the peeled branches in the troughs where they put the water for the animals to drink, so that the flocks saw them when they were drinking water.

Genesis 30:39

The flocks bred

“The animals of the flocks conceived” or “The animals mated”

produced striped, speckled, and spotted young

“gave birth to babies with stripes and spots”

Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

³⁹ The flocks bred in front of the sticks; and the flocks produced striped, speckled, and spotted young.

UST

³⁹ The animals also mated in front of the branches, and later they gave birth to animals that were speckled, or to animals that were spotted, or to animals that had black and white stripes on them.

Genesis 30:40

Jacob separated

It can be made explicit that this happened over several years.
Alternate translation: "During the several years following, Jacob separated" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

face toward

"look toward"

he separated out his flocks for himself alone

"he set his flocks apart"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- face, facial
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- face, facial
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁴⁰ Jacob separated out these lambs, but made the rest of them face toward the striped animals and all the black sheep in the flock of Laban. Then he separated out his flocks for himself alone and did not put them together with Laban's flocks.

UST

⁴⁰ During the several years following, Jacob often separated the female sheep in Laban's flock from the other sheep and goats. When they mated, he made them look toward the animals that had black and white stripes, and toward the dark-colored animals. So they gave birth to animals with similar markings. Then he would separate these animals from Laban's flocks and keep them for his own.

Genesis 30:41

before the eyes of the flock

Here the flock's "eyes" represent the sheep and emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: "so that the flock could see them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

among the sticks

"in front of the sticks"

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Whenever the stronger sheep in the flock were breeding, then Jacob would lay the sticks in the watering troughs before the eyes of the flock, so that they might conceive among the sticks.

UST

⁴¹ In addition, whenever the stronger female sheep were ready to mate, Jacob put some of those peeled branches in the troughs in front of them, so that they would mate in front of the branches.

Genesis 30:42

the feebler animals

“the weaker animals”

So the feebler animals were Laban’s, and the stronger were Jacob’s

“So the weaker offspring belonged to Laban, while the stronger offspring belonged to Jacob.” You can make this even more explicit. Alternate translation: “So the weaker offspring did not have stripes or spots and so belonged to Laban, while the stronger offspring did have stripes or spots and so belonged to Jacob” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁴² But when the feebler animals in the flock came, he did not put the sticks in front of them. So the feebler animals were Laban’s, and the stronger were Jacob’s.

UST

⁴² But when weak animals were ready to mate, he did not put the branches in their troughs. So they gave birth to weak lambs, which remained in Laban’s flock, but the strong ones became part of Jacob’s flock.

Genesis 30:43

The man

"Jacob"

became very prosperous

"greatly prospered" or "became very wealthy"

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁴³ The man became very prosperous. He had large flocks, female servants and male servants, and camels and donkeys.

UST

⁴³ As a result, Jacob became very rich. He owned many large flocks. He also owned many male and female slaves, camels, and donkeys.

Genesis 31

Genesis 31 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's blessing

When Jacob left Paddam Aram, he left very wealthy. Despite his punishment of exile from Canaan, God still blessed Jacob and his family. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Household gods

Although a few scholars believe the possession of the household gods was a sign of inheritance, this seems unlikely. It is probable that Rachel believed these idols would bring them "good luck" and would bring them great blessing. This was sinful because they were to trust in Yahweh, who already promised to bless them. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Irony

Laban's sons complained that Jacob cheated them out of their father's possessions. It was their father who tried to cheat Jacob out of what he promised to give Jacob. Jacob treated his brother Esau in the same way. Jacob cheated Esau out of their father's blessing.

Genesis 31:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

Jacob heard the words of Laban's sons, that they said

"Jacob heard that Laban's sons were saying"

Jacob has taken away all that was our father's

Laban's sons were exaggerating because they were angry. Alternate translation: "Everything that Jacob has taken belonged to our father" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹ Now Jacob heard the words of Laban's sons, that they said, "Jacob has taken away all that was our father's, and it is from our father's possessions that he has gotten all this wealth."

UST

¹ One day, someone told Jacob that Laban's sons were complaining and saying, "Jacob has become very rich by taking everything that belonged to our father."

Genesis 31:2

Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed

These two sentences mean basically the same thing. The second explains the look that Jacob saw on Laban's face. Alternate translation: "Jacob noticed that Laban was no longer pleased with him" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- face, facial

ULT

² Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed.

UST

² Jacob noticed that Laban was not acting friendly toward him as he had done before.

Genesis 31:3

your fathers

"your father Isaac and your grandfather Abraham"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³ Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Return to the land of your fathers and to your relatives, and I will be with you."

UST

³ Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Go back to your country and your relatives, and I will help you there."

Genesis 31:4

Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock

"Jacob sent for Rachel and Leah and told them to meet him out in the field with the flocks"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁴ Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock

UST

⁴ So Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah, telling them to come out to the pastures where his flocks of sheep and goats were.

Genesis 31:5

and said to them

You can start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He said to them" (See: [Sentence Structure](#))

I see your father's attitude toward me has changed

"I have noticed your father is no longer pleased with me"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pray, prayer
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- God
- pray, prayer
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- face, facial

ULT

⁵ and said to them, "I see your father's attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me.

UST

⁵ When they arrived, he said to them, "I see that your father does not act friendly toward me as he did previously. But God, whom my father worshiped, has helped me.

Genesis 31:6

You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father

The word “you” here refers to both Rachel and Leah. It also adds emphasis. Alternate translation: “You yourselves know that I have served your father with all my strength” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- strength, strengthen, strong
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- strength, strengthen, strong
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁶ You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father.

UST

⁶ You two know that I have worked very hard for your father.

Genesis 31:7

has deceived me

“has lied to me” or “has not treated me fairly”

my wages

“what he said he would pay me”

to hurt me

Possible meanings are 1) physical harm or 2) to cause Jacob to suffer in any way.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reward, prize, deserve,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reward, prize, deserve,

ULT

⁷ Your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times, but God has not permitted him to hurt me.

UST

⁷ He has cheated me many times by decreasing my wages. But God has not allowed him to do me physical harm.

Genesis 31:8

The speckled animals

"The animals with spots"

the flock bore

"the flock gave birth to"

The striped

"The animals with stripes"

Translation Words - ULT

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins (2)

Translation Words - UST

- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins (2)

ULT

⁸ If he said, 'The speckled animals will be your wages,' then all the flock bore speckled young. If he said, 'The striped will be your wages,' then the whole flock bore striped young.

UST

⁸ When Laban said, 'The speckled animals are the ones that I will give you to be your wages,' then all the animals gave birth to young ones that were speckled. When he changed his mind and said, 'The ones that have black and white stripes on them will be your wages,' then all the animals gave birth to young ones that were striped.

Genesis 31:9

In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me

“This is how God gave your father’s animals to me”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Translation Words - UST

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

⁹ In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me.

UST

⁹ In that way, God has taken away the livestock that belonged to your father and has given them to me.

Genesis 31:10

General Information:

Jacob continues his story to his wives Leah and Rachel.

Once at the time of breeding season

"During the breeding season"

mating with the flock

Here "flock" represents only the female goats. Alternate translation: "mating with the female goats of the flock" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

were striped, speckled, and spotted

"had stripes, little spots, and big spots"

Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁰ Once at the time of breeding season, I saw in a dream the male goats that were mating with the flock. The male goats were striped, speckled, and spotted.

UST

¹⁰ One time, when the animals were mating, I had a dream. In my dream I looked up and was surprised to see that some of the male goats that were mating with the female goats had black and white stripes on them, some were speckled, and some were spotted.

Genesis 31:11

angel of God

Possible meanings are 1) God himself appeared as a man or 2) one of God's messengers appeared. Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of God," using the normal word that you use for "angel."

I said

"And I answered"

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?" See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [messenger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [messenger](#)

ULT

11 The angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob.' I said, 'Here I am.'

UST

11 In the dream, an angel came from God said to me, 'Jacob!' I replied, 'I am here!'

Genesis 31:12

General Information:

The angel of the Lord continues to talk to Jacob ([Genesis 31:10](#)).

Lift up your eyes

This is a way of saying "Look up." (See: [Idiom](#))

that are breeding with the flock

Here "flock" stands for only the female goats. Alternate translation: "that are breeding with the female goats of the flock" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

are striped, speckled, and spotted

"have stripes and spots"

Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

ULT

¹² He said, 'Lift up your eyes and see all the male goats that are breeding with the flock. They are striped, speckled, and spotted, for I have seen everything that Laban is doing to you.'

UST

¹² He said to me, 'Look up and you will see that all the male goats that are mating have black and white stripes on them, or are speckled or spotted. This is happening because I have seen all that Laban has done to you.'

Genesis 31:13

where you anointed a pillar

Jacob poured oil on the pillar to dedicate it to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the land of your birth

“the land where you were born”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pray, prayer
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- God
- pray, prayer
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

13 I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you made a vow to me. Now rise up and leave this land and return to the land of your birth.”

UST

13 I am the God who appeared to you at Bethel, where you set up a stone, poured olive oil on it and made a solemn promise to me. So now leave this land immediately and return to the land where you were born.”

Genesis 31:14

Rachel and Leah answered and said to him

This does not mean they talked at the same time. It emphasizes they agreed with each other.

Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?

Rachel and Leah use a question to emphasize that there is nothing left for their father to give. Alternate translation: "There is absolutely nothing left for us to inherit from our father!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- temple
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- temple
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

14 Rachel and Leah answered and said to him, "Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?"

UST

14 Rachel and Leah replied to him, "Our father will not give us anything more when he dies."

Genesis 31:15

Are we not treated by him as foreigners?

They use a question to show their anger about how their father treats them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Our father treats us like a foreign women instead of daughters!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

For he has sold us

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "He has sold us for his own gain" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has also completely devoured our money

Laban completely using up the money that he should have given to his daughters is spoken of as if he were a wild beast that ate the money as if it were food. Alternate translation: "he completely used up our money" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [alien, foreign, foreigner](#)

ULT

15 Are we not treated by him as foreigners? For he has sold us and has also completely devoured our money.

UST

15 He treats us as though we were foreigners! The work that you did for him all these years was a payment that you gave him for us, but we will not inherit any of the wealth you produced for him. He has spent it all!

Genesis 31:16

are now ours and our children's

"belongs to us and to our children"

Now then

Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

whatever God has said to you, do it

"do all that God has told you"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God

ULT

16 For all the riches that God has taken away from our father are now ours and our children's. Now then, whatever God has said to you, do it."

UST

16 Certainly all of the wealth that God took away from our father belongs to us and to our children. So do whatever God has told you to do!"

Genesis 31:17

his sons

Jacob took all of his children. It only mentions the sons because they are important as his heirs. Alternate translation: “his children” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

17 Then Jacob arose and placed his sons and his wives upon the camels.

UST

17 Then Jacob put his children and his wives on camels.

Genesis 31:18

He drove all his livestock

“He drove all his cattle.” Here “livestock” is referring to all his domesticated animals.

including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram

“and the other herd of cattle which he took ownership of when he was in Paddan Aram”

Then he set out to go to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan

“He went to the land of Canaan, where his father Isaac lived”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

18 He drove all his livestock ahead of him, along with all his property, including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram. Then he set out to go to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan.

UST

18 He drove all his livestock just ahead of him as they went. He also took along all the other property and goods that he added to his own possessions while living in Paddan Aram. This is how they began their journey back to his father Isaac, who lived in the land of Canaan.

Genesis 31:19

When Laban had gone to shear his sheep

“When Laban had left to cut the wool off of his sheep”

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- walk, walked

ULT

19 When Laban had gone to shear his sheep, Rachel stole her father’s household gods.

UST

19 Now Laban had left to go shear his sheep. In his absence, Rachel stole the small wooden idols that were in her father’s tent.

Genesis 31:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²⁰ Jacob also deceived Laban the Aramean, by not telling him that he was leaving.

UST

²⁰ Furthermore, Jacob deceived Laban the Aramean by not telling him that they were planning to leave.

Genesis 31:21

the River

This refers to the Euphrates River.

headed toward

“traveled toward”

the hill country of Gilead

“the mountains of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Gilead, Gileadite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Gilead, Gileadite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- face, facial

ULT

²¹ So he fled with all that he had and quickly passed over the River, and headed toward the hill country of Gilead.

UST

²¹ So Jacob and his family fled with all their possessions. They crossed the Euphrates River and then started traveling south toward the hill country of the region of Gilead.

Genesis 31:22

On the third day

It was Jewish custom to count the day of departure as day one.
Alternate translation: "Two days after they had left"

Laban was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told Laban" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that Jacob had fled

Only Jacob is mentioned because he is the leader of the family. It can be made explicit that his family went with him. Alternate translation: "that Jacob had fled with his wives and children" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

22 On the third day Laban was told that Jacob had fled.

UST

22 On the third day after they left, someone told Laban that Jacob and his family were gone.

Genesis 31:23

So he took

"So Laban took"

pursued him

"chased after Jacob"

for a seven days' journey

Laban spent seven days walking to catch up to Jacob.

He overtook him

"He caught up to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite

ULT

²³ So he took his relatives with him and pursued him for a seven days' journey. He overtook him in the hill country of Gilead.

UST

²³ So he took some of his relatives with him and started to pursue Jacob. They walked for seven days and they caught up with him in hill country of the region of Gilead.

Genesis 31:24

Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Laban. Alternate translation: “That night God came to Laban in a dream” (See: [Background Information](#))

Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

The phrase “good nor bad” are used together to mean “anything.” Alternate translation: “Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving” (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

²⁴ Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night and said to him, “Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.”

UST

²⁴ Then God appeared to Laban in a dream at night. He said to him, “When you catch up to Jacob, be very careful what you say to him.”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- God
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Genesis 31:25

Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jacob and Laban. Alternate translation: “When Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob had set up camp in the hill country. Then Laban and his relatives also camped in the hill country of Gilead” (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²⁵ Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead. ^[1]

UST

²⁵ The next day, by the time Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob and his household had set up their tents in the hills of Gilead. So Laban and his relatives set up their tents there too.

Genesis 31:26

carried away my daughters like prisoners of war

Laban speaks about Jacob taking his family with him back to the land of Canaan as if Jacob took them as prisoners after a battle and is forcing them to go with him. Laban is exaggerating because he is angry and is trying to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did. (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

26 Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done, that you deceived me and carried away my daughters like prisoners of war?"

UST

26 Then Laban went to Jacob and said to him, "Why have you done this? You have deceived me by carrying away my daughters as though you had captured them in a war!"

Genesis 31:27

flee secretly

“run away in secret”

with celebration

“with joy”

with tambourine and with harps

These instruments stand for music. Alternate translation: “and with music” (See: [Metonymy](#))

tambourine

a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- harp, harpist

Translation Words - UST

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- harp, harpist

ULT

²⁷ Why did you flee secretly and trick me and did not tell me? I would have sent you away with celebration and with songs, with tambourine and with harps.

UST

²⁷ Why did you run away and deceive me? Why did you not tell me that you were going to leave, so that we could have rejoiced and sung while people played music on tambourines and harps before I said ‘goodbye’ to you?

Genesis 31:28

to kiss my grandsons

Here “grandsons” would include all grandchildren whether male or female. Alternate translation: “to kiss my grandchildren” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

Now you have done foolishly

“You have acted foolishly”

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

28 You did not allow me to kiss my grandsons and my daughters good bye. Now you have done foolishly.

UST

28 You did not even let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters goodbye before they left! What you have done was foolish!

Genesis 31:29

It is in my power to do you harm

The word “you” is plural and refers to everyone with Jacob. Alternate translation: “I have enough people with me to harm all of you” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

The words “good nor bad” are used together to mean “anything.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 31:24](#). Alternate translation: “Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

ULT

²⁹ It is in my power to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night and said, ‘Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.’

UST

²⁹ My relatives and I have the power to harm you, but last night the God whom your father worships said to me in a dream, ‘Be very careful what you say to Jacob.’

Genesis 31:30

you have gone away

This “you” is singular and refers to Jacob. (See: [Forms of You](#))

to your father’s house

Here “house” stands for family. Alternate translation: “to be home with your father and the rest of your family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my gods

“my idols”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

30 Now you have gone away because you longed to return to your father’s house. But why did you steal my gods?”

UST

30 Now I know you have left because you want to go back home. But why did you steal my idols?”

Genesis 31:31

Because I was afraid and thought that you would take your daughters from me by force I left secretly

"I left in secret because I was afraid that you would take your daughters from me by force"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

³¹ Jacob answered and said to Laban, "Because I was afraid and thought that you would take your daughters from me by force I left secretly."

UST

³¹ Jacob replied to Laban, "I did not tell you that we were planning to leave, because I was afraid that you would take your daughters away from me by force."

Genesis 31:32

Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “We will kill whoever has stolen your gods” (See: [Litotes](#))

In the presence of our relatives

The word “our” refers to Jacob’s relatives and includes Laban’s relatives. All the relatives will watch to make sure everything is fair and honest. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

identify whatever with me is yours and take it

“look for whatever we have that is yours and take it”

For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them

This changes from the story to background information about Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- God
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- God
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

32 Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live. In the presence of our relatives, identify whatever with me is yours and take it.” For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.

UST

32 But if you find anyone here who has your idols, we will execute that person. While our relatives are watching, search for yourself to see if there is anything that belongs to you that is here with me. If you find anything, you can take it!” When Jacob said that, he did not know that Rachel had already stolen her father’s idols.

Genesis 31:33

the two female servants

This refers to Zilpah and Bilhah.

he did not find them

“he did not find his idols”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

³³ Laban went into Jacob's tent, into Leah's tent, and into the tent of the two female servants, but he did not find them. He went out of Leah's tent and entered into Rachel's tent.

UST

³³ Then Laban went into Jacob's tent, next into Leah's tent, and then into the tent of the two female slaves and searched for the idols, but he did not find them. After he left their tents, he entered Rachel's tent.

Genesis 31:34

Now Rachel...upon them

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Rachel. (See: [Background Information](#))

saddle

a seat placed on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

ULT

34 Now Rachel had taken the household gods, put them in a camel's saddle, and sat upon them. Laban searched the whole tent, but did not find them.

UST

34 But Rachel had previously taken the idols and put them in the saddle of a camel, and she was sitting on the saddle. So when Laban searched all over for them inside Rachel's tent, he did not find them.

Genesis 31:35

my master

Calling someone “my master” is a way of honoring them.

that I cannot stand up before you

“because I am unable to stand up in your presence”

for I am having my period

This refers to the time of the month when a woman bleeds from her womb. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- confirm, confirmation, legal

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- confirm, confirmation, legal

ULT

³⁵ She said to her father, “Do not be angry, my master, that I cannot stand up before you, for I am having my period.” So he searched but did not find his household gods.

UST

³⁵ Rachel said to her father, “Do not be angry with me, sir, but I cannot stand up in your presence to show respect for you, because I am having my menstrual period.” So even after searching more, Laban, he did not find his idols.

Genesis 31:36

He said to him

"Jacob said to Laban"

What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?

The phrases "What is my offense" and "What is my sin" mean basically the same thing. Jacob is asking Laban to tell him what he did wrong. Alternate translation: "What have I done wrong that you should pursue me like this?" (See: [Parallelism](#))

hotly pursued after me

Here the word "hotly" means Laban urgently chased Jacob intending to capture him. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [rebuke](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [rebuke](#)

ULT

³⁶ Jacob was angry and argued with Laban. He said to him, "What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?"

UST

³⁶ Then Jacob became angry. He said to Laban, "What crime did I commit? For what sin have you pursued me?"

Genesis 31:37

What have you found of all your household goods?

"What have you found that belongs to you?"

Set them here before our relatives

Here the word "our" refers to Jacob's relatives and includes Laban's relatives. Alternate translation: "Lay anything you have found in front of our relatives" (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

they may judge between us two

Here "two of us" refers to Jacob and Laban. The phrase "to judge between" means to decide which person is right in a dispute. Alternate translation: "they may judge between the two of us" (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- house

ULT

37 For you have searched all my possessions. What have you found of all your household goods? Set them here before our relatives, so that they may judge between us two.

UST

37 Now you have searched through all my possessions, and you have found nothing that belongs to you! If you have found anything, put it here in front of my relatives and your relatives, so that they can decide who is right, you or me!

Genesis 31:38

General Information:

Jacob continues to speak to Laban.

twenty years

"20 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

ewes

female sheep

have not miscarried

This means they have not had a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly with the lamb or kid born dead.

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [devour](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [devour](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

³⁸ For twenty years I have been with you. Your ewes and your female goats have not miscarried, nor have I eaten any rams from your flocks.

UST

³⁸ I was with you for twenty years. In all that time, your sheep and goats have not miscarried. I have not killed and eaten any rams from your flocks.

Genesis 31:39

What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When a wild animal killed one of your animals I did not bring it to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Instead, I bore the loss of it

For Jacob to count Laban’s dead animals as a loss from his own flock is spoken of as if it was a burden he would bear on his shoulders. Alternate translation: “Instead of counting it a loss from your flock, I counted it as a loss from my flock” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

39 What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you. Instead, I bore the loss of it. You always made me pay for every missing animal, whether stolen by day or stolen by night.

UST

39 When one of your animals was attacked and mauled by a wild animal, I did not bring it to you. I replaced the dead animal with a living one of my own animals. Whenever one of your animals was stolen, during the day or during the night, you demanded that I replace it with one of my own animals.

Genesis 31:40**There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night**

Suffering in the hot and cold temperatures is spoken of as if the temperatures were animals that were eating Jacob. Alternate translation: "I stayed with your flocks even during hottest part of the day and the coldest part of the night" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- devour

Translation Words - UST

- devour

ULT

⁴⁰ There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night; and I went without sleep.

UST

⁴⁰ I suffered from the heat during the day and from the cold at night. I was often not even able to sleep!

Genesis 31:41

General Information:

Jacob continues to speak to Laban.

These twenty years

"These last 20 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

fourteen years

"14 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

changed my wages ten times

"changed what he said he would pay me ten times." See how you translated "my wages" in [Genesis 31:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [reward, prize, deserve,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [reward, prize, deserve,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴¹ These twenty years I have been in your household. I worked for you fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flock. You have changed my wages ten times.

UST

⁴¹ I lived in your household for twenty years. I worked for you for fourteen years to marry your two daughters, and for six more years to buy some of your sheep and goats. During that time, you changed and reduced my wages ten times.

Genesis 31:42

Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me

Jacob is referring to the same God not to three different gods.
Alternate translation: "If the God of Abraham and Isaac, my father, had not been with me"

the God of my father

Here the word "father" refers to his parent, Isaac.

the one Isaac fears

Here the word "fears" refers to the "fear of Yahweh," which means to deeply respect him and show that respect by obeying him.

empty-handed

This stands for having nothing. Alternate translation: "with absolutely nothing" (See: [Metonymy](#))

God has seen my oppression and how hard I worked

The abstract noun "oppression" can be stated as "oppressed." Alternate translation: "God has seen how hard I worked and how you oppressed me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

⁴² Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me, surely now you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my oppression and how hard I worked, and he rebuked you last night."

UST

⁴² If God, the one whom my grandfather Abraham worshiped and before whom my father Isaac trembled in fear, had not been with me and helped me, you would have sent me away with nothing in my hands! But God saw how much I was suffering and how hard I was working, so last night he told you that what you have done to me was wrong."

Genesis 31:43

But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?

Laban uses a question to emphasize that there is nothing he can do. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But, there is nothing I can do to bring my daughters and grandchildren back with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- flock, herd

ULT

⁴³ Laban answered and said to Jacob, "The daughters are my daughters, the grandchildren are my grandchildren, and the flocks are my flocks. All that you see is mine. But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?"

UST

⁴³ Laban replied, "These two women are my daughters, and their children are my grandchildren, and the animals are my animals. Everything you see here is mine!"

Genesis 31:44

let it be for a witness

Here the word “witness” does not refer to a person, but it is used figuratively and refers to the covenant that Jacob and Laban are making. The covenant is spoken of as if it were a person who is there when they agree to act peacefully to one another. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

44 So now, let us make a covenant, you and I, and let it be for a witness between you and me.”

UST

44 I cannot do anything in order to keep them, so we should make a peace agreement, you and I. It will serve as a witness between you and me.”

Genesis 31:45

pillar

This means that a large stone was simply set up on its end to mark the place where this important event happened.

Translation Words - ULT

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

⁴⁵ So Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar.

UST

⁴⁵ So Jacob took a large stone and set it on its end.

Genesis 31:46

made a pile

“stacked them on top of each other”

Then they ate there by the pile

Eating a meal together was a part of making the covenant with one another. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- devour
- glean, gleanings

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- devour
- glean, gleanings

ULT

⁴⁶ Jacob said to his relatives, “Gather stones.” So they took stones and made a pile. Then they ate there by the pile.

UST

⁴⁶ Then Jacob said to his relatives, “Gather some stones.” So they gathered some rocks and put them in a heap, and they ate some food there near the heap.

Genesis 31:47

Jegar Saha Dutha

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Jegar Saha Dutha means 'heap of witness' in Laban's language." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Galeed

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Galeed means 'heap of witness' in Jacob's language. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ Laban called it Jegar Saha Dutha, but Jacob called it Galeed.

UST

⁴⁷ Laban gave the heap the Aramaic name Jegar Saha Dutha, but Jacob gave the heap the Hebrew name Galeed.

Genesis 31:48

This pile is a witness between me and you

The stones do not actually bear witness as a person. Alternate translation: "This pile will be a reminder between me and you" (See: [Personification](#))

Galeed

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Galeed means 'heap of witness' in Jacob's language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 31:47](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))"

Translation Words - ULT

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Laban said, "This pile is a witness between me and you today." Therefore its name was called Galeed.

UST

⁴⁸ Laban said to Jacob, "This pile of rocks we have put here today will help us to remember our agreement." That is why Jacob called it Galeed.

Genesis 31:49

Mizpah

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Mizpah means 'watchtower.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

when we are out of sight one from another

Here "out of sight" stands for no longer being in each other's presence. Alternate translation: "when we are no longer with each other" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ It is also called Mizpah, because Laban said, "May Yahweh watch between you and me, when we are out of sight one from another."

UST

⁴⁹ They also named the place Mizpah, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "watchtower," because Laban said, "We will ask Yahweh to watch you and me while we are separated from each other, so that we do not try to harm each other."

Genesis 31:50

although no one else is with us

Here “us” refers to Laban and Jacob. Alternate translation: “even if no one else is there to see us”

see

“look” or “remember” or “pay attention to what i am about to tell you”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Translation Words - UST

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

ULT

50 If you mistreat my daughters, or if you take any wives besides my daughters, although no one else is with us, see, God is witness between you and me.”

UST

50 If you mistreat my daughters, or if you take other women to be your wives, even if no one tells me about it, do not forget that God sees what you and I are doing!”

Genesis 31:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵¹ Laban said to Jacob, “Look at this pile, and look at the pillar, which I have set between you and me.

UST

⁵¹ Laban also said to Jacob, “You see this large stone and this pile of rocks that we have set up to be between us.

Genesis 31:52

This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness

These piles of stones were to act as a remembrance and a boundary marker for Jacob and Laban regarding their peace agreement. They are spoken of as if they are human witnesses. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)

ULT

⁵² This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness, that I will not pass beyond this pile to you, and that you will not pass beyond this pile and this pillar to me, to do harm.

UST

⁵² Both this pile of rocks and this large stone will remind us, that I will not go past these rocks to harm you and you will not go past these rocks to harm me.

Genesis 31:53

May the God of Abraham, and the god of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us

Abraham is Jacob's grandfather. Nahor is Laban's grandfather. The father of Abraham and Nahor is Terah. Not all of them worshipped Yahweh.

the Fear of his father Isaac

Here the word "Fear" refers to Yahweh, who Isaac deeply respected and showed that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

⁵³ May the God of Abraham, and the god of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us." Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac.

UST

⁵³ May the God whom Abraham worshiped, and the god that Nahor worshiped, and the gods their ancestor Terah worshiped punish either one of us, if one of us harms the other." Jacob solemnly promised by the God whom his father Isaac feared to do what they said in their peace agreement.

Genesis 31:54

called his relatives to eat a meal

Eating a meal together was part of making the covenant with one another. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- bread
- bread
- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- bread
- bread
- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁵⁴ Jacob offered a sacrifice on the mountain and called his relatives to eat a meal. They ate and spent the entire night on the mountain.

UST

⁵⁴ He offered a sacrifice to God there in the hill country, and he invited his relatives to eat with him. After they had eaten, they slept there that night.

Genesis 31:55

Early in the morning...returned home

Verse 55 is the first verse of chapter 32 in the original Hebrew text, but the last verse of chapter 31 in most modern Bibles. We suggest that you follow the numbering of Bibles in your national language.

blessed

This means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

55 Early in the morning Laban got up, kissed his grandsons and his daughters and blessed them. Then Laban left and returned home.

31:25 ^[1] Some modern versions have *Laban also camped in the hill country of Gilead* .

UST

55 The next morning Laban kissed his grandchildren and his daughters, and he asked God to bless them. Then Laban and his men left and returned home.

Genesis 32

Genesis 32 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob does not trust Yahweh

Jacob does not trust in Yahweh. Instead, he fears that his brother Esau could kill him and his family. He should have known that Yahweh would continue to bless him and protect his family. He should have trusted in Yahweh's covenant faithfulness. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#))

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person's life. The return of Jacob to Canaan was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"A man wrestled with him"

Scholars are divided over the identity of the person Jacob wrestled with. It was probably an angel, but some believe he wrestled with Jesus before he came to earth. The translator will probably have difficulty trying to keep ambiguity in identifying this individual because the word "man" usually indicates a normal, living person. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 32:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- messenger
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- God
- messenger
- walk, walked

ULT

¹ Jacob also went on his way, and the angels of God met him.

UST

¹ As Jacob and his family continued traveling, some angels came from God and met him.

Genesis 32:2

Mahanaim

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Mahanaim means 'two camps.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

² When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's camp," so he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

UST

² When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's army camp!" So he named that place Mahanaim.

Genesis 32:3

Seir

This is a mountainous area in the region of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- messenger
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³ Jacob sent messengers on ahead of him to his brother Esau in the land of Seir, in the region of Edom.

UST

³ Jacob told some men to go ahead of him to his older brother Esau, who was living in Seir, that is, the land of Edom.

Genesis 32:4

This is what you will say to my master Esau: This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have been...have delayed my return until now.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "This is what I want you to tell my master Esau. Tell him that I have been...have delayed my return until now." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

my master Esau

Jacob is using polite language and refers to his brother as "my master."

your servant Jacob

Jacob is using polite language and refers to himself as "your servant."

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴ He commanded them, saying, "This is what you will say to my master Esau: This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have been staying with Laban, and have delayed my return until now.'

UST

⁴ He told them, "This is what I want you to say to Esau: 'I, Jacob, am your servant and you are my master. I have been living with our uncle Laban, and I have stayed there until now.'

Genesis 32:5

I have oxen...in your eyes.

This continues the quotation within a quotation that begins with the words "I have been" in verse 4. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. "This is what I want you to tell my master Esau. Tell him that I have been...Tell him that I have oxen...in his eyes." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

that I may find favor in your eyes

When a person finds favor in the eyes of another, the second person approves of the first person. Here "eyes" are a metonym for the person seeing something, and seeing a person is a metaphor for deciding whether what that person sees is good or bad. Alternate translation: "that you may approve of me" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁵ I have oxen, donkeys, and flocks, male servants, and female servants. I have sent this message to my master, so that I may find favor in your eyes."

UST

⁵ I now own many cattle, donkeys, sheep, goats, and male and female slaves. Now I am sending this message to you, sir, hoping that you will be friendly toward me when I arrive."

Genesis 32:6

four hundred men

"400 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- walk, walked
- return

ULT

⁶ The messengers returned to Jacob and said, "We went to your brother Esau. He is coming to meet you, and four hundred men are with him."

UST

⁶ The messengers went and gave that message to Esau. When they returned to Jacob, they said, "We went to your older brother Esau. He is coming to you, and four hundred men are coming with him."

Genesis 32:7

afraid

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

upset

distressed, troubled

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- people, people group,
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- people, people group,
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

⁷ Then Jacob was very afraid and upset. So he divided the people who were with him into two camps, and also the flocks, the herds, and the camels.

UST

⁷ Jacob was very afraid and worried. So he divided the people who were with him into two groups. He also divided the sheep and goats, the cattle, and the camels, into two groups.

Genesis 32:8

to one camp and attacks it, then the camp that is left will escape

Here “camp” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “to attack the people in one camp, then the people in the other camp will escape” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)

ULT

⁸ He said, “If Esau comes to one camp and attacks it, then the camp that is left will escape.”

UST

⁸ He was thinking, “If Esau and his men come and attack us, perhaps one of the groups will be left and will be able to escape.”

Genesis 32:9

God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh

This does not refer to different gods, but to the one God they all worship. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, who is God of my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Yahweh, who said to me, ‘Return to your country and to your kindred, and I will prosper you,’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, you who said that I should return to my country and to my kindred, and that you would prosper me,” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to your kindred

“to your family”

I will prosper you

“I will do good for you” or “I will treat you well”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Abraham, Abram
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)

ULT

⁹ Jacob said, “God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh, who said to me, ‘Return to your country and to your kindred, and I will prosper you,’

UST

⁹ Then Jacob prayed, “O Yahweh God, whom my grandfather Abraham worshiped and my father Isaac worships, you said to me, ‘Go back to your own land and to your relatives, and I will cause good things to happen to you.’

Genesis 32:10

I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant

The abstract nouns “faithfulness” and “trustworthiness” can be stated as “faithful” and “loyal.” Alternate translation: “I do not deserve for you to remain faithful to your covenant or for you to be loyal to me, your servant” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your servant

This is a polite way of saying “me.”

now I have become two camps

Here the phrase “I have become” is an idiom meaning what he now possesses. Alternate translation: “and now I have enough people, flocks, and possessions with me to make two camps” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹⁰ I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant. For with only my staff I passed over this Jordan, and now I have become two camps.

UST

¹⁰ I am not worthy for you to have kept your covenant in so many faithful and trustworthy ways with me, your servant. I had only this walking stick with me when I crossed the Jordan River on my way to Haran, but now I am so wealthy that there are two large groups of my family and possessions.

Genesis 32:11

rescue me

“save me”

from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau

Here the word “hand” refers to power. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second clarifies that the brother whom Jacob intended was Esau. Alternate translation: “from the power of my brother, Esau” or “from my brother, Esau” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

I am afraid of him, that he will

“I am afraid that he will”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- pray, prayer
- Esau
- hand
- hand

ULT

11 Please rescue me from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, for I am afraid of him, that he will come and attack me and the mothers with the children.

UST

11 So now I pray that you will rescue me from the power of my brother Esau, because I am afraid that he and his men will come and attack and kill me and the children and their mothers.

Genesis 32:12

But you said, 'I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants...number.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "But you said that you would certainly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants... number" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

make you prosper

"do good to you" or "treat you well"

I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea

This speaks about the very large number of Jacob's descendants as if their number will be like the grains of sand on the seashore. (See: [Simile](#))

which cannot be numbered for their number

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which no one can count because of their number" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- appoint, appointed
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- appoint, appointed
- seed, semen

ULT

¹² But you said, 'I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for their number.'"

UST

¹² But do not forget that you have said, 'I will certainly enable you to prosper, and I will cause your descendants to be as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore, which are so many that no one can count them.'"

Genesis 32:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- hand
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- hand
- grain offering

ULT

¹³ Jacob stayed there that night. He took some of what he had with him as a gift for Esau, his brother:

UST

¹³ Jacob slept in that place that night. The next morning he selected some animals to give to his brother Esau.

Genesis 32:14

two hundred

“200” (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty

“20” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

¹⁴ two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams,

UST

¹⁴ He selected two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred female sheep and twenty male sheep,

Genesis 32:15

thirty...forty...ten

“30...40...10” (See: [Numbers](#))

their colts

“their young”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [camel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [camel](#)

ULT

¹⁵ thirty milking camels and their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.

UST

¹⁵ thirty female camels and their offspring, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.

Genesis 32:16

These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself

Here “into the hand” means to give control over them. Alternate translation: “He divided them into small herds, and gave each of his servants control over one herd” (See: [Idiom](#))

put a space between each of the herds

“let each herd travel at a distance from the other herds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#) (2)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#) (2)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹⁶ These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself. He said to his servants, “Go on ahead of me and put a space between each of the herds.”

UST

¹⁶ He divided them into small herds, and put each herd into the care of one of his servants. He said to his servants, “Go ahead of me, one group at a time, and keep some space between each herd.”

Genesis 32:17

He instructed

"He commanded"

asks you...that are in front of you?

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "asks you who your master is, where you are going, and who owns these animals that are ahead of you" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

To whom do you belong?

"Who is your master?"

Whose animals are these that are in front of you?

"Who owns these animals that are in front of you?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

17 He instructed the first servant, saying, "When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, saying, 'To whom do you belong? Where are you going? Whose animals are these that are in front of you?'"

UST

17 He said to the servant who was going with the first group, "When my brother Esau meets you, he will ask you, 'To whom do you belong, and where are you going, and to whom do these animals in front of you belong?'"

Genesis 32:18

Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then I want you to tell him that all of these things belong to Jacob, his servant, and he is giving them to his master, Esau. And tell him that Jacob is on the way to meet him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

your servant Jacob's

Jacob is referring to himself in a polite way as Esau's servant.

to my master Esau

Jacob is referring to Esau in a polite way as his master.

coming after us

Here "us" refers to the servant speaking and the other servants bringing herds to Esau. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grain offering](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

18 Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'

UST

18 Tell him, 'They belong to your servant Jacob. He has sent them to you as a gift, sir. And he is coming behind us.'

Genesis 32:19

gave instructions to the second group

“commanded the second group”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Esau](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

19 Jacob also gave instructions to the second group, the third, and all the men who followed the herds. He said, “You will say the same thing to Esau when you meet him.

UST

19 He also said the same thing to the servants who were taking care of the second and third groups, and to the other herdsmen. He said to them, “When you meet Esau, I want you to say to him the same thing that I told the first servant.

Genesis 32:20

You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob

Possible meanings are 1) "You will say also, 'Your servant Jacob'" or 2) "You will say, 'Also, Your servant Jacob.'"

I will appease him

"I will calm him down" or "I will make his anger go away"

he will receive me

"he will welcome me kindly"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- face, facial
- face, facial
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

20 You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob is coming after us.'" For he thought, "I will appease him with the gifts that I am sending ahead of me. Then later, when I will see him, perhaps he will receive me."

UST

20 Also be sure to say 'Your servant Jacob is coming behind us.'" Jacob told them to say that because he was thinking, "Perhaps these gifts that I am sending ahead of me will cause him to act peacefully toward me. Later, when I see him, perhaps he will act kindly toward me."

Genesis 32:21

So the gifts went on ahead of him

Here “gifts” stands for the servants taking the gifts. (See: [Metonymy](#))

He himself stayed

Here “himself” emphasizes that Jacob did not go with the servants. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [grain offering](#)

ULT

21 So the gifts went on ahead of him. He himself stayed that night in the camp.

UST

21 So the men taking the gifts went ahead, but Jacob himself stayed in the camp that night.

Genesis 32:22

his two women servants

"his two servant wives." This means Zilpah and Bilhah.

ford

a shallow place in a river that is easy to cross

Jabbok

This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²² Jacob got up during the night, and he took his two wives, his two women servants, and his eleven sons. He sent them across the ford of the Jabbok.

UST

²² Some time during that night, Jacob got up and took his two wives, his two female slaves, and his eleven sons, and he sent them across the ford at the Jabbok River.

Genesis 32:23

all his possessions

“all that he had”

Translation Words - ULT

- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

ULT

²³ In this way he sent them across the stream along with all his possessions.

UST

²³ After he sent all his people across the Jabbok River, then he also sent over everything he owned.

Genesis 32:24

until daybreak

“until dawn”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁴ Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until daybreak.

UST

²⁴ So Jacob was left there alone. But a man came and wrestled with him until dawn.

Genesis 32:25

Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The man injured Jacob's hip as he wrestled with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hip

the place where the upper leg bone connects to the hip

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²⁵ When the man saw that he could not defeat him, he struck Jacob's hip. Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him.

UST

²⁵ When the man realized that he was not winning against Jacob, he struck Jacob's hip and caused the thigh bone to pull away from the hip socket.

Genesis 32:26

for the dawn is breaking

"the sun will rise soon"

bless

Here "bless" means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

I will not let you go unless you bless me

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Absolutely not! You must bless me first, then I will let you go" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)

ULT

²⁶ The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will not let you go unless you bless me."

UST

²⁶ Then the man said, "Let me go, because it will soon be daylight." Jacob replied, "No, if you will not bless me, I will not let you go!"

Genesis 32:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

²⁷ The man said to him, "What is your name?" Jacob said, "Jacob."

UST

²⁷ The man said to him, "What is your name?" He replied, "Jacob."

Genesis 32:28

Israel

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Israel means 'He struggles with God.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with men

Here "men" means "people" in general.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

28 The man said, "Your name will no longer be called Jacob, but Israel. For you have struggled with God and with men and have prevailed."

UST

28 The man said, "Your name will no longer be Jacob. Your name will be Israel, which means 'he struggles with God,' because you have struggled with God and with people, and you have won."

Genesis 32:29

He said, "Why is it that you ask my name?"

"He said, 'Why would you ask about my name?'" This rhetorical question was meant to shock, rebuke and cause Jacob to ponder over what just happened between him and the other man he just wrestled with. Alternate translation: "Do not ask me for my name!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁹ Jacob asked him, "Please tell me your name." He said, "Why is it that you ask my name?" Then he blessed him there.

UST

²⁹ Jacob said, "Now, please tell me your name!" The man replied, "Why do you ask me what my name is?" But he blessed Jacob there.

Genesis 32:30

Peniel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Peniel means 'the face of God.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

face to face

Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.

and my life is delivered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "yet he spared my life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- face, facial
- face, facial
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- face, facial
- face, facial
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

³⁰ Jacob called the name of the place Peniel for he said, "I have seen God face to face, and my life is delivered."

UST

³⁰ So Jacob named the place Peniel, which means "God's face," saying "I looked directly at God, but I did not die because of doing that."

Genesis 32:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

31 The sun rose on Jacob as he passed Peniel. He was limping because of his hip.

UST

31 The sun was rising as Jacob left Peniel, and he was limping because of what had happened to his hip.

Genesis 32:32

That is why to this day

This marks a change from the story to background information about the descendants of Israel. (See: [Background Information](#))

to this day

This means to the day that the author was writing this.

ligaments of the hip

This refers to the muscle that connects the thigh bone to the thigh socket.

hip joint

“thigh socket”

while dislocating

“while striking”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

³² That is why to this day the people of Israel do not eat the ligaments of the hip which are at the hip joint, because the man injured those ligaments while dislocating Jacob's hip.

UST

³² The muscle on his hip joint had been injured. So to this present time, because of what happened to Jacob, the Israelite people do not eat the muscle that is attached to the socket of the hips of animals.

Genesis 33

Genesis 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob's fear

Jacob feared his brother. He showed Esau great respect and sought to protect his family from Esau's power. He did not fear and trust Yahweh. (See: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Favoritism

Jacob showed favoritism towards Rachel and Joseph. He arranged the family according to those he loved the most. Rachel and Joseph were the most protected from a potential attack by Esau. He would have rather had everyone else die, in order to spare their lives. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 33:1

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to a surprising new part of the story.

four hundred men

“400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jacob divided the children...female servants

This does not mean Jacob divided the children evenly so that each woman had the same amount of children with her. Jacob divided the children so that each one went with his or her mother. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

female servants

“servant wives.” This refers to Bilhah and Zilpah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹ Jacob looked up and, behold, Esau was coming, and with him were four hundred men. Jacob divided the children among Leah, Rachel, and the two female servants.

UST

¹ Then Jacob joined the rest of his family. Later that day Jacob looked up and saw Esau coming, and there were four hundred men with him. Jacob was worried because of that, so he separated the children. He put Leah's children with Leah, Rachel's children with Rachel, and the two female slaves' children with their mothers.

Genesis 33:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

² Then he put the female servants and their children in front, followed by Leah and her children, and followed by Rachel and Joseph last of all.

UST

² He put the two female slaves and their children in front. He put Leah and her children next. He put Rachel and Joseph at the rear.

Genesis 33:3

He himself went on ahead of them

Here “himself” emphasizes that Jacob went alone in front of the others. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

He bowed

Here the word “bow” means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- prostrate, worship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- prostrate, worship
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

³ He himself went on ahead of them. He bowed toward the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother.

UST

³ He himself went ahead of them all, and as he continued to approach his older brother, he prostrated himself with his face on the ground seven times.

Genesis 33:4

meet him

"meet Jacob"

embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "Esau put his arms around Jacob, hugged him, and kissed him"

Then they wept

This can be translated more explicitly. Alternate translation: "Then Esau and Jacob cried because they were happy to see each other again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

ULT

⁴ Esau ran to meet him, embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him. Then they wept.

UST

⁴ But Esau ran to Jacob. He hugged him, put his arms around his neck, and kissed him on the cheek. And they both cried.

Genesis 33:5

he saw the women and the children

"he saw the women and children who were with Jacob"

The children whom God has graciously given your servant

The phrase "your servant" is a polite way for Jacob to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "These are the children God has kindly given me, your servant" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁵ When Esau looked up, he saw the women and the children. He said, "Who are these people with you?" Jacob said, "The children whom God has graciously given your servant."

UST

⁵ Then Esau looked up and saw the women and the children. He asked, "Who are these people who are with you?" Jacob replied, "These are the wives and children that God has graciously given to me."

Genesis 33:6

female servants

“servant wives.” This refers to Bilhah and Zilpah.

bowed down

This is a sign of humility and respect before another person. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁶ Then the female servants came forward with their children, and they bowed down.

UST

⁶ Then the female slaves and their children came near and bowed in front of Esau.

Genesis 33:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- prostrate, worship
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- prostrate, worship
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁷ Next Leah also and her children came forward and bowed down. Finally Joseph and Rachel came forward and bowed down.

UST

⁷ Then Leah and her children came and bowed down. Finally Joseph and Rachel came near and bowed down.

Genesis 33:8

What do you mean by all these groups that I met?

The phrase “all these groups” refers to the groups of servants that Jacob sent to give gifts to Esau. Alternate translation: “Why did you send all of those different groups to meet me?”

To find favor in the sight of my master

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “So that you, my master, would be pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

my master

The phrase “my master” is a polite way of referring to Esau. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)

ULT

⁸ Esau said, “What do you mean by all these groups that I met?” Jacob said, “To find favor in the sight of my master.”

UST

⁸ Esau asked, “What is the meaning of all the animals that I saw?” Jacob replied, “I am giving them to you, sir, so that you will feel good toward me.”

Genesis 33:9

I have enough

The word “animals” or “property” is understood. Alternate translation: “I have enough animals” or “I have enough property” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

⁹ Esau said, “I have enough, my brother. Keep what you have for yourself.”

UST

⁹ But Esau replied, “My younger brother, I have enough animals! Keep for yourself the animals that you have!”

Genesis 33:10

if I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if you are pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

my gift from my hand

Here “hand” refers to Jacob. Alternate translation: “this gift that I am giving to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

my hand, for indeed

This can be translated as a new sentence: “my hand. For certainly”

I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God

The meaning of this simile is unclear. Possible meanings are 1) Jacob is happy that Esau has forgiven him like God has forgiven him or 2) Jacob is amazed to see his brother again like he was amazed to see God or 3) Jacob is humbled to be in Esau's presence like he was humbled to be in God's presence. (See: [Simile](#))

I have seen your face

Here “face” stands for Esau. It may be best to translate as “face” because of the importance of the word “face” here with “face of God” and “face to face” in [Genesis 32:30](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- God
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- hand
- face, facial
- face, facial
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- God
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- hand
- face, facial
- face, facial
- grain offering

ULT

¹⁰ Jacob said, “No, please, if I have found favor in your eyes, then accept my gift from my hand, for indeed, I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God, and you have accepted me.

UST

¹⁰ But Jacob said, “No, please, if you feel good toward me, accept these gifts from me. You have greeted me very kindly. Seeing you smile at me assures me that you have forgiven me. It is like seeing the face of God!

Genesis 33:11

that was brought to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that my servants brought to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

God has dealt graciously with me

“God has treated me very well” or “God has blessed me very much”

Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it

It was customary to refuse a gift first, but then to accept the gift before the giver was offended.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

11 Please accept my gift that was brought to you, because God has dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough.” Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it.

UST

11 Please accept these gifts that I have brought to you, because God has acted kindly toward me, and I still have plenty of animals!” Jacob kept on urging him to accept the animals, and finally Esau accepted them.

Genesis 33:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² Then Esau said, "Let us be on our way. I will go before you."

UST

¹² Then Esau said, "Let us continue traveling together, and I will lead you on the road."

Genesis 33:13

My master knows

This is a polite and formal way of referring to Esau. Alternate translation: “You, my master, know” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the children are young

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation: “the children are too young to travel fast” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If they are driven hard even one day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If we force them to go too fast even for one day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- children, child, offspring
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- children, child, offspring
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

13 Jacob said to him, “My master knows that the children are young, and that the sheep and the cattle are nursing their young. If they are driven hard even one day, all the animals will die.

UST

13 Jacob said, “You know, sir, that the children are weak, and that I must take care of the female sheep and cows that are sucking their mother’s milk. If I force them to walk fast for a long distance in just one day, the animals will all die.

Genesis 33:14

Please let my master go on ahead of his servant

This is a polite and formal way of Jacob referring to himself. Alternate translation: "My lord, I am your servant. Please go ahead of me" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

at the pace of the livestock that are before me

"at the speed the animals I am looking after can go"

Seir

This is a mountainous area in the region of Edom. See how you translated this in [Genesis 32:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir \(2\)](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir \(2\)](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

14 Please let my master go on ahead of his servant. I will travel more slowly, at the pace of the livestock that are before me, and at the pace of the children, until I come to my master in Seir."

UST

14 You go ahead of me. I will lead the animals slowly, but I will walk as fast as the children and animals can walk. I will catch up with you in Seir."

Genesis 33:15

Why do that?

Jacob uses a question to emphasize that Esau does not need to leave men. Alternate translation: “Do not do that!” or “You do not need to do that!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my lord

This is a polite and formal way of referring to Esau. Alternate translation: “you, my lord” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Esau
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Esau
- people, people group,

ULT

15 Esau said, “Let me leave with you some of my men who are with me.” But Jacob said, “Why do that? Let me find favor in the sight of my lord.”

UST

15 Esau said, “Then allow me to leave with you some of the men who came with me, to protect you.” But Jacob replied, “Why do that? The only thing that I want is for you to feel good toward me.”

Genesis 33:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Esau
- return

ULT

16 So Esau that day started on his way back to Seir.

UST

16 So on that day Esau left to return to Seir.

Genesis 33:17

Succoth

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name Succoth means 'shelters.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

built himself a house

It is implied that the house is also for his family. Alternate translation: "built a house for himself and his family" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for his livestock

"for the animals he looked after"

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 Jacob traveled to Succoth, built himself a house, and made shelters for his livestock. Therefore the name of the place is called Succoth.

UST

17 But instead of going to Seir, Jacob and his family went to a place called Succoth. There he built a house for himself and his family, and built shelters for his livestock. That is the reason they named the place Succoth, which means "shelters."

Genesis 33:18

General Information:

This starts a new part of the story. The author describes what Jacob did after he rested in Succoth.

When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

"After Jacob left Paddan Aram"

When Jacob...he arrived...He camped

This only mentions Jacob because he is the leader of the family. It is implied that his family was with him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He camped near

"He set up his camp near"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

¹⁸ When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, he arrived safely at the city of Shechem, which is in the land of Canaan. He camped near the city.

UST

¹⁸ This is how Jacob and his family left Paddan Aram and traveled safely to the land of Canaan. There they set up their tents in a field near the city of Shechem.

Genesis 33:19

piece of ground

“piece of land”

Hamor

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shechem's father

Shechem is the name of a city and the name of a man.

a hundred

“100” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand

ULT

19 Then he bought the piece of ground where he had pitched his tent from the sons of Hamor, Shechem's father, for a hundred pieces of silver.

UST

19 One of the leaders of the people in that area was named Hamor. Hamor had several sons. Jacob paid the sons of Hamor one hundred pieces of silver for the piece of ground on which they set up their tents.

Genesis 33:20

El Elohe Israel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Elohe Israel means 'God, the God of Israel.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

20 There he set up an altar and called it El Elohe Israel.

UST

20 He built a stone altar there and named it El Elohe Israel, which means "God, the God of Israel."

Genesis 34

Genesis 34 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel

Jacob's name was changed to Israel. It is his descendants who inherited the promised blessings given to him and to Isaac and Abraham. This is the first time his descendants are collectively referred to as the people group Israel. The people group Israel is identified through the covenant of circumcision. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#), [promise](#), [promised](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [covenant](#) and [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

Jacob's reacted to the rape of Dinah with indifference. This is possibly because she was not a daughter of Rachel. His reaction was both unwise and improper. This action brought shame on the whole family. Therefore, Jacob's sons corrected this wrong and plotted against Hamor and Shechem.

Shechem raped Dinah, but then he said he loved her. By raping her, he ensured that no one else would want to marry her. This is not love. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#) and [love](#), [beloved](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 34:1

Now

Here this word is used to mark a new part of the story.

Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 30:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

¹ Now Dinah, Leah's daughter whom she bore to Jacob, went out to meet the young women of the land.

UST

¹ One day Dinah, the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went to visit some of the women in that area.

Genesis 34:2

the Hivite

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated the similar word “Hivites” in [Genesis 10:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the prince of the land

This is referring to Hamor not Shechem. Also, “prince” here does not mean son of a king. It means Hamor was the leader of the people in that area.

He took her and lay with her

Possible meanings are 1) “took” and “lay with” are two separate actions. Alternate translation: “he grabbed her and had sexual relations with her” or 2) “took” and “lay with” are a hendiadys, two words used to describe one action, Alternate translation: “raped her” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

lay with her

This is a polite way of speaking of sexual relations. You may have to use other words in your translation. Alternate translation: “had sexual relations with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

² Shechem son of Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the land, saw her. He took her and lay with her, and he humiliated her.

UST

² Shechem was one of the sons of Hamor, and he was descended from the people group of the Hivites. When he saw her, he took her and forced her to have sex with him.

Genesis 34:3

He was drawn to Dinah

“He was very attracted to her.” This speaks about Shechem loving Dinah and wanting to be with her as if something were forcing him to come to Dinah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He wanted very much to be with Dinah” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

spoke tenderly to her

He tried to convince her that he loved her and that he wanted her to love him also.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- heart
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- heart
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

³ He was drawn to Dinah, the daughter of Jacob. He loved the young woman and spoke tenderly to her.

UST

³ He was very much attracted to her, and he became attached to her. He loved her and he spoke very tenderly to the girl.

Genesis 34:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴ Shechem spoke to his father Hamor, saying, "Get this young woman for me as a wife."

UST

⁴ So Shechem said to his father Hamor, "Please get this girl for me. I want her to become my wife!"

Genesis 34:5

Now Jacob

“Now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

Jacob heard that he

The word “he” refers to Shechem.

he had defiled

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him.

held his peace

This is a way of saying that Jacob did not say or do anything about the matter. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

⁵ Now Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter. His sons were with his livestock in the field, so Jacob held his peace until they came.

UST

⁵ When Jacob found out that Shechem had seized his daughter Dinah and slept with her, his sons were still in the fields with his livestock, so he said nothing about this until they returned home.

Genesis 34:6

Hamor...went out to Jacob

"Hamor...went to meet Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁶ Hamor the father of Shechem went out to Jacob to speak with him.

UST

⁶ In the meantime, Shechem's father Hamor went to talk with Jacob.

Genesis 34:7

The men were offended

"The men were very insulted" or "They were shocked"

he had disgraced Israel

Here the word "Israel" refers to every member of Jacob's family. Israel as a people group was disgraced. Alternate translation: "he had humiliated the family of Israel" or "he had brought shame on the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

lying with Jacob's daughter

"having sexual relations with Jacob's daughter"

for such a thing should not have been done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for he should not have done such a terrible thing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)

ULT

⁷ The sons of Jacob came in from the field when they heard of the matter. The men were offended. They were very angry because he had disgraced Israel by lying with Jacob's daughter, for such a thing should not have been done.

UST

⁷ Jacob's sons came in from the field, and when they had found out what had happened, they were shocked and very angry, because Shechem had brought much shame to Israel by forcing himself on Jacob's daughter. She was their sister! This was a terrible crime that should never be done.

Genesis 34:8

Hamor spoke with them

"Hamor spoke with Jacob and his sons"

loves your daughter

Here the word "love" refers to romantic love between a man and a woman. Alternate translation: "loves her and wants to marry her"

give her to him as a wife

In some cultures, the parents decide whom their children will marry.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son

ULT

⁸ Hamor spoke with them, saying, "My son Shechem loves your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife.

UST

⁸ But Hamor said to them, "My son Shechem really likes this girl who is your daughter and your sister. Please allow him to marry her.

Genesis 34:9

Intermarry with us

To intermarry is to marry a member of a different racial, social, religious or tribal group. Alternate translation: "Allow marriages between your people and ours"

ULT

⁹ Intermarry with us, give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves.

UST

⁹ Let us make an agreement: You will give your daughters to our young men to be their wives, and we will give our daughters to your young men to be their wives.

Genesis 34:10

the land will be open to you

“the land will be available to you”

ULT

10 You will live with us, and the land will be open to you to live and trade in, and to acquire property.”

UST

10 You can live among us and live anywhere in our land that you wish. You can buy and sell things. If you find land that you want, then you can buy it.”

Genesis 34:11

Shechem said to her father

"Shechem said to Dinah's father Jacob"

Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give

The phrase "find favor" is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "If you will approve of me, then I will give you whatever you ask" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

11 Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, "Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give."

UST

11 Then Shechem said to Dinah's father and brothers, "If you feel good toward me and do what I am asking for, I will give you whatever you ask for."

Genesis 34:12

bride price

In some cultures, it is customary for a man to give money, property, cattle, and other gifts to the bride's family at the time of marriage.

ULT

12 Ask me for as great a bride price and gift as you will, and I will give whatever you say to me, but give me the young woman as a wife."

UST

12 Tell me what gifts you want and what bride price you want, and I will give you what you ask for. I just want you to give the girl to me to be my wife."

Genesis 34:13

The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit

The abstract noun “deceit” can be stated as the verb “lied.” Alternate translation: “But the sons of Jacob lied to Shechem and Hamor when they answered them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Shechem had defiled Dinah

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him. See how you translated “defiled” in [Genesis 34:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹³ The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit, because Shechem had defiled Dinah their sister.

UST

¹³ But because Shechem had done a shameful thing to their sister Dinah, the sons of Jacob deceived Shechem and his father Hamor.

Genesis 34:14

They said to them

"Jacob's sons said to Shechem and Hamor"

We cannot do this thing, to give our sister

"We cannot agree to give Dinah in marriage"

for that would be a disgrace to us

"for that would cause us shame." Here "us" refers to Jacob's sons and all the people of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)

ULT

14 They said to them, "We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to anyone who is uncircumcised; for that would be a disgrace to us.

UST

14 They said to them, "No, we cannot do that. We cannot give our sister to be the wife of a man who is not circumcised, because that would be a shameful thing for us to do.

Genesis 34:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

15 Only on this condition will we agree with you: If you will become circumcised as we are, if every male among you is circumcised.

UST

15 We will do that only if you do one thing: You must become like us by circumcising all the males that are among you.

Genesis 34:16

give our daughters to you...take your daughters to ourselves

This means they will allow a person from Jacob's family to marry a person who lives in Hamor's land.

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

ULT

¹⁶ Then will we give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters to ourselves, and we will live with you and become one people.

UST

¹⁶ Then we will give our daughters to your young men to be your wives, and we will take your daughters to be the wives of our young men. We will live among you, and we will become one people group.

Genesis 34:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

17 But if you do not listen to us and become circumcised, then we will take our sister and we will leave."

UST

17 But if you do not agree to be circumcised, we will take our sister and leave."

Genesis 34:18

Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem

“Hamor and his son Shechem agreed with what Jacob’s sons said”

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

18 Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem.

UST

18 What they said pleased Hamor and his son Shechem.

Genesis 34:19**to do what they said**

“to become circumcised”

Jacob's daughter

“Jacob's daughter Dinah”

because he was the most honored person in all his father's household

This can be translated as a new sentence. It can be made explicit that Shechem knew the other men would agree to be circumcised because they greatly respected him. Alternate translation: “Shechem knew all the men in his father's household would agree with him because he was the most honored among them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- delight
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- delight
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

19 The young man did not delay to do what they said, because he delighted in Jacob's daughter, and because he was the most honored person in all his father's household.

UST

19 Shechem wanted very much to take Jacob's daughter as his wife; also, since he was the most respected person in his father's family, he quickly agreed to do what they suggested.

Genesis 34:20

the gate of their city

It was common for leaders to meet at the city gate to make official decisions.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Translation Words - UST

- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

²⁰ Hamor and Shechem his son went to the gate of their city and spoke with the men of their city, saying,

UST

²⁰ Shechem went with Hamor to the meeting place at the city gate, and they spoke to the city leaders. They said,

Genesis 34:21

These men

"Jacob, his sons, and the people of Israel"

peace with us

Here "us" includes Hamor, his son and all the people they spoke with at the city gate. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

let them live in the land and trade in it

"let them live and trade in the land"

for, really, the land is large enough for them

Shechem uses the word "really" to add emphasis to his statement. "because, certainly, the land is large enough for them" or "because, indeed, there is plenty of land for them"

take their daughters...give them our daughters

This refers to marriages between the women of one group and the men of the other group. See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 34:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

ULT

21 "These men are at peace with us, so let them live in the land and trade in it for, really, the land is large enough for them. Let us take their daughters as wives, and let us give them our daughters.

UST

21 "These men are friendly toward us. We should let them live here and travel around. Certainly the land is big enough to support them and us. Our young men can marry their daughters, and their young men can marry our daughters.

Genesis 34:22

General Information:

Hamor and Shechem his son continue to talk to the city elders.

Only on this condition will the men agree to live with us and become one people: If every male among us is circumcised, as they are circumcised

“Only if every man among us is circumcised, as the men of Israel are circumcised, will they agree to live among us and unite with us as one people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

ULT

22 Only on this condition will the men agree to live with us and become one people: If every male among us is circumcised, as they are circumcised.

UST

22 But these men will agree to live among us and become one people group with us only if all our males are circumcised, as they are.

Genesis 34:23

Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours?

Shechem uses a question to emphasize that Jacob's livestock and property will belong to the people of Shechem. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "All of their animals and property will be ours." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)

ULT

²³ Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours? So let us agree with them, and they will live among us."

UST

²³ But if we do that, just think! Their cattle, their possessions, and all their animals will become ours! So we should agree to do what they suggest, and then they will live among us!"

Genesis 34:24

Every male was circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Hamor and Shechem had someone circumcise all the men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish (2)

ULT

²⁴ All the men of the city listened to Hamor and Shechem, his son. Every male was circumcised.

UST

²⁴ All the men who were at the city gate agreed to what Hamor and Shechem suggested. Every male in the city was circumcised.

Genesis 34:25

On the third day

“third” is the ordinal number for three. It can be stated without the ordinal number. Alternate translation: “After two days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

when they were still in pain

“when the men of the city were still in pain”

each took his sword

“took their swords”

they attacked the city

Here “city” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “they attacked the people of the city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

security, and they killed all the males

This can be translated as a new sentence. “security. Simeon and Levi killed all the men of the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

²⁵ On the third day, when they were still in pain, two of the sons of Jacob (Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brothers), each took his sword and they attacked the city that was certain of its security, and they killed all the males.

UST

²⁵ On the third day after that, when the men of the city were still sore because of being circumcised, two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, who were Dinah's brothers, took their swords and entered the city without anyone stopping them, and killed all the men.

Genesis 34:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁶ They killed Hamor and his son Shechem with the edge of the sword. They took Dinah from Shechem's house and went away.

UST

²⁶ They even killed Hamor and his son Shechem. Then they took Dinah out of Shechem's house and left the city.

Genesis 34:27

the dead bodies

“the dead bodies of Hamor, Shechem, and their men”

looted the city

“stole everything in the city that was valuable”

because the people had defiled their sister

Shechem alone had defiled Dinah, but Jacob’s sons considered Shechem’s entire family and everyone in the city responsible for this act.

had defiled

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him. See how you translated “defiled” in [Genesis 34:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁷ The other sons of Jacob came to the dead bodies and looted the city, because the people had defiled their sister.

UST

²⁷ Then the other sons of Jacob went into the city where all those dead bodies were. They looted the city to get revenge for the shameful thing that had been done to their sister.

Genesis 34:28

They took their flocks

"Jacob's sons took the people's flocks"

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd

ULT

28 They took their flocks, their herds, their donkeys, and everything in the city and in the surrounding fields with

UST

28 They took away the people's sheep and goats, their cattle, their donkeys, and everything else that they wanted from inside the city and from out in the countryside.

Genesis 34:29

all their wealth

“all their possessions and money”

All their children and their wives, they captured

“They captured all their children and wives”

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

²⁹ all their wealth. All their children and their wives, they captured. They even took everything that was in the houses.

UST

²⁹ They took away everything that was valuable, even the children and the women. They seized and took away everything that was in the houses.

Genesis 34:30

brought trouble on me

Causing someone to experience trouble is spoken of as if trouble were an object that is brought and placed on a person. Alternate translation: "caused great problems for me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land

Causing the people in the surrounding areas to hate Jacob is spoken of as if Jacob's sons made him smell bad physically. This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "You have made me repulsive to the people who live in the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am few in number...against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household

Here the words "I" and "me" refer to all of Jacob's household. Jacob only says "I" or "me" since he is the leader. Alternate translation: "My household is small...against us and attack us, then they will destroy all of us" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

gather themselves together against me and attack me

"form an army and attack me" or "form an army and attack us"

then I will be destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will destroy me" or "they will destroy us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT

³⁰ Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, "You have brought trouble on me, to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites and the Perizzites. I am few in number. If they gather themselves together against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household."

UST

³⁰ Then Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, "You have brought me big trouble! Now the Canaan people group, the Perez people group, and everyone else who lives in this land will hate me! I do not have many men to fight for us, so if they all gather together and come to me and attack us, they will destroy us and all our household!"

Genesis 34:31

Should Shechem have dealt with our sister as with a prostitute?

Simeon and Levi use a question to emphasize that Shechem did what was wrong and deserved to die. Alternate translation: "Shechem should not have treated our sister as if she were a prostitute!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³¹ But Simeon and Levi said, "Should Shechem have dealt with our sister as with a prostitute?"

UST

³¹ But they replied, "Should we have allowed Shechem to treat our sister like a prostitute?"

Genesis 35

Genesis 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person's life. The return of Jacob to Canaan was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Covenant

The covenant God made with Abraham is repeated here. It indicates that all of Jacob's descendants will inherit the promises of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Genesis 35:1

go up to Bethel

The phrase “go up” is used because Bethel is higher in elevation than Shechem.

Build an altar there to God

God speaks about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “Build an altar there to me, your God” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- brother
- God
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- brother
- God
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

¹ God said to Jacob, “Arise, go up to Bethel, and stay there. Build an altar there to God, who appeared to you when you fled from Esau your brother.”

UST

¹ Some time later, God said to Jacob, “Go up to the city of Bethel and live there. Build an altar to worship me, God, who appeared to you when you were fleeing from your older brother Esau.”

Genesis 35:2

said to his household

“said to his family”

Put away the foreign gods that are among you

“Throw away your idols” or “Get rid of your false gods”

purify yourselves, and change your clothes

This was the custom of cleansing oneself morally and physically before going to worship God.

change your clothes

Putting on a new clothes was a sign that they had made themselves clean before approaching God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- pure, purify, purification
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- pure, purify, purification
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

ULT

² Then Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, “Put away the foreign gods that are among you, purify yourselves, and change your clothes.

UST

² So Jacob said to his household and to all the others who were with him, “Get rid of the idols you brought from the land of Mesopotamia. Also, bathe yourselves and put on clean clothes.

Genesis 35:3

in the day of my distress

“in the time of my distress” or “when I was in trouble”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- walk, walked

ULT

³ Then let us depart and go up to Bethel. I will build an altar there to God, who answered me in the day of my distress, and has been with me wherever I have gone.”

UST

³ Then we will get ready and go up to Bethel. There I will build an altar to worship God. He is the one who helped me at the time when I was greatly distressed and afraid, and he has been with me wherever I have gone.”

Genesis 35:4

So they gave

“so everyone in Jacob’s household gave” or “so all of his family and servants gave”

that were in their hand

Here “in their hand” stands for what they own. Alternate translation: “that were in their possession” or “that they had” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the rings that were in their ears

“their earrings.” Possible meanings are 1) the gold in the earrings could have been used to make more idols or 2) they took these earrings from the city of Shechem after they attacked it and killed all the people. The earrings would have reminded them of their sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴ So they gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that were in their hand, and the rings that were in their ears. Jacob buried them under the oak that was near Shechem.

UST

⁴ So they gave to Jacob all the idols that they had brought, and all their earrings. Jacob buried them in the ground under the big oak tree that was near the city of Shechem.

Genesis 35:5

God made panic to fall on the cities

God causing the people of the cities to be afraid of Jacob and his family is spoken of as if panic were an object that fell on the cities. The abstract noun “panic” can be stated as “afraid.” Alternate translation: “God made the people in the surrounding cities afraid of Jacob and those with him” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

on the cities

Here “cities” stands for the people who live in the cities. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of Jacob

It is implied that no one attacked anyone in Jacob’s family. But two of the sons, Simeon and Levi had attacked the Canaanites relatives of Shechem after he seized and slept with Jacob’s daughter. Jacob was afraid they would seek revenge in [Genesis 34:30](#). Alternate translation: “Jacob’s family” or “Jacob’s household” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)

ULT

⁵ As they traveled, God made panic to fall on the cities that were around them, so those people did not pursue the sons of Jacob.

UST

⁵ As they prepared to leave there, God caused the people who lived in the cities around them to be very afraid of Jacob’s family, so that they did not pursue them.

Genesis 35:6

Luz

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in [Genesis 28:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- people, people group,

ULT

⁶ So Jacob arrived at Luz (that is, Bethel), which is in the land of Canaan, he and all the people who were with him.

UST

⁶ Jacob and all those who were with him went to Luz, which is now called Bethel, in Canaan land.

Genesis 35:7

El Bethel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Bethel means 'God of Bethel.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

there God had revealed himself to him

"there God made himself known to Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- brother
- God
- exile, exiled
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- brother
- God
- exile, exiled
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

⁷ He built an altar there and called the place El Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him, when he was fleeing from his brother.

UST

⁷ There he built an altar. He named the place El Bethel, which means "God of Bethel," because it was there that God revealed himself to Jacob when he was fleeing from his older brother Esau.

Genesis 35:8

Deborah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rebekah's nurse

A nurse is a woman who takes care of another woman's child. The nurse was highly honored and important to the family.

She was buried down from Bethel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They buried her down from Bethel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

down from Bethel

The phrase "down from" is used because they buried her in a place that was lower in elevation than Bethel.

Allon Bakuth

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Allon Bakuth means 'Oak tree where there is weeping.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁸ Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died. She was buried down from Bethel under the oak tree, so it was called Allon Bakuth.

UST

⁸ Deborah, who had taken care of Isaac's wife Rebekah when Rebekah was a small girl, was now very old. She died and was buried under an oak tree south of Bethel. So they named that place Allon Bakuth, which means "oak of weeping."

Genesis 35:9

When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

It can be made explicit that they were in Bethel. Alternate translation: "After Jacob left Paddan Aram, and while he was in Bethel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

blessed

Here "bless" means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

⁹ When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, God appeared to him again and blessed him.

UST

⁹ After Jacob and his family returned from Paddan Aram, while they were still at Bethel, God appeared to Jacob again and blessed him.

Genesis 35:10

but your name will no longer be called Jacob

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but your name will no longer be Jacob” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- name
- name
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- name
- name
- name
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

10 God said to him, “Your name is Jacob, but your name will no longer be called Jacob. Your name will be Israel.” So God called his name Israel.

UST

10 God said to him again, “Your name will no longer be Jacob. It will be Israel.” So Jacob was then called “Israel.”

Genesis 35:11

God said to him

"God said to Jacob"

Be fruitful and multiply

God told Jacob to produce children so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how he was to be "fruitful." See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:22](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

A nation and a company of nations will come from you

Here "nation" and "nations" refer to Jacob's descendants who will establish these nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

11 God said to him, "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and a company of nations will come from you, and kings will be among your descendants.

UST

11 Then God said to him, "I am God Almighty. Produce many children. Your descendants will become many nations, and some of your descendants will be kings.

Genesis 35:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹² The land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, I will give to you. To your descendants after you I also give the land."

UST

¹² The land that I promised to give to Abraham and Isaac, I will give to you. I will also give it to your descendants."

Genesis 35:13

God went up from him

Here “went up” is used because where God dwells is typically thought of as being up or above the world. Alternate translation: “God left him”

Translation Words - ULT

- God

Translation Words - UST

- God

ULT

13 God went up from him in the place where he spoke with him.

UST

13 When God finished talking there with Jacob, he left him.

Genesis 35:14

pillar

This is a memorial pillar which was simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it

This is a sign that he is dedicating the pillar to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [olive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [olive](#)

ULT

14 Jacob set up a pillar in the place where God had spoken to him, a pillar of stone. He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it.

UST

14 Jacob set up a large stone at the place where God had talked with him. He poured some wine and some olive oil on it to dedicate it to God.

Genesis 35:15

Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- God
- name
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

¹⁵ Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him, Bethel.

UST

¹⁵ Jacob named that place Bethel, which means "house of God," because God had spoken to him there.

Genesis 35:16

Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem.

She had hard labor

"She was having a very difficult time giving birth to the child"

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

16 They journeyed on from Bethel. While they were still some distance from Ephrath, Rachel went into labor. She had hard labor.

UST

16 Jacob and his family left Bethel and traveled south toward Ephrath town. When they were still some distance from Ephrath, Rachel began to have severe childbirth pains.

Genesis 35:17

While she was in hardest labor

"When the labor pain was at its worst"

midwife

a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son

ULT

¹⁷ While she was in hardest labor, the midwife said to her, "Do not be afraid, for now you will have another son."

UST

¹⁷ When her pain was the most severe, the midwife said to Rachel, "Do not be afraid, because now you have given birth to another son!"

Genesis 35:18

As she was dying, with her dying breath

A “dying breath” is a person’s last breath before he or she dies.
Alternate translation: “Just before she died, as she was taking her last breath” (See: [Idiom](#))

Ben-Oni

Translator may add a footnote that says “The name Ben-Oni means ‘son of my sorrow.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Benjamin

Translator may add a footnote that says “The name Benjamin means ‘son of the right hand.’” The phrase “right hand” indicates a place of special favor.

ULT

18 As she was dying, with her dying breath she named him Ben-Oni, but his father called him Benjamin.

UST

18 But she was dying, and with her last breath she said, “Name him Ben-Oni,” which means “son of my sorrow,” but his father named him Benjamin, which means “son of my right hand.”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- call, call out
- name
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- call, call out
- name
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce

Genesis 35:19

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they buried her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on the way

“alongside the road”

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

19 Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem).

UST

19 After Rachel died, she was buried alongside the road to Ephrath, which is now called Bethlehem.

Genesis 35:20

It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day

"It marks Rachel's grave still to this day"

to this day

"up to the present time." This means to the time that the author was writing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

²⁰ Jacob set up a pillar upon her grave.
It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day.

UST

²⁰ Jacob set up a large stone over her grave, and it is still there, showing where Rachel's grave is.

Genesis 35:21

Israel traveled on

It is implied that Israel's family and servants are with him. The full meaning of this information can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

²¹ Israel traveled on and pitched his tent beyond the watchtower of the flock.

UST

²¹ Jacob, whose new name was Israel, continued traveling with his family, and he set up his tents on the south side of the watchtower at Eder.

Genesis 35:22

lay with

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “had sexual relations with” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Now Jacob had twelve sons

This sentence begins a new paragraph, which continues into the following verses.

twelve sons

“12 sons” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

22 While Israel was living in that land, Reuben lay with Bilhah his father's concubine, and Israel heard of it. Now Jacob had twelve sons.

UST

22 While they were living in that area, Jacob's son Reuben slept with Bilhah, one of his father's concubines. Someone told Jacob about it, and it made him very angry. Now Jacob had twelve sons.

Genesis 35:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judah
- Reuben
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judah
- Reuben
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- firstborn

ULT

²³ His sons by Leah were Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, and Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

UST

²³ The sons of Leah were Reuben, who was Jacob's oldest son, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

Genesis 35:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

²⁴ His sons by Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

UST

²⁴ The sons of Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

Genesis 35:25

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

25 His sons by Bilhah, Rachel's female servant, were Dan and Naphtali.

UST

25 The sons of Rachel's female slave Bilhah were Dan and Naphtali.

Genesis 35:26

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were born to him in Paddan Aram

It is implied that this does not include Benjamin who was born in the land of Canaan near Bethlehem. It only mentions Paddan Aram since that is where most of them were born. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "who were born to him in Paddan Aram, except Benjamin who was born in the land of Canaan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

26 The sons of Zilpah, Leah's female servant, were Gad and Asher. All these were the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan Aram.

UST

26 The sons of Leah's female slave Zilpah were Gad and Asher. All those sons of Jacob, except Benjamin, were born while he was living in Paddan Aram.

Genesis 35:27

Jacob came to Isaac

Here “came” can be stated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁷ Jacob came to Isaac, his father, in Mamre in Kiriath Arba (the same as Hebron), where Abraham and Isaac had lived.

UST

²⁷ Jacob went back home to see his father Isaac at Mamre, which is also named Kiriath Arba, and which is now named Hebron. Isaac's father Abraham had also lived there.

Genesis 35:28

one hundred eighty years

“180 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁸ Isaac lived for one hundred eighty years.

UST

²⁸ Isaac lived until he was 180 years old.

Genesis 35:29

Isaac breathed his last and died

“Isaac took his last breath and died.” The phrases “breathed his last” and “died” mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 25:8](#). Alternate translation: “Isaac died” (See: [Doublet](#))

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. See how you translated this in [Genesis 25:8](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

was gathered to his ancestors

This means that after Isaac died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he joined his family members who had already died” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

an old man full of days

The phrases “old man” and “full of days” mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that Isaac lived a very long time. Alternate translation: “after he had lived a very long time and was very old” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

²⁹ Isaac breathed his last and died, and was gathered to his ancestors, an old man full of days. Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him.

UST

²⁹ He was very old when he died and went to join his ancestors who had died previously. His sons Esau and Jacob buried his body.

Genesis 36

Genesis 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Esau's descendants

Esau's descendants became known as the Edomite people group. They also become a great nation. This nation is prominent in the rest of the Old Testament. God graciously blessed Esau and he had many descendants. (See: [grace, gracious](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Genesis 36:1

These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom)

"These are the descendants of Esau, who is also called Edom." This sentence introduces the account of Esau's descendants in Genesis 36:1-8. Alternate translation: "This is an account of the descendants of Esau, who is also called Edom" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [generation](#)

ULT

¹ These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom).

UST

¹ These are those who descended from Esau, whose other name was Edom, and what happened concerning them.

Genesis 36:2

Adah...Oholibamah

These are names of Esau's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elon the Hittite

"Elon the descendant of Heth" or "Elon a descendant of Heth." This is the name of a man. See how you translate this in [Genesis 26:34](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah...Zibeaon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hivite

This refers to a larger group of people. See how you translated it in [Genesis 10:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Hivite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Hivite](#)

ULT

² Esau took his wives from the Canaanites. These were his wives: Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite; Oholibamah the daughter of Anah, the granddaughter of Zibeaon the Hivite;

UST

² Esau married three women from Canaan land: Adah, the daughter of Elon the Hittite; Oholibamah, who was the daughter of Anah and granddaughter of Zibeaon the Hittite;

Genesis 36:3

Nebaioth

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of one of Esau's wives. See how you translated this in [Genesis 26:34](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael's sons. See how you translated this in [Genesis 28:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ and Basemath, Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebaioth.

UST

³ and Basemath, who was the daughter of Ishmael and sister of Nebaioth.

Genesis 36:4

Adah...Basemath

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2-3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Eliphaz...Reuel

These are names of Esau's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴ Adah bore Eliphaz to Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel.

UST

⁴ Esau's wife Adah gave birth to Eliphaz. Basemath gave birth to Reuel.

Genesis 36:5

Oholibamah

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush...Jalam...Korah

These are names of Esau's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau

ULT

⁵ Oholibamah bore Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. These were the sons of Esau who were born to him in the land of Canaan.

UST

⁵ Oholibamah gave birth to Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. All these sons of Esau were born while he was living in Canaan land.

Genesis 36:6

which he had gathered in the land of Canaan

This refers to all of the things that he had accumulated while living in the land of Canaan. Alternate translation: “which he had accumulated while living in the land of Canaan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

went into a land

This means to moved to another place and live there. Alternate translation: “went to live in another land” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- beast
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT

⁶ Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters, and all the members of his household, his livestock—all his animals, and all his possessions, which he had gathered in the land of Canaan, and went into a land away from his brother Jacob.

UST

⁶⁻⁷ Jacob and Esau had very many possessions. For this reason, they needed more land for their livestock. The land where they were living was not big enough for all their livestock. So Esau, whose other name was Edom, had taken his wives and sons and daughters and all the other members of his household, his sheep and goats and his other animals, and all the other things he had obtained in Canaan land, and they had moved to an area that was away from Jacob.

Genesis 36:7

their possessions

“Esau’s and Jacob’s possessions”

could not support them because of their livestock

The land was not large enough to support all of the livestock that Jacob and Esau owned. Alternate translation: “was not big enough to support all of their livestock” or “was not big enough for both Esau’s flocks and Jacob’s flocks” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

where they had settled

The word “settled” means to move somewhere and live there. Alternate translation: “where they had moved to” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

⁷ He did this because their possessions were too many for them to stay together. The land where they had settled could not support them because of their livestock.

UST

⁶⁻⁷ Jacob and Esau had very many possessions. For this reason, they needed more land for their livestock. The land where they were living was not big enough for all their livestock. So Esau, whose other name was Edom, had taken his wives and sons and daughters and all the other members of his household, his sheep and goats and his other animals, and all the other things he had obtained in Canaan land, and they had moved to an area that was away from Jacob.

Genesis 36:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- Esau
- Esau

ULT

⁸ So Esau, also known as Edom, settled in the hill country of Seir.

UST

⁸ They went to live in the hill country of Seir.

Genesis 36:9

These were the descendants of Esau

This sentence introduces the account of Esau's descendants in Genesis 36:9-43. Alternate translation: "This is an account of the descendants of Esau" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the hill country of Seir

This means that they lived in the hill country of Seir. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. Alternate translation: "who lived in the hill country of Seir" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation

ULT

⁹ These were the descendants of Esau, the ancestor of the Edomites in the hill country of Seir.

UST

⁹ These are those who descended from Esau, the ancestor of the Edom people group who live in the Seir area.

Genesis 36:10

Eliphaz...Reuel

These are names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adah...Basemath

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:2-3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- name
- Esau
- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- name
- Esau
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

¹⁰ These were the names of Esau's sons: Eliphaz son of Adah, the wife of Esau; Reuel son of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

UST

¹⁰ Esau's wife Adah gave birth to Eliphaz, and Esau's wife Basemath gave birth to Reuel.

Genesis 36:11

Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz

These are names of the sons of Eliphaz. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

11 The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.

UST

11 The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.

Genesis 36:12

Amalek

a son of Eliphaz (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Timna

This is the name of Eliphaz's concubine. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

¹² Timna, a concubine of Eliphaz, Esau's son, bore Amalek. These were the grandsons of Adah, Esau's wife.

UST

¹² Esau's son Eliphaz also had a concubine. Her name was Timna. She gave birth to Amalek. Those six men were grandsons of Esau's wife Adah.

Genesis 36:13

Reuel

This is the name of a son of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahath...Zerah...Shammah...Mizzah

These are names of Reuel's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated this in [Genesis 36:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Esau

ULT

¹³ These were the sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. These were the grandsons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

UST

¹³ Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They were grandsons of Esau's wife Basemath.

Genesis 36:14

Oholibamah

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah...Zibeon

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush, Jalam, and Korah

These are names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

¹⁴ These were the sons of Oholibamah, Esau's wife, who was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon. She bore to Esau Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

UST

¹⁴ Esau's wife Oholibamah, who was the daughter of Anah and granddaughter of Zibeon, gave birth to three sons: Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

Genesis 36:15

Eliphaz

This is the name of one of Esau's sons. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz

These are names of Eliphaz's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

¹⁵ These were the clans among Esau's descendants: the descendants of Eliphaz, the firstborn of Esau: Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,

UST

¹⁵ These are the chiefs among the descendants of Esau. The descendants of Eliphaz, his firstborn son, these were the chiefs: Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,

Genesis 36:16

Korah, Gatam, and Amalek

These are names of Eliphaz's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adah

This is the name of one of Esau's wives. See how you translated her name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

16 Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. These were the clans descended from Eliphaz in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Adah.

UST

16 Korah, Gatam, and Amalek people groups. These were chiefs that descended from Eliphaz who lived in Edom; they were grandsons of Adah.

Genesis 36:17

Reuel

This is the name of a son of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah

These are the names of Reuel's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Edom

This means that they lived in the land of Edom. Alternate translation: "who lived in the land of Edom" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

17 These were the clans from Reuel, Esau's son: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah. These were the clans descended from Reuel in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

UST

17 The sons of Esau's son Reuel were ancestors of the Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah people groups. They were descended from Esau's wife Basemath. They also lived in Edom.

Genesis 36:18

Oholibamah

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush, Jalam, Korah

These are the names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah

This the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

18 These were the clans of Oholibamah, Esau's wife: Jeush, Jalam, Korah. These are the clans that descended from Esau's wife Oholibamah, daughter of Anah.

UST

18 The sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah, whose mother was Anah, were ancestors of the Jeush, Jalam, and Korah people groups.

Genesis 36:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Esau

ULT

¹⁹ These were the sons of Esau (who was known as Edom), and these were their chiefs.

UST

¹⁹ That is the list of the sons of Esau, and the people groups who were their descendants.

Genesis 36:20

Seir

The word “Seir” is the name of a man and of a country.

the Horite

The word “Horite” refers to a people group. See how you translated it in [Genesis 14:6](#).

the inhabitants of the land

“who lived in the land of Seir, which is also called Edom”

Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

²⁰ These were the sons of Seir the Horite, the inhabitants of the land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,

UST

²⁰ This is a list of the descendants of Seir, who belonged to the Hor people group, who were the first people group who lived in the region of Edom: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,

Genesis 36:21

Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²¹ Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. These were the clans of the Horites, the inhabitants of Seir in the land of Edom.

UST

²¹ Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. Those seven men each became ancestors of a people group. Each of the people groups had the same name as the name of their ancestor.

Genesis 36:22

Lotan...Hori and Heman

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Timna

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²² The sons of Lotan were Hori and Heman, and Timna was Lotan's sister.

UST

²² The sons of Lotan were Hori and Heman. Lotan's sister was Timna.

Genesis 36:23

Shobal

This is the name of man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ These were the sons of Shobal: Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

UST

²³ The sons of Shobal were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

Genesis 36:24

Zibeon

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aiah and Anah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

ULT

²⁴ These were the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. This is Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness, as he was pasturing donkeys of Zibeon his father.

UST

²⁴ The sons of Zibeon were Aiah and Anah. This Anah was the one who discovered the hot springs in the desert while he was taking care of his father Zibeon's donkeys.

Genesis 36:25

Anah...Dishon

These are names of men. See how you translated “Anah” in [Genesis 36:20](#).

Oholibamah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ These were the children of Anah: Dishon and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah.

UST

²⁵ Anah had two children—a son named Dishon and a daughter named Oholibamah.

Genesis 36:26

Dishon...Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran

These are names of men. See how you translated “Dishon” in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁶ These were the sons of Dishon: Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

UST

²⁶ Dishon's sons were Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

Genesis 36:27

Ezer...Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan

These are names of men. See how you translated “Ezer” in [Genesis 36:20-21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁷ These were the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

UST

²⁷ Ezer’s sons were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

Genesis 36:28

Dishan...Uz and Aran

These are names of men. See how you translated “Dishan” in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁸ These were the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

UST

²⁸ Dishan's sons were Uz and Aran.

Genesis 36:29

the Horites

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated this in [Genesis 14:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah,

UST

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

Genesis 36:30

Dishon, Ezer, Dishan

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Seir

This means that they lived in the land of Seir. Alternate translation: “of those who lived in the land of Seir” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: These were clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir.

UST

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

Genesis 36:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

³¹ These were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites:

UST

³¹ These are the names of the kings who ruled in Edom before any kings ruled over the Israelites.

Genesis 36:32

Bela...Beor

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: "the name of the city where he lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

Dinhabah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- reign, rule

ULT

³² Bela son of Beor, reigned in Edom, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

UST

³² Beor's son Bela became the first king in Edom. The city where he lived was named Dinhabah.

Genesis 36:33

Bela...Jobab...Zerah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozrah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

³³ When Bela died, then Jobab son of Zerah of Bozrah, reigned in his place.

UST

³³ When Bela died, Zerah's son Jobab became the king. He was from the city of Bozrah.

Genesis 36:34

Jobab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:33](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham who was of the land of the Temanites

This means that Husham lived in the land of the Temanites. Alternate translation: "Husham who lived in the land of the Temanites" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Temanites

descendants of a man named Teman (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁴ When Jobab died, Husham who was of the land of the Temanites, reigned in his place.

UST

³⁴ When Jobab died, Husham became the king. He was from the region where the Teman people group lived.

Genesis 36:35

Husham...Hadad...Bedad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: "The name of the city where he lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

Avith

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Moab, Moabite
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁵ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad who defeated the Midianites in the land of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith.

UST

³⁵ When Husham died, Bedad's son Hadan became the king. Husham's army fought the army of the Midian people group in the region of Moab and defeated them. The city where Husham lived was Avith.

Genesis 36:36

Hadad...Samlah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Samlah of Masrekah

"Samlah from Masrekah" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Masrekah

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

36 When Hadad died, then Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his place.

UST

36 When Hadad died, Samlah became the king. He was from Masrekah.

Genesis 36:37

Samlah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:36](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

then Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place

Shaul lived in Rehoboth. Rehoboth was by the Euphrates river. This information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “then Shaul reigned in his place. He was from Rehoboth which is by the Euphrates River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Shaul

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁷ When Samlah died, then Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place.

UST

³⁷ When Samlah died, Shaul became the king. He was from Rehoboth, that was beside the Euphrates river.

Genesis 36:38

Shaul...Baal-Hanan...Akbors

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

38 When Shaul died, then Baal-Hanan son of Akbor reigned in his place.

UST

38 When Shaul died, Akbor's son Baal-Hanan became king.

Genesis 36:39

Baal-Hanan...Akbors...Hadar...Matred...Me Zahab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: "The name of the city where he lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

Pau

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mehetabel

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me Zahab

"she was the daughter of Matred, and the granddaughter of Me Zahab"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁹ When Baal-Hanan son of Akbor, died, then Hadar reigned in his place. The name of his city was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me Zahab.

UST

³⁹ When Akbor's son Baal-Hanan died, Hadad became king. The city where he lived was named Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel. She was the daughter of Matred, who was the daughter of Me Zahab.

Genesis 36:40

the heads of clans

“the leaders of the clans”

according to their clans and their regions, by their names

The clans and the regions were named after the heads of the clans. Alternate translation: “the names of their clans and the regions where they lived were named after them. These are their names” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Timna, Alvah, Jetheth

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [clan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [clan](#)

ULT

40 These were the names of the heads of clans from Esau’s descendants, according to their clans and their regions, by their names: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,

UST

40-43 Here is a list of all the people groups that were descendants of Esau: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, Magdiel, and Iram. They all lived in the land of Edom. The land where each people group lived got the same name as the name of the people group.

Genesis 36:41

Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

41 Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,

UST

Genesis 36:42

Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴² Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,

UST

Genesis 36:43

Magdiel, and Iram

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

their settlements

“their dwelling places” or “the places they lived”

This was Esau

This list is said “to be” Esau, which means that it is the whole list of his descendants. Alternate translation: “This is the list of the descendants of Esau” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Esau](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

43 Magdiel, and Iram. These were the clan heads of Edom, according to their settlements in the land they possessed. This was Esau, the father of the Edomites.

UST

40-43 Here is a list of all the people groups that were descendants of Esau: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, Magdiel, and Iram. They all lived in the land of Edom. The land where each people group lived got the same name as the name of the people group.

Genesis 37

Genesis 37 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins to record the account of Jacob's sons. The rest of the book of Genesis focuses on Jacob's sons, especially Joseph. This chapter also references Jacob as "Israel" beginning in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Favoritism

Jacob's favoritism became a great problem for his sons. They are always jealous of Joseph because he is the favorite son. The beautiful garment Jacob gave to Joseph greatly strained the relationship between Joseph and his brothers. Joseph dreams he will rule all of his brothers, even though he is not the oldest son. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Genesis 37:1

the land where his father was staying, in the land of Canaan

“in the land of Canaan where his father had lived”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹ Jacob lived in the land where his father was staying, in the land of Canaan.

UST

¹ Jacob continued to live in Canaan land, where his father had lived previously.

Genesis 37:2

These were the events concerning Jacob

This sentence introduces the account of Jacob's children in Genesis 37:1-50:26. Here "Jacob" refers to his whole family. Alternate translation: "This is the account of Jacob's family" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

seventeen years old

"17 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

wives

These women were servants of Leah and Rachel whom they had given to Jacob to produce children.

an unfavorable report about them

"a bad report about his brothers"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- son (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- son (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

² These were the events concerning Jacob. Joseph, who was a young man seventeen years old, was guarding the flock with his brothers. He was with the sons of Bilhah and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives. Joseph brought an unfavorable report about them to their father.

UST

² This is what happened to Jacob's family. When his son Joseph was seventeen years old, he was taking care of the flocks of sheep and goats with some of his older brothers. They were sons of his father's concubines, Bilhah and Zilpah. Joseph told his father about bad things that his brothers were doing.

- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- generation

Genesis 37:3

Now

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Israel and Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

loved

This refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member. This is natural human love between friends or relatives.

of his old age

This means that Joseph was born when Israel was an old man. Alternate translation: “who was born when Israel was an old man” (See: [Idiom](#))

He made him

“Israel made Joseph”

a beautiful garment

“a beautiful robe”

Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

³ Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons because he was the son of his old age. He made him a beautiful garment.

UST

³ Jacob loved Joseph more than he loved any of his other children, because Joseph had been born when Jacob was an old man. Jacob had someone make for Joseph a beautiful piece of clothing with long sleeves.

Genesis 37:4

would not speak kindly to him

“could not speak in a courteous manner to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴ His brothers saw that their father loved him more than all his brothers. They hated him and would not speak kindly to him.

UST

⁴ When Joseph's older brothers realized that their father loved him more than he loved any of them, they hated him. They never spoke kindly to him.

Genesis 37:5

Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more

This is a summary of the events that will happen in 37:6-11.

They hated him even more

“And Joseph’s brothers hated him even more than they hated him before”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- dream

ULT

⁵ Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more.

UST

⁵ One night Joseph had a dream. He told his brothers about the dream, who hated him even more as a result. This is in detail what happened:

Genesis 37:6

Please listen to this dream which I dreamed

"Please listen to this dream that I had"

Translation Words - ULT

- dream

Translation Words - UST

- dream

ULT

⁶ He said to them, "Please listen to this dream which I dreamed.

UST

⁶ He said to them, "Listen to the dream I had!

Genesis 37:7

General Information:

Joseph tells his brothers about his dream.

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

we were

The word “we” refers to Joseph and includes all of his brothers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

tying bundles of grain

When grain is reaped it is tied into bundles and stacked until it is time to separate the grain from the straw.

behold

Here the word “behold” here shows that Joseph was surprised by what he saw.

my bundle rose and stood upright...your bundles came around and bowed down

Here the bundles of grain are standing and kneeling as if they were people. These bundle represent Joseph and his brothers. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)

ULT

⁷ Behold, we were tying bundles of grain in the field and behold, my bundle rose and stood upright, and behold, your bundles came around and bowed down to my bundle.”

UST

⁷ In the dream, we were tying up bundles of wheat in the field. Suddenly my bundle stood up straight, and your bundles gathered around my bundle and bowed down to it!”

Genesis 37:8

Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. Joseph's brothers are using questions to mock Joseph. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You will never be our king, and we will never bow down to you!" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

reign over us

The word "us" refers to Joseph's brothers but not Joseph. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

for his dreams and for his words

"because of his dreams and what he said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [dominion](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [brother](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dominion](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [brother](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁸ His brothers said to him, "Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?" They hated him even more for his dreams and for his words.

UST

⁸ His brothers said to him, "Do you think that some day you will rule over us? Are you going to be our king?" They hated him even more than before because of what he had told them about his dream.

Genesis 37:9

He dreamed another dream

"Joseph had another dream"

eleven stars

"11 stars" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁹ He dreamed another dream and told it to his brothers. He said, "Look, I have dreamed another dream: The sun and the moon and eleven stars bowed down to me."

UST

⁹ Later he had another dream, and again he told his older brothers about it. He said, "Listen to this! I had another dream. In this dream, the sun and moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me!"

Genesis 37:10

his father rebuked him. He said to him

"Israel scolded him, saying"

What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother...to the ground to you?

Israel uses questions to correct Joseph. This can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "This dream you had is not real. Your mother, brothers, and I will not bow down before you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- dream

ULT

¹⁰ He told it to his father just as to his brothers, and his father rebuked him. He said to him, "What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother and I and your brothers actually come to bow down to the ground to you?"

UST

¹⁰ He also told his father about it. His father corrected him, saying "What are you suggesting by that dream? Do you think it means that your mother and I and your older brothers will some day bow down to the ground in front of you?"

Genesis 37:11

jealous

This means being angry because someone else is successful or more popular.

kept the matter in mind

The means that he kept thinking about the meaning of Joseph's dream. Alternate translation: "kept thinking about what the dream might mean" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

11 His brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept the matter in mind.

UST

11 Joseph's older brothers resented him, but his father kept thinking about what the dream might mean.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- zeal, zealous
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- zeal, zealous
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Genesis 37:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd

ULT

¹² His brothers went to tend their father's flock in Shechem.

UST

¹² One day Joseph's older brothers went to take care of their father's sheep and goats that were in fields near Shechem.

Genesis 37:13

Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem?

Israel uses a question to begin a conversation. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You brothers are tending the flock in Shechem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Come

Here it is implied that Israel is asking Joseph to prepare himself to leave and go see his brothers. Alternate translation: "Get ready" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I am ready

He is ready to leave. "I am ready to go" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

ULT

13 Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem? Come, and I will send you to them."
Joseph said to him, "I am ready."

UST

13 Some time later, Jacob said to Joseph, "Your brothers are taking care of the sheep and goats near Shechem. I am going to send you there to see them."
Joseph replied, "I will go."

Genesis 37:14

He said to him

"Israel said to Joseph"

bring me word

Israel wants Joseph to come back and tell him about how his brother and flocks are doing. Alternate translation: "come tell me what you find out" or "give me a report" (See: [Idiom](#))

out of the Valley

"from the Valley"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- walk, walked
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- walk, walked
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- return

ULT

14 He said to him, "Go now, see whether it is well with your brothers and well with the flock, and bring me word." So Jacob sent him out of the Valley of Hebron, and Joseph went to Shechem.

UST

14 Jacob said, "Go and see if they are doing okay, and if the flocks are doing okay. Then come back and give me a report." So Jacob sent Joseph from the valley where they were living, the valley where Hebron is located, to go to find his brothers. Then Joseph arrived near the city of Shechem.

Genesis 37:15

A certain man found Joseph. Behold, Joseph was wandering in a field

"A certain man found Joseph wandering in a field"

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

What do you seek?

"What are you looking for?"

Translation Words - ULT

- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- seek, search, look for

ULT

¹⁵ A certain man found Joseph. Behold, Joseph was wandering in a field. The man asked him, "What do you seek?"

UST

¹⁵ While he was wandering around in the fields looking for his brothers, a man saw him and asked him, "Whom are you looking for?"

Genesis 37:16

Tell me, please, where

"Please tell me where"

tending the flock

"shepherding their flock"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- pray, prayer
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- pray, prayer
- seek, search, look for

ULT

16 Joseph said, "I am seeking my brothers. Tell me, please, where they are tending the flock."

UST

16 Joseph replied, "I am looking for my older brothers. Can you tell me where they are taking care of their sheep and goats?"

Genesis 37:17

Dothan

This is the name of a place that is about 22 kilometers from Shechem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

ULT

17 The man said, "They left this place, for I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan.

UST

17 The man replied, "They are not here anymore. I heard one of them saying, 'Let us take the sheep and goats and go to Dothan town.'" So Joseph left there and went north, and found his older brothers near Dothan.

Genesis 37:18

They saw him from a distance

"Joseph's brothers saw him while he was far away"

they plotted against him to kill him

"they made plans to kill him"

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

18 They saw him from a distance, and before he came near to them, they plotted against him to kill him.

UST

18 But they saw him when he was still far away, and they decided to kill him.

Genesis 37:19

this dreamer is approaching

"here comes the one who has the dreams"

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- brother

Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- brother

ULT

19 His brothers said to one another,
"Look, this dreamer is approaching.

UST

19 They said to each other things like,
"Here comes that dreamer!"

Genesis 37:20

Come now, therefore

This wording shows that the brothers acted upon their plans.
Alternate translation: "So now" (See: [Idiom](#))

wild animal

"dangerous animal" or "ferocious animal"

devoured

to eagerly have eaten

We will see what will become of his dreams

His brothers planned to kill him, therefore it is ironic that they would speak of his dream coming true, since he would be dead. Alternate translation: "That way we will make sure his dreams do not come true" (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [devour](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [devour](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

20 Come now, therefore, let us kill him and cast him into one of the pits. We will say, 'A wild animal has devoured him.' We will see what will become of his dreams."

UST

20 "Come on, let us kill him and throw his body into one of the pits! Then we will tell people that a wild animal attacked and killed him and ate him. And then we will find out whether his dreams come true!"

Genesis 37:21

heard it

"heard what they were saying"

from their hand

The phrase "their hand" refers to the brothers' plan to kill him.
Alternate translation: "from them" or "from their plans" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let us not take his life

The phrase "take his life" is a euphemism for killing someone.
Alternate translation: "Let us not kill Joseph" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

ULT

21 Reuben heard it and rescued him from their hand. He said, "Let us not take his life."

UST

21 Reuben heard what they were saying, so he tried to persuade them not to kill Joseph. He said, "No, we should not kill him."

Genesis 37:22

Shed no blood

The negation can be placed on the verb. Also, “shedding blood” is a euphemism for killing someone. Alternate translation: “Do not spill any blood” or “Do not kill him” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Euphemism](#))

that he might rescue him

This can be translated as a new sentence: “Reuben said this so that he might rescue Joseph”

out of their hand

The phrase “their hand” refers to the brothers’ plan to kill him. Alternate translation: “from them” or “from their plans” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to bring him back

“and return him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

ULT

22 Reuben said to them, “Shed no blood. Throw him into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him”—that he might rescue him out of their hand to bring him back to his father.

UST

22 Do not take his life! We can throw him into this pit in the desert, but we should not harm him.” He said that and then left them, planning to rescue Joseph later and take him back to his father.

Genesis 37:23

It came about that when

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

they stripped him of his beautiful garment

“they tore his beautiful garment off of him”

beautiful garment

“beautiful robe.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 37:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

²³ It came about that when Joseph reached his brothers, they stripped him of his beautiful garment.

UST

²³ When Joseph arrived where his older brothers were, they seized him and ripped off his long-sleeved clothing.

Genesis 37:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁴ They took him and threw him into the pit. The pit was empty with no water in it.

UST

²⁴ Then they took him and threw him into the pit. Now the pit was dry; there was no water in it.

Genesis 37:25

They sat down to eat bread

“Bread” represents food in general. Alternate translation: “They sat down to eat food” or “Joseph’s brothers sat down to eat” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan

Here looking up is spoken of as if a person literally lifted up his eyes. Also, the word “behold” is used here to draw the reader’s attention to what the men saw. Alternate translation: “They looked up and they suddenly saw a caravan” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bearing

carrying

spices

seasonings

balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. “medicine”

traveling to carry them down to Egypt

“bringing them down to Egypt.” This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “bringing them down to Egypt to sell them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

25 They sat down to eat bread. They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead, with their camels bearing spices and balm and myrrh. They were traveling to carry them down to Egypt.

UST

25 After they sat down to eat some food, they looked up and saw a caravan, descendants of Ishmael, coming from the Gilead area. Their camels were loaded with bags of spices and sweet-smelling resins. They were going down to Egypt to sell those things there.

Genesis 37:26

What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We do not gain a profit by killing our brother and covering up his blood" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

cover up his blood

This is a figure of speech referring to hiding Joseph's death. Alternate translation: "hide his murder" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- blood
- Judea
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- blood
- Judea
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

²⁶ Judah said to his brothers, "What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?"

UST

²⁶ Judah said to his older and younger brothers, "If we kill our younger brother and hide his body, what will we gain?"

Genesis 37:27

to the Ishmaelites

"to these men who are descendants of Ishmael"

not lay our hands upon him

This means not to harm or injure him. Alternate translation: "not hurt him" (See: [Idiom](#))

he is our brother, our flesh

The word "flesh" is a metonym that stands for a relative. Alternate translation: "he is our blood relative" (See: [Metonymy](#))

His brothers listened to him

"Judah's brothers listened to him" or "Judah's brothers agreed with him"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- flesh
- hand
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- flesh
- hand
- walk, walked

ULT

27 Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites and not lay our hands upon him. For he is our brother, our flesh." His brothers listened to him.

UST

27 So instead of harming him, let us sell him to these men who are descendants of Ishmael. Do not forget, he is our own younger brother!" So they all agreed to do that.

Genesis 37:28

Midianite...Ishmaelites

Both names refer to the same group of traders that Joseph's brothers meet.

for twenty pieces of silver

"for the price of 20 pieces of silver" (See: [Numbers](#))

carried Joseph into Egypt

"took Joseph to Egypt"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- patient, patience, impatient

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- patient, patience, impatient

ULT

28 The Midianite merchants passed by. His brothers drew Joseph up and lifted him up out of the pit. They sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver. The Ishmaelites carried Joseph into Egypt.

UST

28 When those traders from the Midian area came near, Joseph's brothers pulled him up out of the pit. Then they sold him to the men from Midian for twenty pieces of silver. The traders then took Joseph to Egypt.

Genesis 37:29

Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit

“Reuben returned to the pit, and was surprised to see that Joseph was not there.” The word “behold” here shows that Reuben was surprised to find out Joseph was gone.

He tore his clothes

This is an act of deep distress and grief. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “He was so grieved that he tore his clothes” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

²⁹ Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit. He tore his clothes.

UST

²⁹ When Reuben returned to the pit, he saw that his younger brother was not there. He was so grieved that he tore his clothes.

Genesis 37:30

The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?

Reuben uses questions for emphasis the problem that Joseph was missing. These can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "The boy is gone! I cannot go back home now!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

³⁰ He returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?"

UST

³⁰ He went back to his younger brothers and said, "The boy is not in the pit! What can I do now?"

Genesis 37:31

Joseph's garment

This refers to the beautiful garment that his father made for him.

the blood

"the goat's blood"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- slaughter, slaughtered

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- slaughter, slaughtered

ULT

31 They slaughtered a goat and then took Joseph's garment and dipped it into the blood.

UST

31 They did not dare to tell their father what they had done. So they decided to invent a story about what had happened. They got Joseph's piece of long-sleeved clothing. Then they killed a goat and dipped the clothing into the goat's blood.

Genesis 37:32

they brought it

“they brought the garment”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³² Then they brought it to their father and said, “We found this. Please see whether it is your son’s clothing or not.”

UST

³² They took that piece of clothing back to their father and said, “We found this! Look at it. Is it your son’s clothing?”

Genesis 37:33

has devoured him

"has eaten him"

Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces

Jacob thinks that a wild animal has torn Joseph's body apart.
Alternate translation: "It has certainly torn Joseph to pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- devour

ULT

³³ Jacob recognized it and said, "It is my son's clothing. A wild animal has devoured him. Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces."

UST

³³ He recognized it, and he said, "Yes, it is my son's! Some ferocious animal must have attacked and killed him! I am sure that the animal has torn Joseph to pieces!"

Genesis 37:34

Jacob tore his garments

This is an act of deep distress and grief. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "Jacob was so grieved that he tore his garments" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

put sackcloth upon his loins

Here "loins" refers to the middle part of the body or the waist. Alternate translation: "put on sackcloth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- sackcloth
- mourn, mourner, weeping

Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- sackcloth
- mourn, mourner, weeping

ULT

³⁴ Jacob tore his garments and put sackcloth upon his loins. He mourned for his son many days.

UST

³⁴ Jacob was so grieved that he tore his clothes. He put on sackcloth. He mourned.

Genesis 37:35

rose up

Here the childrens' coming to their father is spoke of as "rising up."
Alternate translation: "came to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

but he refused to be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but he would not let them comfort him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning

The means that he be mourning from now until when he dies.
Alternate translation: "Indeed when I die and go down to Sheol I will still be mourning" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

35 All his sons and daughters rose up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted. He said, "Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son." His father wept for him.

UST

35 All of his children came to try to comfort him, but he did not pay attention to what they said. He said, "No, I will still be mourning when I die and go to be with my son." So Joseph's father continued to cry because of what had happened to his son.

Genesis 37:36

The Midianites sold him

"The Midianites sold Joseph"

the captain of the bodyguard

"the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³⁶ The Midianites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the bodyguard.

UST

³⁶ In the meantime, the men from Midian took Joseph to Egypt and sold him to Potiphar, who was one of the king's officials. He was the captain of the soldiers who protected the king.

Genesis 38

Genesis 38 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on Jacob's son Judah.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Spilling his seed”

Onan was to provide for his brother's widow and give her an heir. This phrase indicates that he used Tamar to fulfill his own sexual desires rather than help her. This was sinful. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

God preserves Judah's line

The Canaanite woman, Tamar, deceived her father-in-law, Judah, into having sexual relations with her. If it had not been for this act, Judah would not have any descendants to carry on his family line. Although her actions were wrong, God used them to protect his people. (See: [people of God](#))

Genesis 38:1

It came about at that time that Judah

This introduces a new part of the story that focuses on Judah. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah

Hirah is the name of a man who lived in the village of Adullam. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Judea

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Judea

ULT

¹ It came about at that time that Judah left his brothers and stayed with a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah.

UST

¹ At that time, Judah left his older and younger brothers and went down from the hill country and stayed with a man who lived in Adullam. His name was Hiram.

Genesis 38:2

whose name was Shua

Shua is a Canaanite woman who married Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he went in to her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

ULT

² He met there a daughter of a Canaanite man whose name was Shua. He took her and he went in to her.

UST

² There he met a woman who was the daughter of a man from Canaan land named Shua. He married her and slept with her.

Genesis 38:3

She became pregnant

"Judah's wife became pregnant"

He was named Er

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "His father named him Er" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Er

Judah's son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

³ She became pregnant and had a son.
He was named Er.

UST

³ She became pregnant and later gave birth to a son. His father named him Er.

Genesis 38:4

called his name

“named him”

Onan

Judah’s son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁴ She became pregnant again and had a son. She called his name Onan.

UST

⁴ Later she became pregnant again and gave birth to another son, whom she named Onan.

Genesis 38:5

Shelah

Judah's son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kezib

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁵ She again had a son and called his name Shelah. It was at Kezib where she gave birth to him.

UST

⁵ Many years later, when Judah and his family went to live in Kezib, Judah's wife gave birth to another son, and she named him Shelah.

Genesis 38:6

Er

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

⁶ Judah found a wife for Er, his firstborn. Her name was Tamar.

UST

⁶ When Judah's oldest son Er grew up, Judah got a wife for him, a woman named Tamar.

Genesis 38:7

was wicked in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase “in the sight” refers to Yahweh seeing Er’s wickedness.
Alternate translation: “was wicked and Yahweh saw it” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh killed him

Yahweh killed him because he was wicked. This can be made clear.
Alternate translation: “So Yahweh killed him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judea
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judea
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- firstborn

ULT

⁷ Er, Judah’s firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him.

UST

⁷ But Er did something that Yahweh considered to be very wicked, so Yahweh caused him to die.

Genesis 38:8

Onan

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Go in to your brother's wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with your brother's wife" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her

This refers to a custom that when the oldest brother dies before he and his wife have a son, the next oldest brother would marry and have sexual relations with the widow. When the widow gave birth to the first son, that son was considered the son of the oldest brother and he would receive the oldest brother's inheritance.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Judea
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Judea
- seed, semen

ULT

⁸ Judah said to Onan, "Go in to your brother's wife. Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her, and raise up a child for your brother."

UST

⁸ Then Judah said to Onan, "Your older brother died without having any sons. So marry his widow and sleep with her. That is what our customs require that you should do."

Genesis 38:9

he went in to

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- children, child, offspring
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- children, child, offspring
- seed, semen
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁹ Onan knew that the child would not be his. Whenever he went in to his brother's wife, he spilled the semen on the ground so he would not have a child for his brother.

UST

⁹ But Onan knew if he did that, any children who would be born would not be considered to be his. So every time he slept with his brother's widow, he spilled his semen on the ground, so that she would not get pregnant and produce children for his older brother.

Genesis 38:10

was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase “in the sight” refers to Yahweh seeing Onan’s wickedness. Alternate translation: “was evil and Yahweh saw it” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh killed him also

Yahweh killed him because what he did was evil. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: “So Yahweh killed him also” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

10 What he did was evil in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him also.

UST

10 Yahweh considered that what he did was wicked, so he caused him to die also.

Genesis 38:11

his daughter-in-law

"his oldest son's wife"

in your father's house

This means her to live in here father's house. Alternate translation: "and live in your father's house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

until Shelah, my son, grows up

Judah intends for Tamar to marry Shelah when he grows up. Alternate translation: "and when Shelah, my son, grows up, he can marry you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Shelah

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

For he feared, "He might also die, just like his brothers

Judah feared that if Shelah married Tamar he would also die like his brothers did. Alternate translation: "For he feared, 'If he marries her he may also die like his brothers did'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- Tamar
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- proud, pride, prideful
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea
- Tamar
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- proud, pride, prideful
- house
- house

ULT

11 Then Judah said to Tamar, his daughter-in-law, "Remain a widow in your father's house until Shelah, my son, grows up." For he feared, "He might also die, just like his brothers." Tamar left and lived in her father's house.

UST

11 Then Judah said to his daughter-in-law Tamar, "Return to your father's house, but do not marry anyone else. When my youngest son Shelah grows up, he can marry you." But Judah really did not want Shelah to marry her, because he was afraid that then Shelah would die too, just as his older brothers had died. So Tamar obeyed Judah and went back to live in her father's house again.

Genesis 38:12

Shua's

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Judah was comforted and

"When Judah was no longer grieving, he"

his sheepshearers at Timnah

"Timnah, where his men were shearing sheep"

Timnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite

"His friend Hiram, from Adullam, went with him"

Hirah the Adullamite

"Hiram" is the name of a man, and "Adullam" is the name of a village where he lived. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

¹² After a long time, Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died. Judah was comforted and went up to his sheepshearers at Timnah, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.

UST

¹² Several years later, Judah's wife, who was the daughter of Shua, died. When the time of mourning for her was finished, Judah decided to go up to Timnah, to the place where his men were shearing his sheep. His friend Hiram, from Adullam, went with him.

Genesis 38:13

Tamar was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Tamar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Look, your father-in-law

"Listen." Here the word "look" is used to get Tamar attention.

your father-in-law

"your husband's father"

Translation Words - ULT

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flock](#), [herd](#)

ULT

13 Tamar was told, "Look, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep."

UST

13 Someone said to Tamar, "Your father-in-law is going to Timnah to help the men who are shearing his sheep."

Genesis 38:14

Enaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of her widowhood

“that widows wear”

veil

a very thin material used to cover a woman’s head and face

wrapped herself

This means that she hid herself with her clothing so that people would not recognize her. Traditionally, part of women’s clothing were large pieces of cloth they wrapped themselves with. Alternate translation: “wrapped herself in her clothing so that people would not recognize her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

by the road

“along the road” or “on the way”

she had not been given to him as a wife

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Judah had not given her to Shelah as a wife” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- proud, pride, prideful

Translation Words - UST

- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

¹⁴ She took off the clothing of her widowhood and covered herself with her veil and wrapped herself. She sat in the gate of Enaim, which is by the road to Timnah. For she saw that Shelah had grown up but she had not been given to him as a wife.

UST

¹⁴ She realized that now Shelah was grown up, but Judah had not given her to him to be his wife. So she took off her widow’s clothes and covered her head with a veil, so that people would not recognize her. Then she sat down at the entrance to Enaim, which is on the road to Timnah.

Genesis 38:15

When Judah saw her

The word “her” here refers to Tamar, but your reader should understand that Judah did not know that the woman he was looking at was Tamar.

because she had covered her face

Judah did not think she was a prostitute just because her face was covered but also because she was sitting in the gate. Alternate translation: “because she had covered her head and sat where prostitutes often sat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

¹⁵ When Judah saw her he thought that she was a prostitute because she had covered her face.

UST

¹⁵ When Judah came along and saw her, he thought that she was a prostitute, because she had covered her head and sat where prostitutes often sat.

Genesis 38:16

He went to her by the road

Tamar was sitting by the road. Alternate translation: “He went to where she was sitting by the road” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Come, please

“Come with me, please” or “Come now, please”

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

16 He went to her by the road and said, “Come, please let me lie with you”—for he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law—and she said, “What will you give me so you can lie with me?”

UST

16 Judah did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law. So he said to her, “Let me sleep with you.” She replied, “What will you give me in exchange?”

Genesis 38:17

from the flock

“from my flock of goats”

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

17 He said, “I will send you a young goat from the flock.” She said, “Will you give me a pledge until you send it?”

UST

17 He replied, “I will send you a young goat from my flock of goats.” She asked, “Will you give me something now for me to keep until you send the goat?”

Genesis 38:18

seal and cord...staff

A "seal" is similar to a coin with a design engraved on it, used to imprint melted wax. The "cord" was put through the seal so the owner could wear it around his neck. A staff was long wooden stick that helped in walking over rough ground.

he went in to her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

she became pregnant by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he caused her to become pregnant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

ULT

18 He said, "What pledge can I give you?" She replied, "Your seal and cord, and the staff that is in your hand." He gave them to her and he went in to her, and she became pregnant by him.

UST

18 He replied, "What do you want me to give to you?" She replied, "Give me the ring that has your name on it that is tied by a cord around your neck, and give me the walking stick that you are holding in your hand." So he gave them to her. Then he slept with her, and she became pregnant.

Genesis 38:19

veil

This was a very thin material used to cover a woman's head and face. See how you translated these in [Genesis 38:14](#).

clothing of her widowhood

"clothing that widows wear." See how you translated these in [Genesis 38:14](#).

ULT

19 She got up and went away. She took off her veil and put on the clothing of her widowhood.

UST

19 After she left, she took off the veil and put her widow's clothes on again.

Genesis 38:20

Adullamite

a person who lives in the village of Adullam. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

receive the pledge

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “take back the pledge”(See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the woman’s hand

Here “hand” emphasizes that they were in here possession. The woman’s hand refers to the woman. Alternate translation: “from the woman” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²⁰ Judah sent the young goat by his friend the Adullamite in order that he might receive the pledge back from the woman’s hand, but he did not find her.

UST

²⁰ Judah gave a young goat to his friend from Adullam, for him to take back to the woman, as he had promised. But his friend could not find the woman.

Genesis 38:21

Adullamite

a person who lives in the village of Adullam. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the men of the place

"some of the men who lived there"

cultic prostitute

"prostitute who serves in the temple"

Enaim

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:14](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

21 Then the Adullamite asked the men of the place, "Where is the cultic prostitute who was at Enaim by the road?" They said, "There has not been a cultic prostitute here."

UST

21 So his friend asked the men who lived there, "Where is the prostitute who was sitting by the road at Enaim?" They replied, "There has never been a prostitute here!"

Genesis 38:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

²² He returned to Judah and said, "I did not find her. Also, the men of the place said, 'There has not been a cultic prostitute here.'"

UST

²² So he went back to Judah and said, "I did not find her. Furthermore, the men who live in that town said, 'There has never been a prostitute here.'"

Genesis 38:23**that we not be put to shame**

When people found out what had happened they would ridicule Judah and laugh at him. This can be made clear and stated in active form. Alternate translation: "or else people will laugh at us when they find out what happened" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)

ULT

²³ Judah said, "Let her keep the things, that we not be put to shame. Indeed, I sent this young goat, but you did not find her."

UST

²³ Judah said, "She can keep the things that I gave to her. If we continued to search for her, people would ridicule us. I tried to send this young goat to her, but you could not find her to give it to her."

Genesis 38:24

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

it was told to Judah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Tamar your daughter-in-law

"Tamar, your oldest son's wife"

she is pregnant by it

Here the word "it" refers to the "prostitution" that she committed.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it has made her pregnant" or "she is pregnant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bring her here

"Bring her out"

let her be burned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we will burn her to death" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [prostitute](#), harlot, whored
- [know](#), knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [prostitute](#), harlot, whored
- [know](#), knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁴ It came about after about three months that it was told to Judah, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has committed prostitution, and indeed, she is pregnant by it." Judah said, "Bring her here and let her be burned."

UST

²⁴ About three months later, someone told Judah, "Your daughter-in-law Tamar has become a prostitute, and now she is pregnant!" Judah said, "Drag her outside of the city and burn her to death!"

Genesis 38:25

When she was brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When they brought her out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

her father-in-law

"her husband's father"

seal and cords and staff

A "seal" is similar to a coin with a design engraved on it, used to make an impression in melted wax. The "cord" was put through the seal so the owner could wear it around his neck. A staff was long wooden stick that helped in walking over rough ground. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

25 When she was brought out, she sent to her father-in-law a message, "By the man who owns these I am pregnant." She said, "Determine please whose these are, the seal and cords and staff."

UST

25 But as they were taking her outside of the city, she gave the ring and walking stick to someone, and told him to take them to Judah, and say to him, "The man who owns these things is the one who caused me to become pregnant." She also said to tell him, "Look at this ring, and the cord that is attached to it, and this walking stick. Whose are they?"

Genesis 38:26

Shelah

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

did not lie with her again

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "did not have sexual relations with her again" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

ULT

²⁶ Judah recognized them and said, "She is more righteous than I am, since I did not give her as a wife to Shelah, my son." He did not lie with her again.

UST

²⁶ When the man did that, Judah recognized the ring and the stick. He said, "She is more right than I am. I did not tell my son Shelah to marry her, as I promised that I would." And Judah did not sleep with her again.

Genesis 38:27

It came about at the time

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

behold

The word “behold” alerts us to the surprise that Tamar was carrying twins, which was previously unknown.

ULT

²⁷ It came about at the time for her to give birth that, behold, twins were in her womb.

UST

²⁷ When it was time for her to give birth, she was surprised that there were twin boys in her womb.

Genesis 38:28

It came about as she was giving birth

This phrase "It came about" marks an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

one put out a hand

"one of the babies put out his hand"

midwife

This is a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child. See how you translated this in [Genesis 35:17](#).

scarlet thread

"bright red thread"

on his hand

"around his wrist"

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²⁸ It came about as she was giving birth one put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his hand and said, "This one came out first."

UST

²⁸ As she was giving birth, one of them put out his hand. So the midwife fastened a scarlet thread around his wrist, saying, "This one came out first."

Genesis 38:29

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

How you have broken out!

This shows the midwife’s surprise to seeing the second baby come out first. Alternate translation: “So this is how you break your way out first!” or “You have burst out first!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he was named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “she named him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Perez

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Perez means ‘breaking out.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

29 But then he drew back his hand, and, behold, his brother came out first. The midwife said, “How you have broken out!” So he was named Perez.

UST

29 But he pulled his hand back inside the womb, and his brother came out first. So she said, “So this is how you break your way out first!” So she named him Perez, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means “breaking out.”

Genesis 38:30

Zerah

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Zerah means 'scarlet or bright red.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

30 Then his brother came out, who had the scarlet thread upon his hand, and he was named Zerah.

UST

30 Then his younger brother, the one who had the scarlet thread around his wrist, came out. And he was named Zerah, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "redness of dawn."

Genesis 39

Genesis 39 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. This is a sign of Yahweh's covenant faithfulness. (See: [people of God](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. He chose to do what was right, even when it could cause him harm. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Genesis 39:1

Joseph was brought down to Egypt

Travelling to Egypt is always considered as going “down” in contrast to going “up” to the promised land. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Ishmaelites had taken Joseph to Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹ Joseph was brought down to Egypt. Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh who was captain of the guard and an Egyptian, bought him from the Ishmaelites, who had brought him down there.

UST

¹ Meanwhile, the descendants of Ishmael took Joseph down to Egypt. There Potiphar bought Joseph from them. Potiphar was an Egyptian who was one of the king's officials and the captain of the king's palace guards.

Genesis 39:2

Yahweh was with Joseph

This means that Yahweh helped Joseph and was always with him.
Alternate translation: “Yahweh guided Joseph and helped him” (See: [Idiom](#))

He lived in the house

Here the author speaks of working in the master’s house as if it were living in the master’s house. Only the most trusted servants were permitted to work in their master’s house. AT : “he worked in the house” (See: [Metaphor](#))

his Egyptian master

Joseph was now Potiphar’s slave.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- temple
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- temple
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

² Yahweh was with Joseph and he became a prosperous man. He lived in the house of his Egyptian master.

UST

² Because Yahweh helped Joseph, he was able to do his work very well. He worked in the house of his Egyptian master.

Genesis 39:3

His master saw that Yahweh was with him

This means that the master saw how Yahweh was helping Joseph.
 Alternate translation: "His master saw that Yahweh was helping him"
 (See: [Idiom](#))

that Yahweh prospered everything that he did

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

ULT

³ His master saw that Yahweh was with him and that Yahweh prospered everything that he did.

UST

³ His master saw that Yahweh was helping Joseph and enabling him to be successful in everything that he did.

Genesis 39:4

Joseph found favor in his sight

“To find favor” means to be approved by someone. The idiom “in his sight” refers to a person’s opinion. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: “Potiphar was pleased with Joseph” or 2) Alternate translation: “Yahweh was pleased with Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

He served Potiphar

This means that he was Potiphar’s personal servant.

Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed

“Potiphar put Joseph in charge of his household and everything that belonged to Potiphar”

put under his care

When something is “put under someone’s care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “he had Joseph care for” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴ Joseph found favor in his sight. He served Potiphar. Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed, he put under his care.

UST

⁴ Joseph’s master was pleased with him, so he appointed him to be his personal servant. Then he appointed him to be the one who would take care of everything in his household and all of his possessions.

Genesis 39:5

It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph

You may need to use the words "Joseph" and "the Egyptian" before using pronouns to refer to them. "The Egyptian made Joseph manager over his house and over everything he possessed, and it came about from the time that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph"

It came about

This phrase is used here to tell the reader that these two verses are background information for the next event. (See: [Background Information](#))

he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed

"Potiphar put Joseph in charge of his household and everything that belonged to him"

blessed

Here "blessed" means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

The blessing of Yahweh was on

Here the author speaks of the blessing that Yahweh gave as if it were a physical covering put over something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field

This refers his household and his crops and livestock. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Potiphar's household and all of his crops and livestock" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁵ It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph. The blessing of Yahweh was on everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field.

UST

⁵ From the time Potiphar appointed Joseph to take care of everything in his household and all that he owned, Yahweh blessed the people who lived in Potiphar's house because of Joseph. He also caused Potiphar's crops to grow well.

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- temple
- temple
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- house

Genesis 39:6

Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph's care

When something is “put under someone's care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “So Potiphar put Joseph in charge of everything that he had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate

He did not have to worry about anything in his household; he only had to make decisions about what he wanted to eat. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Potiphar only had to think about what he wanted to eat. He did not have to worry about anything else in his house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

Now

The word “now” marks a break in the story line as the author gives background information about Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

handsome and attractive

Both of the words have same meaning. They refer to Joseph's pleasing appearance. He was likely good-looking and strong. Alternate translation: “handsome and strong” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- hand
- bread
- devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- hand
- bread
- devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁶ Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph's care. He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome and attractive.

UST

⁶ Potiphar allowed Joseph to take care of everything that he owned. Potiphar needed to decide only about the food he ate. He did not worry about anything else in his house. Now Joseph was well built and handsome.

Genesis 39:7

It came about after this that

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “have sexual relations with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁷ It came about after this that his master's wife cast her eyes on Joseph and said, “Lie with me.”

UST

⁷ Because of that, after a while, his master's wife started to look fondly at Joseph. So one day she said to him, “Sleep with me!”

Genesis 39:8

Look

“Listen.” Joseph uses this word to get Potiphar’s wife’s attention.

my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house

“my master has no concern about his household with me in charge.” This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “my master trusts me with his household” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

he has put everything that he owns under my care

When something is “put under someone’s care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “he has put me in charge of everything that belongs to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁸ But he refused and said to his master’s wife, “Look, my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house, and he has put everything that he owns under my care.

UST

⁸ But he refused, saying to his master’s wife, “Listen! My master is not concerned about anything in this house. He has appointed me to take care of everything that he owns.

Genesis 39:9

No one is greater in this house than I am

Here the author speaks of authority as if it were greatness. Alternate translation: "I have more authority in this house than anyone else" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He has not kept back anything from me but you

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "He has given me everything except you" (See: [Litotes](#))

How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?

Joseph uses a question for emphasis. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I certainly cannot do such a wicked thing and sin against God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁹ No one is greater in this house than I am. He has not kept back anything from me but you, because you are his wife. How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?"

UST

⁹ No one in this household has more authority than I do. The only thing that he has not allowed me to have is you, because you are his wife! So how could I do this wicked thing that you are asking me to do? I would be sinning against God if I did that!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [punish](#), [punished](#), [punishment](#), [unpunished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [punish](#), [punished](#), [punishment](#), [unpunished](#)

Genesis 39:10

She spoke to Joseph day after day

This means that she kept asking him to sleep with her. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "She kept on asking Joseph to sleep with her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to lie with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "to have sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

to be with her

"to be near her"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

¹⁰ She spoke to Joseph day after day, but he refused to lie with her or to be with her.

UST

¹⁰ She kept on asking Joseph day after day to sleep with her, but he refused. He would not even go near her.

Genesis 39:11

It came about

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story.
(See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

None of the men of the house

“None of the other men who worked in the house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

11 It came about one day that he went into the house to do his work. None of the men of the house were there in the house.

UST

11 One day Joseph went into the house to do his work, and none of the other household servants were in the house.

Genesis 39:12

Lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

fled, and went outside

"and quickly ran outside" or "and quickly ran out of the house"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹² She caught him by his clothes and said, "Lie with me." He left his clothing in her hand, fled, and went outside.

UST

¹² Potiphar's wife grabbed his clothing and said, "Sleep with me!" Joseph ran out of the house, but his clothing was still in her hand!

Genesis 39:13

It came about

“Then” The phrase “it came about” is used here to mark the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

had fled outside

“had quickly ran out of the house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

ULT

¹³ It came about, when she saw that he had left his clothing in her hand and had fled outside,

UST

¹³ When she saw that he had run outside leaving his clothing in her hand,

Genesis 39:14

the men of her house

“the men who worked in her house”

See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”

He came in to me to lie with me

Here Potiphar’s wife is accusing Joseph of trying to seize her and have sexual relations with her. “He came into my room to have sexual relations with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- voice
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

14 that she called to the men of her house and told them, “See, Potiphar has brought in a Hebrew to mock us. He came in to me to lie with me, and I screamed.

UST

14 she called the household servants. She said to them, “Look! This Hebrew man that my husband brought to us is insulting us! He came into where I was and tried to force me to sleep with him, but I screamed loudly.

Genesis 39:15

It came about when he heard me scream, that he

“When he heard me scream, he.” The phrase “it came about” is used here to mark the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

ULT

15 It came about when he heard me scream, that he left his clothing with me, fled, and went outside.”

UST

15 As soon as he heard me scream, he left his clothing with me and ran outside!”

Genesis 39:16

his master

“Joseph’s master.” This refers to Potiphar.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- house

ULT

16 She set his clothing next to her until his master came home.

UST

16 She kept the clothing beside her until her husband, Joseph’s master, came home.

Genesis 39:17

She told him this explanation

"She explained it like this"

brought to us

The word "us" refers to Potiphar, his wife, and includes the rest of the household. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

came in to mock me

"came in to make a fool of me." Here, the word "mock" is a euphemism for "to seize and to sleep with." Alternate translation: "came into where I was and tried to force me to sleep with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

17 She told him this explanation, "The Hebrew servant whom you brought to us, came in to mock me.

UST

17 Then she told him this story: "That Hebrew slave whom you brought here came into where I was and tried to force me to sleep with him!"

Genesis 39:18

It came about that

"Then." Potiphar's wife uses this phrase to mark the next event in the account she is telling him about Joseph trying to sleep with her. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

fled outside

"ran quickly out of the house"

Translation Words - ULT

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

18 It came about that when I screamed, he left his clothing with me and fled outside."

UST

18 As soon as I screamed loudly, he ran outside, leaving his clothing beside me!"

Genesis 39:19

It came about that

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

his master

“Joseph’s master.” This refers to Potiphar. This information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Joseph’s master, Potiphar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

heard the explanation his wife told him

“heard his wife explain to him.” The word “his” and “him” here refer to Potiphar.

he became very angry

“Potiphar became very angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 It came about that, when his master heard the explanation his wife told him, “This is what your servant did to me,” he became very angry.

UST

19 When Joseph’s master heard this story that his wife told him, and when she said, “This is how your slave treated me,” he was very angry.

Genesis 39:20

the place where the king's prisoners were confined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place where the king put his prisoners" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He was there

"Joseph stayed there"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- Joseph (OT)
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- temple
- Joseph (OT)
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

²⁰ Joseph's master took him and put him in prison, the place where the king's prisoners were confined. He was there in the prison.

UST

²⁰ Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there.

Genesis 39:21

But Yahweh was with Joseph

This refers to how Yahweh took care of Joseph and was kind to him. Alternate translation: “But Yahweh was kind to Joseph” or “But Yahweh took care of Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

showed covenant faithfulness to him

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “faithfully.” Alternate translation: “was faithful to his covenant with him” or “faithfully loved him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden

This means Yahweh caused the prison warden to approve of Joseph and to treat him well. Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused the prison warden to be pleased with Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

the prison warden

“the prison manager” or “the man in charge of the prison”

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house

ULT

21 But Yahweh was with Joseph and showed covenant faithfulness to him. He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden.

UST

21 But Yahweh was kind to Joseph and helped him because of his covenant with his ancestors; he caused the prison warden to be pleased with him.

Genesis 39:22

gave into Joseph's hand

Here "hand" represents Joseph's power or trust. Alternate translation: "put Joseph in charge of" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it

"Joseph was in charge of everything they did there"

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

22 The prison warden gave into Joseph's hand all the prisoners who were in the prison. Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it.

UST

22 So the prison warden put Joseph in charge of all those who were in the prison, and in charge of all the work that was done there.

Genesis 39:23

because Yahweh was with him

This refers to how Yahweh helped Joseph and guided him. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh guided Joseph" (See: [Idiom](#))

Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²³ The prison warden did not worry about anything that was in his hand, because Yahweh was with him. Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered.

UST

²³ The warden was not concerned with anything that Joseph was taking care of, because Yahweh helped Joseph to do all his work well.

Genesis 40

Genesis 40 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Interpretation of dreams

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. (See: [glory, glorious, glorify](#))

Genesis 40:1

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the cupbearer

This is the person who brought drinks to the king.

king's baker

This is the person who made food for the king.

offended their master

"upset their master"

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cupbearer
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cupbearer
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

¹ It came about that after these things, the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and king's baker offended their master, the king of Egypt.

UST

¹ Some time later, two of the king of Egypt's officials did things that displeased him. One was his chief drink server and the other was his chief baker.

Genesis 40:2

the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers

“the leading cupbearer and the leading baker”

Translation Words - ULT

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

² Pharaoh was angry with his two officials, the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers.

UST

² The king became angry with both of them.

Genesis 40:3

He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard

“He put them in the prison that was in the house that was overseen by the captain of the guard”

He put them

The king did not put them in prison but rather he commanded for them to be imprisoned. Alternate translation: “He had them put” or “He commanded his guard to put” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the same prison where Joseph was confined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This was the same prison that Joseph was in” or “This was the same prison Potiphar put Joseph in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³ He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, in the same prison where Joseph was confined.

UST

³ So he had them put in prison, in the house of the captain of the palace guards. That was the place where Joseph was being kept.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house
- house

Genesis 40:4

They remained in custody for some time

"They remained in prison for a long time"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁴ The captain of the guard assigned Joseph to them, and he served them. They remained in custody for some time.

UST

⁴ The two men were in prison for a long time. During that time, the captain of the palace guards appointed Joseph to bring them the things they needed.

Genesis 40:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship
- dream
- dream
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- Egypt, Egyptian
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship
- dream
- dream
- dream

ULT

⁵ Both of them dreamed a dream—the cupbearer and the baker of the king of Egypt who were confined in the prison—each man had his own dream in the same night, and each dream had its own interpretation.

UST

⁵ One night the king's chief drink server and chief baker each had a dream. Each dream had a different meaning.

Genesis 40:6

Joseph came to them

"Joseph came to the cupbearer and the baker"

Behold, they were sad

The word "behold" here shows that Joseph was surprised by what he saw. Alternate translation: "He was surprised to see that they were sad" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

⁶ Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them. Behold, they were sad.

UST

⁶ The next morning, when Joseph came to them, he saw that both of them were looking sad.

Genesis 40:7

Pharaoh's officials who were with him

This refers to the cupbearer and the baker.

in custody in his master's house

"In prison in him master's house." "His master" refers to Joseph's master, the captain of the guard.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial
- house

ULT

⁷ He asked Pharaoh's officials who were with him in custody in his master's house, saying, "Why do you look so sad today?"

UST

⁷ So he asked them, "Why do you look so sad today?"

Genesis 40:8

Do not interpretations belong to God?

Joseph uses a question for emphasis. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Interpretations belong to God!" or "It is God who can tell the meaning of dreams!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Tell me, please

Joseph asks for them to tell him their dreams. Alternate translation: "Tell me the dreams, please" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁸ They said to him, "We have both dreamed a dream and no one can interpret it." Joseph said to them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Tell me, please."

UST

⁸ One of them answered, "We both had dreams last night, but there is no one who can tell us the meaning of the dreams." Joseph said to them, "It is God who can tell the meaning of dreams. So tell me what you dreamed, and God will tell me the meaning."

Genesis 40:9

The chief of the cupbearers

The most important person who brings drinks to the king. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:2](#).

In my dream, behold, a vine was in front of me

“In my dream, I saw a vine in front of me!” The cupbearer uses word “behold” here to show that he was surprised by what he saw in his dream and to alert Joseph to pay attention.

Translation Words - ULT

- [vine](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [vine](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁹ The chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph. He said to him, “In my dream, behold, a vine was in front of me.

UST

⁹ So the king’s chief drink server told his dream to Joseph. He said, “In my dream I saw a grapevine in front of me.

Genesis 40:10

the clusters of grapes ripened

“its clusters ripened into grapes”

Translation Words - ULT

- grape, grapevine

Translation Words - UST

- grape, grapevine

ULT

¹⁰ In the vine were three branches. As it budded, its blossoms came out and the clusters of grapes ripened.

UST

¹⁰ On the vine there were three branches. The branches budded, then they blossomed, and then they produced clusters of grapes.

Genesis 40:11

squeezed them

This means that he squeezed the juice out of them. Alternate translation: "squeezed the juice from them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- hand

ULT

11 Pharaoh's cup was in my hand. I took the grapes and squeezed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I placed the cup into Pharaoh's hand."

UST

11 I was holding the king's cup, so I took the ripe grapes and squeezed the juice into the cup. Then I gave the cup to the king to drink the juice."

Genesis 40:12

This is the interpretation of it

"Here is what the dream means"

The three branches are three days

"The three branches represent three days"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

¹² Joseph said to him, "This is the interpretation of it. The three branches are three days.

UST

¹² God immediately told Joseph what the dream meant. So Joseph said to him, "This is the meaning of your dream: The three branches of the vine represent three days.

Genesis 40:13

Within three days

"In three more days"

will lift up your head

Here Joseph speaks of Pharaoh releasing the cupbearer from prison as if Pharaoh were causing him to lift up his head. Alternate translation: "will release you from prison" (See: [Metaphor](#))

restore you to your office

"will give you back your job"

just as when

"just as you did when"

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

13 Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your office. You will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand, just as when you were his cupbearer.

UST

13 Within three days the king will release you from prison. He will let you do the work that you did before. You will take cups of wine to the king as you did before, when you were his drink server.

Genesis 40:14**please show kindness to me**

“please be kind to me”

Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison

Joseph means for the cupbearer to tell Pharaoh about him so that Pharaoh will release him from prison. Alternate translation: “Help me get out of this prison by telling Pharaoh about me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

14 But think of me when it goes well with you, and please show kindness to me. Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison.

UST

14 But when you are out of prison and everything goes well for you, please do not forget me.

Genesis 40:15

For indeed I was abducted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For indeed people took me" or "For indeed the Ishmaelites took me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the land of the Hebrews

"the land where the Hebrew people live"

Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon

"and also while I have been here in Egypt, I have done nothing for which I deserved to be put in prison"

ULT

15 For indeed I was abducted out of the land of the Hebrews. Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon."

UST

15 People took me away by force from the land where my fellow Hebrews live. I did nothing wrong there, and also while I have been here in Egypt, I have done nothing for which I deserved to be put in prison. So be kind to me and tell the king about me, so that he will release me from this prison!"

Genesis 40:16

the chief of the bakers

This refers to the leading person who made food for the king. See how this was translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

I also had a dream, and

"I also had a dream, and in my dream,"

behold, three baskets of bread were on my head

"there were three baskets of bread on my head!" The baker uses word "behold" here to show that he was surprised by what he saw in his dream and to alert Joseph to pay attention.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Joseph (OT)
- head
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Joseph (OT)
- head
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

16 When the chief of the bakers saw that the interpretation was favorable, he said to Joseph, "I also had a dream, and, behold, three baskets of bread were on my head.

UST

16 When the chief baker heard that the meaning of the dream of the king's drink server was very good for the chief drink server, he also said to Joseph, "I also had a dream. In the dream I was surprised to see three baskets of bread stacked on my head.

Genesis 40:17

baked goods for Pharaoh

“baked foods for Pharaoh”

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- head

Translation Words - UST

- devour
- head

ULT

17 In the top basket there were all kinds of baked goods for Pharaoh, but the birds ate them out of the basket on my head.”

UST

17 In the top basket there were many kinds of baked goods for the king, but birds were eating them from the top basket that was on my head!”

Genesis 40:18

This is the interpretation

"Here is what the dream means"

The three baskets are three days

"The three baskets represent three days"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Joseph answered and said, "This is the interpretation. The three baskets are three days.

UST

¹⁸ God again told Joseph what the dream meant, so he said, "The three baskets also represent three days.

Genesis 40:19

will lift up your head from you

Joseph also used the phrase “will lift up your head” when he spoke to the cupbearer in [Genesis 40:13](#). Here it has a different meaning. Possible meanings are 1) “will lift up your head to put a rope around your neck” or 2) “will lift up your head to cut it off.”

flesh

Here “flesh” literally means the soft tissue on a person’s body.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [head](#)
- [hang, hung](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [head](#)
- [hang, hung](#)

ULT

19 Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and will hang you on a tree. The birds will eat your flesh off you.”

UST

19 Within three days the king will command that your head be cut off. Then your body will be hung on a tree, and vultures will come and eat your flesh.”

Genesis 40:20

It came about on the third day that

"Afterward, on the third day." The phrase "it came about" is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

He made a feast

"He had a feast"

the chief of the cupbearers

This was the leading person who prepared and served drinks to the king. See how these were translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

the chief of the bakers

This refers to the leading person who made food for the king. See how this was translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

²⁰ It came about on the third day that it was Pharaoh's birthday. He made a feast for all his servants. He lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers, among his servants.

UST

²⁰ The third day after that was the king's birthday. On that day the king invited all his officials to celebrate his birthday. During the celebration, while they were all gathered there, the king summoned his chief drink server and chief baker from the prison.

Genesis 40:21

He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility

The chief of the cupbearer's "responsibility" refers to his job as chief of the cupbearers. Alternate translation: "He gave the chief of the cupbearers his job back" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [return](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [return](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

²¹ He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility, and he put the cup into Pharaoh's hand again.

UST

²¹ He said that his chief drink server could have his previous job again, so once again he started to take cups of wine to the king.

Genesis 40:22

But he hanged the chief of the bakers

Pharaoh did not personally hang the baker, rather he commanded for him to be hanged. Alternate translation: “But he commanded for the chief of the bakers to be hanged” or “But he commanded his guards to hang the chief of the bakers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

just as Joseph had interpreted to them

This refers to when Joseph interpreted their dreams. Alternate translation: “just as Joseph had said would happen when he interpreted the two men’s dreams” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²² But he hanged the chief of the bakers, just as Joseph had interpreted to them.

UST

²² But he commanded that the chief baker should be killed by being hanged, just as Joseph had said would happen when he told the two men the meaning of their dreams.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hang, hung](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hang, hung](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Genesis 40:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

²³ Yet the chief cupbearer did not remember Joseph, but forgot about him.

UST

²³ But the chief drink server did not think about Joseph. Instead, he forgot to do what Joseph asked him to do.

Genesis 41

Genesis 41 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Interpretation of dreams

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. (See: [glory, glorious, glorify](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. It gained him great favor in the eyes of Pharaoh and helped to save his people. (See: [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#), [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [save, saved, safe, salvation](#))

Genesis 41:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

at the end of two full years

Two years passed after Joseph correctly interpreted the dreams of Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker, who had been in prison with Joseph.

Behold, he stood

The word "behold" here marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "He was surprised because he was standing"

he stood

"Pharaoh was standing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

¹ It came about at the end of two full years that Pharaoh had a dream. Behold, he stood by the Nile.

UST

¹ Two complete years later, the king of Egypt had a dream. In the dream, he was standing alongside the Nile River.

Genesis 41:2

desirable and fat

“healthy and fat”

grazed in the reeds

“were eating the grass along the side of the river”

reeds

tall, thin grasses that grow in wet areas

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)

ULT

² Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, desirable and fat, and they grazed in the reeds.

UST

² Suddenly seven healthy fat cows appeared. They started eating the grass that was on the riverbank.

Genesis 41:3

Behold, seven other cows

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was again surprised by what he saw.

undesirable and thin

“sick and thin”

bank of the river

“beside the river” or “riverside.” This is the higher ground along the edge of a river.

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

³ Behold, seven other cows came up after them out of the Nile, undesirable and thin. They stood by the other cows on the bank of the river.

UST

³ Soon seven other cows, unhealthy-looking and thin, came up behind them from the Nile River. They stood alongside the fat cows that were on the riverbank.

Genesis 41:4

undesirable and thin

“weak and skinny.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

desirable and fat

“healthy and well-fed.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

woke up

“awakened”

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

⁴ Then the undesirable and thin cows ate the seven desirable and fat cows. Then Pharaoh woke up.

UST

⁴ Then the unhealthy thin cows ate the seven healthy fat cows. And then the king woke up.

Genesis 41:5

a second time

The word “second” is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Behold, seven heads

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he saw.

heads of grain

The heads are parts of the corn plant on which the seeds grow.

came up on one stalk

“grew up on one stem.” The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant.

on one stalk, wholesome and good

“on one stock and they were healthy and beautiful”

ULT

⁵ Then he slept and dreamed a second time. Behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, wholesome and good.

UST

⁵ The king went to sleep again, and he had another dream. This time he saw seven heads of grain that were full of kernels of grain and ripe, and all growing on one stalk.

Genesis 41:6

thin and scorched by the east wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that were thin and burned because of the hot wind from the east” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the east wind

Wind from the east blew in from the desert. The heat of the east wind was often very destructive.

sprouted up

“grew up” or “developed”

ULT

⁶ Behold, seven heads, thin and scorched by the east wind, sprouted up after them.

UST

⁶ After that, the king saw that seven other heads of grain sprouted on that stalk. They were thin and had been dried up by the hot east wind.

Genesis 41:7

The thin heads

The words “of grain” are understood. Alternate translation: “The thin heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

swallowed up

“ate.” Pharaoh is dreaming that unhealthy corn could eat healthy corn just like a person eats food.

wholesome and full heads

“healthy and good heads.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:5](#).

woke up

“awakened”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he had seen.

it was a dream

“he had been dreaming”

Translation Words - ULT

- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dream](#)

ULT

7 The thin heads swallowed up the seven wholesome and full heads. Pharaoh woke up, and, behold, it was a dream.

UST

7 Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up the seven ripe full heads. Then the king woke up. He realized that he had been dreaming.

Genesis 41:8

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

his spirit was troubled

Here the word “spirit” refers to his inner being or his emotions. Alternate translation: “he was troubled in his inner being” or “he was troubled” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

He sent and called

It is understood that he sent servants. Alternate translation: “He sent his servants to call” or “He sent his servants to summon” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

all the magicians and wise men of Egypt

Ancient kings and rulers used magicians and wise men as advisers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁸ It came about in the morning that his spirit was troubled. He sent and called for all the magicians and wise men of Egypt. Pharaoh told them his dreams, but there was no one who could interpret them to Pharaoh.

UST

⁸ But the next morning he was worried about the meaning of the dream. So he summoned all the magicians and wise men who lived in Egypt. He told them what he had dreamed, but none of them could tell him the meaning of the two dreams.

Genesis 41:9

chief cupbearer

The most important person who brings drinks to the king. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Today I am thinking about my offenses

The word "Today" is used for emphasis. His "offenses" are that he should have told Pharaoh something much earlier but he did not. Alternate translation: "I just realized that I forgot to tell you something"

Translation Words - ULT

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

⁹ Then the chief cupbearer said to Pharaoh, "Today I am thinking about my offenses.

UST

⁹ Then the chief drink server said to the king, "Now I remember something that I should have told you! I made a mistake by forgetting to tell it to you.

Genesis 41:10

Pharaoh was angry

The cupbearer is referring to Pharaoh in third person. This is a common way for someone with less power to speak to someone with greater power. Alternate translation: "You, Pharaoh, were angry" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

with his servants

Here "his" refers to Pharaoh. Here "servants" refers to the cupbearer and the chief baker. Alternate translation: "with us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me

"put the chief baker and me in the prison where the captain of the guard was in charge." Here "house" refers to the prison.

the captain of the guard

The soldier in charge of the royal guards. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:3](#).

the chief baker

The most important person who made food for the king. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

¹⁰ Pharaoh was angry with his servants, and put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me.

UST

¹⁰ One time you were angry with two of us. So you put me and the chief baker in the prison in the house of the captain of the palace guards.

Genesis 41:11

We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I

"One night we both had dreams"

We dreamed

Here "We" refers to the chief cupbearer and the chief baker. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream

"Our dreams had different meanings"

Translation Words - ULT

- dream
- dream
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- dream
- dream
- dream

ULT

11 We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I. We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream.

UST

11 While we were there, one night each of us had a dream, and the dreams had different meanings.

Genesis 41:12

General Information:

The chief cupbearer continues to speak to Pharaoh.

There was with us there

"In prison there was with the chief baker and me"

the captain of the guard

The soldier in charge of the royal guards. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:3](#).

We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams

"We told him our dreams and he explained their meanings to us"

He interpreted for each of us according to his dream

Here "his" refers to the cupbearer and baker individually, not to the one interpreting the dream. Alternate translation: "He explained what was going to happen to both of us" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

¹² There was with us there a young Hebrew man, a servant of the captain of the guard. We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams. He interpreted for each of us according to his dream.

UST

¹² There was a young Hebrew man there with us. He was a servant of the captain of the palace guards. We told him what we had dreamed, and he told us what our dreams meant. He told each of us the meaning of our dreams.

Genesis 41:13

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

as he interpreted for us, so it happened

“what he explained about the dreams is what later happened”

Pharaoh restored me to my post

Here the cupbearer uses Pharaoh’s title in speaking to him as a way of honoring him. Alternate translation: “You allowed me to return to my job” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the other one

“the chief baker”

he hanged

Here “he” refers to Pharaoh. And, it stands for the soldiers that Pharaoh commanded to hang the chief baker. Alternate translation: “you ordered your soldiers to hang” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hang, hung](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hang, hung](#)

ULT

¹³ It came about as he interpreted for us, so it happened. Pharaoh restored me to my post, but the other one he hanged.”

UST

¹³ What happened after that was exactly the same as the meanings that he told us: You said I could have my previous job again, but the other man was killed by being hanged.”

Genesis 41:14

Pharaoh sent and called for

It is understood that Pharaoh sent servants. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh sent his servants to get Joseph" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

out of the dungeon

"out of the jail" or "out of the prison"

He shaved himself

It was common practice to shave both the facial and head hair when preparing to go before Pharaoh.

came in to Pharaoh

Here "came" can be stated as "went." Alternate translation: "went before Pharaoh" (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

14 Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph. They quickly took him out of the dungeon. He shaved himself, changed his clothes, and came in to Pharaoh.

UST

14 When the king heard that, he told some servants to bring Joseph to him, and they quickly brought Joseph out of the prison. Joseph shaved and put on better clothes, and then he went and stood in front of the king.

Genesis 41:15

there is no interpreter for it

“no one can explain the meaning”

you can interpret it

“you can explain its meaning”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- dream
- dream
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- dream
- dream
- dream

ULT

15 Pharaoh said to Joseph, “I had a dream, but there is no interpreter for it. But I have heard about you, that when you hear a dream you can interpret it.”

UST

15 The king said to Joseph, “I had two dreams, and no one can tell me what they mean. But someone told me that when you hear someone tell about a dream he has had, you can tell that person what the dream means.”

Genesis 41:16

It is not in me

"I am not the one who can explain the meaning"

God will answer Pharaoh with favor

"God will answer Pharaoh favorably"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Joseph (OT)
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Joseph (OT)
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

16 Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, "It is not in me. God will answer Pharaoh with favor."

UST

16 But Joseph replied to the king, "No, I cannot do that. It is God who knows the meaning of dreams, but he will enable me to tell you their meaning, and they will mean something good."

Genesis 41:17**behold, I stood**

Pharaoh uses the word “behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

bank of the Nile

This is the higher ground along the edge of the Nile River. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#). Alternate translation: “beside the Nile”

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

17 Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, “In my dream, behold, I stood on the bank of the Nile.

UST

17 The king said to Joseph, “In my first dream I was standing on the bank of the Nile River.

Genesis 41:18

Behold, seven cows

Pharaoh uses the word “Behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

fat and desirable

“well-fed and healthy.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

grazed among the reeds

“were eating the grass along the side of the river.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)

ULT

18 Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, fat and desirable, and they grazed among the reeds.

UST

18 Suddenly seven healthy fat cows came up out of the river, and they started eating the grass that was on the riverbank.

Genesis 41:19

Behold, seven other cows

Pharaoh uses the word “Behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

undesirable, and thin

“weak, and skinny.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

such undesirableness

The abstract noun “undesirableness” can be translated with an adjective. Alternate translation: “such ugly cows” or “such worthless looking cows” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

19 Behold, seven other cows came up after them, weak, very undesirable, and thin. I never saw in all the land of Egypt such undesirableness like them.

UST

19 Soon seven other cows, ugly and thin ones, came up behind them from the river. I never saw such ugly cows in all the land of Egypt!

Genesis 41:20

fat cows

“well-fed cows.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)

ULT

20 The thin and undesirable cows ate up the first seven fat cows.

UST

20 The thin ugly cows ate the seven fat cows that came up first.

Genesis 41:21**it could not be known that they had eaten them**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one would have been able to tell that the thin cows had eaten the fat cows” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

21 When they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them, for they were still as undesirable as before. Then I awoke.

UST

21 But afterwards, no one would have known that the thin cows ate them, because they were just as ugly as they were before. Then I woke up.

Genesis 41:22

General Information:

Pharaoh continues telling Joseph his dreams.

I looked in my dream

This begins Pharaoh's next dream after he woke up and went back to sleep. Alternate translation: "Then I dreamed again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

behold, seven heads

Pharaoh uses the word "Behold" to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

seven heads

The words "of grain" are understood. Alternate translation: "seven heads of grain" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

came up upon one stalk

"grew up on one stem." The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:5](#).

ULT

²² I looked in my dream, and, behold, seven heads came up upon one stalk, full and good.

UST

²² Then I had another dream. I saw seven heads of grain. They were full of kernels of grain and ripe, and they were all growing on one stalk.

Genesis 41:23

withered

dead and dried

sprang up

“grew up” or “developed”

ULT

²³ Behold, seven more heads—withered, thin, and scorched by the east wind—sprang up after them.

UST

²³ Then to my surprise I saw seven other heads of grain that sprouted. They were thin and had been dried up by the hot east wind.

Genesis 41:24

The thin heads

The words “of grain” are understood. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:7](#). Alternate translation: “The thin heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

swallowed up

“ate.” Pharaoh is dreaming that unhealthy corn could eat healthy corn just like a person eats food. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:7](#).

there was none that could

“there was not a single one that could” or “none of them could”

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)

ULT

24 The thin heads swallowed up the seven good heads. I told these dreams to the magicians, but there was none that could explain it to me.”

UST

24 The thin heads of grain swallowed the seven good heads. I told these dreams to the magicians, but none of them could explain to me what they meant.”

Genesis 41:25

The dreams of Pharaoh are the same

It is implied that the meanings are the same. Alternate translation: "Both dreams mean the same thing" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in the third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: "God is showing you what he will soon do" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

²⁵ Joseph said to Pharaoh, "The dreams of Pharaoh are the same. What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh.

UST

²⁵ Then Joseph said to the king, "Both your dreams have the same meaning. God is revealing to you in your dreams what he is about to do.

Genesis 41:26

seven good heads

The words “of grain” are understood. Alternate translation: “seven good heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- dream

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- dream

ULT

²⁶ The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven good heads are seven years. The dreams are the same.

UST

²⁶ The seven healthy cows represent seven years. The seven good heads of grain also represent seven years. The two dreams both have the same meaning.

Genesis 41:27

General Information:

Joseph continues his interpretation of Pharaoh's dreams

thin and undesirable cows

"skinny and weak cows." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

seven thin heads scorched by the east wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "seven thin heads of grain scorched because of the hot wind from the east" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [famine](#)

ULT

²⁷ The seven thin and undesirable cows that came up after them are seven years, and also the seven thin heads scorched by the east wind will be seven years of famine.

UST

²⁷ The seven thin ugly cows that came up behind them and the seven worthless heads of grain that were dried up by the hot east wind each represent seven years of famine.

Genesis 41:28

That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh...revealed to Pharaoh

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in the third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "These events will happen just as I have told you... revealed to you, Pharaoh" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he has revealed

"he has made known"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

²⁸ That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh. What God is about to do he has revealed to Pharaoh.

UST

²⁸ It will happen just as I have told you, because God has revealed to you what he is about to do.

Genesis 41:29

Look, seven

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: seven”

seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt

This speaks about the years of abundance as if time is something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “there will be seven years in which there will be plenty of food throughout the land of Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁹ Look, seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt.

UST

²⁹ There will be seven years in which there will be plenty of food throughout the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:30

General Information:

Joseph continues interpreting Pharaoh's dreams.

Seven years of famine will come after them

This speaks about the seven years of famine as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: "Then there will be seven years when there is very little food" (See: [Metaphor](#))

all the abundance will be forgotten...and the famine will devastate the land

Joseph expresses an idea in two ways to emphasize its importance. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt

Here "land" refers to the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Egypt will forget about the years in which there was plenty of food" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

will devastate the land

Here "land" refers to the soil, the people, and the entire country. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [famine](#)

ULT

30 Seven years of famine will come after them, and all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt, and the famine will devastate the land.

UST

30 Then there will be seven years of famine. Then people will forget all the years when there was plenty of food, because the famine that will come afterward will ruin the country.

Genesis 41:31

The abundance will not be remembered...because of the famine that will follow

Joseph expresses an idea in two ways to emphasize its importance. (See: [Parallelism](#))

because of the famine that will follow

This speaks about the famine as if it were a thing that travels and follows behind something else. Alternate translation: “because of the time of famine that will happen afterwards” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

³¹ The abundance will not be remembered in the land because of the famine that will follow, for it will be very severe.

UST

³¹ The people will forget how plentiful food was previously, because the famine will be very terrible.

Genesis 41:32

That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God gave you two dreams to show you that he will certainly cause these things to happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³² That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God, and God will soon do it.

UST

³² The reason God gave to you two dreams is that he has firmly decided that this will happen, and he will cause it to happen very soon.

Genesis 41:33

General Information:

Joseph continues to address Pharaoh

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let Pharaoh look

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “You, Pharaoh, should look” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

put him over the land of Egypt

The phrase “put him over” means to give someone authority. Alternate translation: “give him authority over the kingdom of Egypt” or “put him in charge of the kingdom of Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

land of Egypt

Here “land” stands for all the people and everything in Egypt. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)

ULT

33 Now let Pharaoh look for a man discerning and wise, and put him over the land of Egypt.

UST

33 Now I suggest that you should choose a man who is wise and can make good decisions. I suggest that you appoint him to direct the affairs of the whole country.

Genesis 41:34

let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt

The word “fifth” is a fraction. Alternate translation: “let them divide the crops of Egypt into five equal parts, then take one of those parts” (See: [Fractions](#))

in the seven abundant years

“during the seven years in which there is plenty of food”

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [oversee](#), [overseer](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [oversee](#), [overseer](#)

ULT

34 Let Pharaoh appoint officials over the land, and let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt in the seven abundant years.

UST

34 You should also appoint supervisors over the country, in order that they can arrange to collect one-fifth of all the grain that is harvested during the seven years when food is plentiful.

Genesis 41:35

General Information:

Joseph continues to counsel Pharaoh

Let them gather

“Allow the overseers to gather”

of these good years that are coming

This speaks of years as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “during the good years that will soon happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh

The phrase “under the authority of Pharaoh” means Pharaoh gives them authority. Alternate translation: “use the authority of Pharaoh to store the grain” (See: [Idiom](#))

They should preserve it

The word “they” refers to the overseers and represents the soldiers that they should command to guard the grain. Alternate translation: “The overseers should leave soldiers there to guard the grain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [hand](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [hand](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

35 Let them gather all the food of these good years that are coming and store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh, for food to be used in the cities. They should preserve it.

UST

35 They should collect this amount of grain during those seven years that are coming, when there will be plenty of food. Each of the cities should supervise and protect the food that is stored up.

Genesis 41:36

The food will be a supply for the land

Here “land” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “This food will be for the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine

Here “land” stands for the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This way the people will not starve during the famine” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- cut off
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine

ULT

36 The food will be a supply for the land for the seven years of famine which will be in the land of Egypt. In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine.”

UST

36 This grain should be kept so that it can be eaten during the seven years when there will be a famine here in Egypt, so that the people in this country will not die from hunger.”

Genesis 41:37

This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh and his servants thought this was a good plan" (See: [Metaphor](#))

his servants

This means Pharaoh's officials.

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

³⁷ This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.

UST

³⁷ The king and his officials thought that this would be a good plan.

Genesis 41:38

such a man as this

“a man like the one Joseph described”

in whom is the Spirit of God

“in whom the Spirit of God lives”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

38 Pharaoh said to his servants, “Can we find such a man as this, in whom is the Spirit of God?”

UST

38 So the king said to them, “Can we find any other man like Joseph, a man to whom God has given his spirit?”

Genesis 41:39

there is none so discerning

"no one else is as capable in making decisions." See how you translated "discerning" in [Genesis 41:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [understand, understanding, thinking](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

39 So Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has shown you all this, there is none so discerning and wise as you.

UST

39 Then the king said to Joseph, "Because God has revealed all this to you, it seems to me that there is no one who is as wise as you and who can decide wisely about things.

Genesis 41:40

You will be over my house

Here “house” stands for Pharaoh’s palace and the people in the palace. The phrase “will be over” means Joseph will have authority over. Alternate translation: “You will be in charge of everyone in my palace” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

according to your word will all my people be ruled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will rule over my people and they will do what you command” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Only in the throne

Here “throne” stands for Pharaoh’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “Only in my role as king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ You will be over my house, and according to your word will all my people be ruled. Only in the throne will I be greater than you.”

UST

⁴⁰ So I will put you in charge of everything in my palace. All the people here in Egypt must obey what you command. Only because I am king will I have more authority than you.”

Genesis 41:41

See, I have put you

The word “See” adds emphasis to what Pharaoh says next. Alternate translation: “Look, I have put you”

I have put you over all the land of Egypt

The phrase “put you over” means to give authority. Here “land” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “I put you in charge of everyone in Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

41 Pharaoh said to Joseph, “See, I have put you over all the land of Egypt.”

UST

41 Then the king said to Joseph, “I am now putting you in charge of the whole country of Egypt.”

Genesis 41:42

Pharaoh took off his signet ring...gold chain on his neck

All of these actions symbolize that Pharaoh is giving Joseph the authority to do everything that Joseph planned. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

signet ring

This ring had Pharaoh's seal engraved on it. This gave Joseph the authority and money needed to carry out his plans.

clothes of fine linen

"Linen" here is a smooth, strong cloth made from the blue-flowered flax plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

⁴² Pharaoh took off his signet ring from his hand and put it upon Joseph's hand. He clothed him with clothes of fine linen, and put a gold chain on his neck.

UST

⁴² The king took from his finger the ring that had his seal on it, and he put it on Joseph's finger. He put robes made of fine linen on him, and he put a gold chain around his neck.

Genesis 41:43

He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed

This act makes clear to the people that Joseph is second only to Pharaoh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Bend the knee

“Bow down and honor Joseph.” To bend the knee and bow down was a sign of honor and respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Pharaoh put him over all the land

The phrase “put you over” means to give authority. Here “land” refers to the people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:41](#). Alternate translation: “I put you in charge of everyone in Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁴³ He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed. Men shouted before him, “Bend the knee.” Pharaoh put him over all the land of Egypt.

UST

⁴³ Then he arranged for Joseph to ride around in the chariot that showed that he was the second most important man in the country. When Joseph rode in the chariot, men shouted to the people who were on the road in front of him, “Bow down!” So the Joseph went out to supervise this work all over Egypt.

Genesis 41:44

I am Pharaoh, and apart from you

Pharaoh is emphasizing his authority. Alternate translation: “As Pharaoh, I command that apart from you”

apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt

Here “hand” and “foot” stand for a person’s actions. Alternate translation: “no person in Egypt will do anything without your permission” or “every person in Egypt must ask your permission before they do anything” (See: [Metonymy](#))

no man

Here “man” refers to any person in general, whether male or female. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

44 Pharaoh said to Joseph, “I am Pharaoh, and apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt.”

UST

44 The king said to Joseph, “I am the king, but no one in the whole land of Egypt will do anything if you do not permit them to do it.”

Genesis 41:45

Zaphenath-Paneah

Translators may add the following footnote: The name Zaphenath-Paneah means “a revealer of secrets.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife

Priests in Egypt were the highest and most privileged caste. This marriage signifies Joseph’s place of honor and privilege. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

gave him Asenath

“Asenath” is the name of the woman whom Pharaoh gave to Joseph as his wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter of Potiphera

“Potiphera” is the father of Asenath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was “the City of the Sun” and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joseph went out over the land of Egypt

Joseph traveled over the land to supervise the preparations for the coming drought.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Pharaoh called Joseph’s name “Zaphenath-Paneah.” He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife. Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.

UST

⁴⁵ The king gave Joseph a new name, Zaphenath-Paneah. He also gave him Asenath to be his wife. She was the daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest in a temple in the city of On. In this way Joseph became known through all the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:46

thirty years old

“30 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

when he stood before Pharaoh

Here “stood before” stands for Joseph starting to serve Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “when he started to serve Pharaoh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

went throughout all the land of Egypt

Joseph is inspecting the country as he prepares to carry out his plans.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ Joseph was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh, king of Egypt. Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.

UST

⁴⁶ Joseph was thirty years old when he started to work for the king of Egypt. To do his work, he left the king's palace and traveled throughout Egypt.

Genesis 41:47

In the seven bountiful years

"During the seven good years"

the land produced abundantly

"the land produced big harvests"

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁴⁷ In the seven bountiful years the land produced abundantly.

UST

⁴⁷ During the next seven years, the land produced abundant crops, so there was plenty of food.

Genesis 41:48

He gathered up...He put

Here "He" stands for Joseph's servants. Alternate translation: "Joseph ordered his servants to gather...They put" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

ULT

48 He gathered up all the food of the seven years that was in the land of Egypt and put the food in the cities. He put into each city the food from the fields that surrounded it.

UST

48 As Joseph supervised them, his helpers collected one-fifth of all the grain that was produced during those years, and stored it in the cities. In each city, he had his helpers store up the grain that was grown in the fields that surrounded that city.

Genesis 41:49

Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea

This compares the grain to the sand of sea to emphasize its great quantity. Alternate translation: "The grain that Joseph stored was as plentiful as the sand on the seashore" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Joseph stored up...he stopped

Here "Joseph" and "he" stand for Joseph's servants. Alternate translation: "Joseph had his servants store up...they stopped" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, so much that he stopped counting, because it was beyond counting.

UST

⁴⁹ Joseph had them store up a huge amount of grain. It looked as plentiful as the sand on the seashore. There was so much grain that after a while they stopped keeping records of how much grain was stored, because there was more grain than they could measure.

Genesis 41:50

before the years of famine came

This speaks about years as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “before the seven years of the famine began” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Asenath

a woman's name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter of Potiphera

“Potiphera” is the father of Asenath. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was “the City of the Sun” and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- son
- priest, priesthood

ULT

⁵⁰ Joseph had two sons before the years of famine came, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, bore to him.

UST

⁵⁰ Before the seven years of famine started, Joseph's wife Asenath gave birth to two sons.

Genesis 41:51

Manasseh

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Manasseh' means 'to cause to forget.'"

father's household

This refers to Joseph's father Jacob and his family.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- name
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- name
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

ULT

⁵¹ Joseph called the name of his firstborn Manasseh, for he said, "God has made me forget all my trouble and all my father's household."

UST

⁵¹ Joseph named the first one Manasseh, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "forget," because he said, "God has caused me to forget all my troubles and all my father's family."

Genesis 41:52

Ephraim

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Ephraim' means 'to be fruitful' or 'to have children.'"

made me fruitful

Here "fruitful" means to prosper or to have children. (See: [Idiom](#))

in the land of my affliction

The abstract noun "affliction" can be stated as "I have suffered."
Alternate translation: "in this land where I have suffered" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

52 He called the name of the second son Ephraim, for he said, "God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction."

UST

52 He named his second son Ephraim, which means "to have children," because he said, "God has given me children here in this land where I have suffered."

Genesis 41:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

⁵³ The seven years of abundance that was in the land of Egypt came to an end.

UST

⁵³ Finally the seven years in which there was plenty of food ended.

Genesis 41:54

in all lands

In all the surrounding nations beyond Egypt, including the land of Canaan.

but in all the land of Egypt there was food

It is implied that there was food because of Joseph commanded his people to store food during the seven good years. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- profane, profaned
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- profane, profaned
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- famine

ULT

54 The seven years of famine began, as Joseph had said. There was famine in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was food.

UST

54 Then the seven years of famine started, just as Joseph had predicted. There was also a famine in all the other nearby lands, but although the crops did not grow, there was food everywhere in Egypt, because of the grain they had stored up in the cities.

Genesis 41:55

When all the land of Egypt was famished

Here “land” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “When all the Egyptians were starving” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

55 When all the land of Egypt was famished, the people loudly called on Pharaoh for food. Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians, “Go to Joseph and do what he says.”

UST

55 When all the people of Egypt had eaten all of their own food and were still hungry, they begged the king for food. So the king told all the people of Egypt, “Go to Joseph and do what he tells you to do.”

Genesis 41:56

The famine was over all the face of the whole land

The word “face” refers to the surface of the land. Alternate translation: “The famine had spread throughout the land” (See: [Idiom](#))

Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians

Here “Joseph” stands for Joseph’s servants. Alternate translation: “Joseph had his servants open all the storehouses and sell grain to the Egyptians” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

56 The famine was over all the face of the whole land. Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians. The famine was severe in the land of Egypt.

UST

56 When the famine was very bad over the whole country, Joseph ordered his helpers to open the storehouses. Then they sold the grain in the storehouses to the people of Egypt, because the famine was very severe all over Egypt.

Genesis 41:57

All the earth was coming to Egypt

Here “earth” stands for the people from all regions. Alternate translation: “People were coming to Egypt from all the surrounding regions” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in all the earth

“throughout the land.” It is likely that all the different trading partners and nations that were part of the Egyptian trading routes effected by the drought came to Egypt for grain.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ All the earth was coming to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph, because the famine was severe in all the earth.

UST

⁵⁷ People from many nearby countries came to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph, because the famine was very severe everywhere.

Genesis 42

Genesis 42 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Famine

Apparently this famine extended beyond Egypt and encompassed the land of Canaan too. Because of Egypt's size and power, it would not have been unusual for people to go there in times of need. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Joseph's test

Joseph tests his brothers to see if they are good. They treat their brother Benjamin better than they treated Joseph and tried to protect him.

Genesis 42:1

Now Jacob became

The word “Now” marks a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Why do you look at one another?

Jacob uses a question to scold his sons for not doing anything about the grain. Alternate translation: “Do not just sit here!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- grain, grainfields

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- grain, grainfields

ULT

¹ Now Jacob became aware that there was grain in Egypt. He said to his sons, “Why do you look at one another?”

UST

¹ When someone told Jacob that there was grain in Egypt that people could buy, he said to his sons, “Why do you just sit there looking at each other? We need some grain!”

Genesis 42:2

Go down there

It was common to speak of going from Canaan to Egypt as going "down."

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- grain, grainfields

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- grain, grainfields

ULT

² He said, "See here, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy for us from there so we may live and not die."

UST

² He said to them, "Someone told me that there is grain for sale in Egypt. Go down there and buy some for us, in order that we can stay alive!"

Genesis 42:3

went down

It was common to speak of going from Canaan to Egypt as going "down."

from Egypt

Here "Egypt" refers to the people selling grain. Alternate translation: "from those selling grain in Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- wheat

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- wheat

ULT

³ Joseph's ten brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.

UST

³ So Joseph's ten older brothers went down to Egypt to buy some grain.

Genesis 42:4

Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers

Benjamin and Joseph had the same father and mother; their mother was different from the mothers of the other brothers. Jacob did not want to risk sending Rachel's last son. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

⁴ But Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers, for he said, "I fear that harm might come to him."

UST

⁴ But Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's younger brother, to go with the others, because he was afraid that something terrible might happen to him like what happened to Joseph.

Genesis 42:5

The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” Also, the words “grain” and “Egypt” are understood. Alternate translation: “The sons of Israel went to buy grain along with other people who went to Egypt” (See: [Go and Come](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

ULT

⁵ The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came, for the famine was in the land of Canaan.

UST

⁵ So Jacob's sons went down from Canaan to Egypt to buy grain, and others went too, because there was a famine in Canaan also.

Genesis 42:6

Now Joseph

“Now” marks a change from the story to background information about Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

over the land

Here “land” refers to Egypt. Alternate translation: “over Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all the people of the land

Here “land” includes Egypt and other surrounding countries. Alternate translation: “all the people of all the nations that came to buy grain” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Joseph’s brothers came

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

bowed down to him with their faces to the ground

This is a way of showing respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- prostrate, worship
- Joseph (OT)
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- prostrate, worship
- Joseph (OT)
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

⁶ Now Joseph was the governor over the land. He was the one who sold to all the people of the land. Joseph’s brothers came and bowed down to him with their faces to the ground.

UST

⁶ At that time Joseph was the governor of Egypt. He was the one who sold grain to people who came from all over Egypt and from many other countries to buy grain. So when Joseph’s brothers arrived, they prostrated themselves before him with their faces to the ground.

Genesis 42:7

Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them

"When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them"

he disguised himself to them

"he acted like he was not their brother" or "he did not let them know that he was their brother"

Where have you come from?

This was not a rhetorical question even though Joseph knew the answer. It was part of his choice to keep his identity from his brothers.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite

ULT

⁷ Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he disguised himself to them and spoke harshly with them. He said to them, "Where have you come from?" They said, "From the land of Canaan to buy food."

UST

⁷ As soon as Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them. But he pretended that he did not know them. He spoke harshly to them, saying, "Where do you come from?" One of them replied, "We have come from Canaan land, to buy some grain."

Genesis 42:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁸ Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.

UST

⁸ Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not recognize him.

Genesis 42:9

You are spies

Spies are people who secretly try to get information about a country to help another country.

You have come to see the undefended parts of the land

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “You have come to find out where we are not guarding our land so that you can attack us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Joseph remembered the dreams he had dreamed about them, and he said to them, “You are spies! You have come to see the undefended parts of the land.”

UST

⁹ Then Joseph remembered what he had dreamed about them many years previously. But he decided not to tell them yet that he was their younger brother. He said to them, “You are spies! You have come to find out whether we will be able to defend ourselves if you attack us!”

Genesis 42:10

my master

This is a way to refer to someone to honor them.

Your servants have

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “We, your servants, have” or “We have” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁰ They said to him, “No, my master. Your servants have come to buy food.

UST

¹⁰ One of them replied, “No, sir! We have come to buy grain.

Genesis 42:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

11 We are all one man's sons. We are honest men. Your servants are not spies."

UST

11 We are all sons of one man. We are honest men, not spies."

Genesis 42:12

He said to them

"Joseph said to his brothers"

No, you have come to see the undefended parts of the land

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "No, you have come to find out where we are not guarding our land so that you can attack us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

¹² He said to them, "No, you have come to see the undefended parts of the land."

UST

¹² He said to them, "I do not believe you! You have come just to see whether we would be able to defend ourselves if we were attacked!"

Genesis 42:13

twelve brothers

"12 brothers" (See: [Numbers](#))

See, the youngest

"Listen to us, the youngest." The word "See" is used to emphasize what they say next.

the youngest is this day with our father

"right now our youngest brother is with our father"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

13 They said, "We your servants are twelve brothers, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan. See, the youngest is this day with our father, and one brother is no longer alive."

UST

13 But one of them replied, "No, that is not true! Originally there were twelve of us who were brothers, the sons of one man. Our youngest brother is with our father. One of them is no longer alive. "

Genesis 42:14

It is what I said to you; you are spies

“like I already said, you are spies.” See how you translated “spies” in [Genesis 42:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

14 Joseph said to them, “It is what I said to you; you are spies.

UST

14 Joseph replied, “You are lying! I think it is just as I told you. You are spies!

Genesis 42:15

By this you will be tested

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is how I will test you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

By the life of Pharaoh

This phrase indicates a solemn oath. Alternate translation: "I swear by the life of Pharaoh"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [brother](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [brother](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

15 By this you will be tested. By the life of Pharaoh, you will not leave here, unless your youngest brother comes here.

UST

15 But this is how I will find out whether what you are saying is true. I think that as surely as the king lives, you are spies. So you will not leave this place until your youngest brother comes here!

Genesis 42:16

Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother

"Choose one of you to go get your brother"

You will remain in prison

"The rest of you will remain in prison"

that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that I may find out if you are telling the truth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

ULT

16 Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother. You will remain in prison, that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you. Or else, by the life of Pharaoh, surely you are spies."

UST

16 Send one of your group to go and get your younger brother and bring him here. I will put the rest of you in prison, in order that I may test what you have said to find out whether what you are telling me is true. If the one who goes does not bring your younger brother here, then, just as surely as the king lives, it will be clear that you are lying and that you are spies."

Genesis 42:17

in custody

“in prison”

Translation Words - ULT

- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

17 He put them all in custody for three days.

UST

17 Then Joseph put them all in prison for three days.

Genesis 42:18

on the third day

The word “third” is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “after the second day” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Do this and live

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “If you will do what I say, I will let you live” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Joseph](#) (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Joseph](#) (OT)

ULT

18 Joseph said to them on the third day, “Do this and live, for I fear God.

UST

18 On the third day after that, Joseph went to the prison and said to them, “I am a man who fears that God will punish me if I do not do what I promise. So do what I tell you, and I will spare your lives.

Genesis 42:19

let one of your brothers be confined in this prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “leave one of your brothers here in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but you go

Here “you” is plural and refers to all the brothers that will not stay in prison. Alternate translation: “but the rest of you go” (See: [Forms of You](#))

carry grain for the famine of your houses

Here “houses” stands for families. Alternate translation: “carry grain home to help your family during this famine” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

19 If you are honest men, let one of your brothers be confined in this prison, but you go, carry grain for the famine of your houses.

UST

19 If you are honest men, let one of you brothers stay here in prison, and the rest of you can take some grain back to your families who are very hungry because of the famine.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- temple
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- grain, grainfields
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- temple
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- walk, walked
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- grain, grainfields
- house

Genesis 42:20

so your words will be verified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so I may know what you say is true” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will not die

This implies that Joseph would have his soldiers execute the brothers if he finds out they are spies. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)

ULT

20 Bring your youngest brother to me so your words will be verified and you will not die.” So they did so.

UST

20 But if you come back here again, you must bring your youngest brother to me, so that you can prove that what you told me is true, and as a result I will not have you executed.” So they agreed to do that.

Genesis 42:21

in that we saw the distress of his soul

The word "soul" stands for Joseph. Alternate translation: "because we saw how distressed Joseph was" or "because we saw that Joseph was suffering" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Therefore this distress has come upon us

The abstract noun "distress" can be stated as the verb "suffering." Alternate translation: "That is why we are suffering like this now" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

ULT

21 They said to one another, "We are truly guilty concerning our brother in that we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us and we would not listen. Therefore this distress has come upon us."

UST

21 They said to each other, "It is surely because of what we did to our younger brother that we are being punished! We saw that he was very distressed when he pleaded with us not to harm him. But we did not pay any attention to him, and that is why we are having this trouble!"

Genesis 42:22

Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but you would not listen?

Reuben uses a question to scold his brothers. Alternate translation: "I told you not to hurt the boy, but you would not listen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Did I not tell you not to sin against the boy, but" or "I told you not to harm the boy, but" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Now, see

Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but both "Now" and "see" are used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

his blood is required of us

Here "blood" stands for Joseph's death. His brothers thought Joseph was dead. The phrase "is required of us" means they must be punished for what they did. Alternate translation: "we are getting what we deserve for his death" or "we are suffering for having killed him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

²² Reuben answered them, "Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but you would not listen? Now, see, his blood is required of us."

UST

²² Reuben said to them, "I told you not to harm the boy, but you did not pay attention to what I said! Now we are being paid back for killing him!"

Genesis 42:23

They did not know...an interpreter between them

This shifts from the main story line to background information that explains why the brothers thought Joseph could not understand them. (See: [Background Information](#))

an interpreter

An “interpreter” is someone who translates what one person says into another language. Joseph placed an interpreter between himself and his brothers to make it seem like he did not speak their language.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²³ They did not know that Joseph understood them, for there was an interpreter between them.

UST

²³ While they were talking with Joseph, they were speaking to an interpreter, but when they said these things among themselves, they were speaking in their own language. They did not know that Joseph could understand their language and that he understood what they were saying.

Genesis 42:24

He turned from them and wept

It is implied that Joseph wept because he was emotional after hearing what his brothers said. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

spoke to them

Joseph was still speaking a different language and using the interpreter to speak to his brothers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bound him before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “bound him in their sight” or “bound him as they watched” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [return](#)

ULT

24 He turned from them and wept. He returned to them and spoke to them. He took Simeon from among them and bound him before their eyes.

UST

24 Because of what they said, Joseph realized that they admitted that what they had done to him many years previously was wrong. But he knew that he could not keep from crying, and he did not want them to see him crying, so he left them and went outside the room and began to cry. But then he returned to them and talked to them again. Then he took Simeon, and while they were watching, he told his servants to tie him up. He left Simeon in the prison and told the others that they could go.

Genesis 42:25

to give them provisions

“to give them the supplies they needed”

It was done for them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The servants did for them everything that Joseph commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill his brothers' bags with grain, and to put every man's money back into his sack, and to give them provisions for the journey. It was done for them.

UST

²⁵ Joseph told his servants to fill the men's sacks with grain, but he also told them to put the money that each one had paid for the grain in the top of his sack. He also told them to give them food to eat along the way. And his brothers received the food from Joseph's servants.

Genesis 42:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- grain, grainfields

Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- grain, grainfields

ULT

²⁶ The brothers loaded their donkeys with their grain and departed from there.

UST

²⁶ His older brothers loaded the sacks of grain on their donkeys and left.

Genesis 42:27

As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack

“When they stopped at a place for the night, one of the brothers opened his sack to get food for his donkey. In the sack he saw his money!”

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- sackcloth

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- sackcloth

ULT

²⁷ As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack.

UST

²⁷ At the place where they stopped to sleep that night, one of them opened his sack to get some grain for his donkey. He was amazed to see his money in the top of the sack.

Genesis 42:28

My money has been put back

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone has put my money back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Look at it

"Look in my sack!"

Their hearts sank

To become afraid is spoken of as if their heart were sinking. Here "hearts" stands for courage. Alternate translation: "They became very afraid" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

28 He said to his brothers, "My money has been put back. Look at it; it is in my sack." Their hearts sank and they turned trembling to one another, saying, "What is this that God has done to us?"

UST

28 He exclaimed to his brothers, "Someone has returned my money! Here it is in my sack!" They started shaking with fear, and said to each other, "What is this that God has done to us?"

Genesis 42:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁹ They went to Jacob, their father in the land of Canaan and told him all that had happened to them. They said,

UST

²⁹ When they returned to their father in Canaan land, they told him all that had happened to them. One of them said,

Genesis 42:30

lord of the land

“the lord of Egypt”

spoke roughly

“spoke harshly”

we were spies

Spies are people who secretly try to get information about a country to help another country. See how you translated “spies” in [Genesis 42:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

30 “The man, the lord of the land, spoke roughly with us and thought that we were spies in the land.

UST

30 “The man who governs the whole land of Egypt talked very harshly to us. He acted toward us as though we were spying on his country.

Genesis 42:31

We said to him, 'We are honest men. We are not spies.

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "We told him that we are honest men and not spies." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

31 We said to him, 'We are honest men.
We are not spies.

UST

31 But we told him, 'We are honest men!
We are not spies.

Genesis 42:32

We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no longer alive...land of Canaan.'

The quotation within a quotation that began with the words "We said to him, 'We are honest men...not spies. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "We told him that we are honest men...not spies. We said that we are twelve brothers, sons of our father, and that one brother is no longer alive...land of Canaan" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

One is no longer alive

The word "brother" is understood. Alternate translation: "One brother is no longer alive" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the youngest is this day with our father

The word "brother" is understood. Alternate translation: "the youngest brother is with our father right now" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

³² We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no longer alive, and the youngest is this day with our father in the land of Canaan.'

UST

³² Originally there were twelve of us who were brothers, the sons of one father. One has died, and our youngest brother is with our father in Canaan.'

Genesis 42:33

the lord of the land

"The lord of Egypt"

take grain for the famine in your houses

Here "houses" stands for "family." Alternate translation: "take grain to help your family during the famine" (See: [Metonymy](#))

go your way

"go home" or "leave"

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [brother](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [house](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [brother](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [house](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

ULT

³³ The man, the lord of the land, said to us, 'By this I will know that you are honest men. Leave one of your brothers with me, take grain for the famine in your houses, and go your way.

UST

³³ The man who is the governor of the land did not believe us, so he said to us, 'This is how I will know if you are truly honest men: Leave one of your brothers here with me. Then the rest of you can take some grain for your families that are starving from hunger and go.

Genesis 42:34

you will trade in the land

"I will allow you to buy and sell in this land"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

34 Bring your youngest brother to me. Then I will know that you are not spies, but that you are honest men. Then I will release your brother to you, and you will trade in the land."

UST

34 But when you return, bring your youngest brother to me, in order that I will know that you are not spies, but instead, that you are honest men. Then I will release your brother for you. And then you can buy whatever you want in this country."

Genesis 42:35

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

behold, every

"they were surprised because every"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- silver
- sackcloth
- sackcloth

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- silver
- sackcloth
- sackcloth

ULT

³⁵ It came about as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bag of silver was in his sack. When they and their father saw their bags of silver, they were afraid.

UST

³⁵ As they were emptying their sacks, they were surprised that in each man's sack was his pouch of money! When they and their father saw all the pouches of money, they were frightened.

Genesis 42:36

You have bereaved me of my children

“you have deprived me of my children” or “you have caused me to lose two of my children”

All these things are against me

“all these things hurt me”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³⁶ Jacob their father said to them, “You have bereaved me of my children. Joseph is no longer alive, Simeon is gone, and you will take Benjamin away. All these things are against me.”

UST

³⁶ Their father Jacob said to them, “You have caused two of my children to be taken from me! Joseph is dead, and Simeon is gone! And now you want to take Benjamin from me! It is I who am suffering because of all these things that are happening!”

Genesis 42:37

Put him in my hands

This is a request for Reuben to take Benjamin with him and to care for him on the journey. Alternate translation: “Put me in charge of him” or “Let me take care of him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

37 Reuben spoke to his father, saying, “You may kill my two sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you. Put him in my hands, and I will bring him to you again.”

UST

37 Reuben said to his father, “I will bring Benjamin back to you. Let me take care of him. If I do not bring Benjamin back to you, you may kill both of my sons.”

Genesis 42:38

My son will not go down with you

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: “My son, Benjamin, will not go with you to Egypt”

with you

Here “you” is plural and refers to Jacob’s older sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

For his brother is dead and he alone is left

The full meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “For my wife, Rachel, only had two children. Joseph is dead and Benjamin is the only one left” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

on the road in which you go

“while you are traveling to Egypt and back” or “while you are away.” Here “road” stands for traveling.

then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

my gray hair

This stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “me, an old man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- walk, walked

ULT

38 Jacob said, “My son will not go down with you. For his brother is dead and he alone is left. If harm comes to him on the road in which you go, then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.”

UST

38 But Jacob said, “No, I will not let my son go down there with you. His older brother is dead, and he is the only one of my wife Rachel’s sons who is left! If something harms him while you are traveling, you would cause me, a gray-haired old man, to die because of sorrow.”

Genesis 43

Genesis 43 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's concern

Israel is concerned over his favored son, Benjamin. He is also confused about the reason the Egyptian official treated them so kindly. This caused him some concern. It is possible he thought his sons were lying to him. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 43:1

The famine was severe in the land

The word “Canaan” is understood. This information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “The famine was severe in the land of Canaan” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

¹ The famine was severe in the land.

UST

¹ The famine in Canaan got worse.

Genesis 43:2

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

when they had eaten

“when Jacob and his family had eaten”

they had brought

“Jacob’s older sons had brought”

buy us

Here “us” refers to Jacob, his sons, and the rest of the family. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

² It came about when they had eaten the grain that they had brought out of Egypt, their father said to them, “Go again; buy us some food.”

UST

² Finally, when Jacob and his family had eaten all the grain they had brought from Egypt, Jacob said to them, “Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for us!”

Genesis 43:3

Judah told him

"Judah told his father Jacob"

The man

This refers to Joseph, but the brothers did not know it was Joseph. They referred to him as "the man" or "the man, the lord of the land" as in [Genesis 42:30](#).

warned us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "warned us that we would not see his face unless we brought our youngest brother with us" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

solemnly warned us

"was very serious when he warned us, saying"

You will not see my face

Judah uses this phrase twice in 43:3-5 to emphasize to his father that they cannot return to Egypt without Benjamin. The phrase "my face" refers to the man, who is Joseph. Alternate translation: "You will not see me" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

your brother is with you

Judah is referring to Benjamin, Rachel's last born before she died.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Judea
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Judea
- face, facial

ULT

³ Judah told him, "The man solemnly warned us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.'

UST

³ But Judah said to him, "The man who sold us the grain warned us sternly, 'I will not let you see me again if you come and your younger brother is not with you.'

Genesis 43:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother

Translation Words - UST

- brother

ULT

⁴ If you send our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food.

UST

⁴ So if you will send our younger brother with us, we will go down to Egypt and buy some grain for you.

Genesis 43:5

we will not go down

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- face, facial

ULT

⁵ But if you do not send him, we will not go down. For the man said to us, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.’”

UST

⁵ But if you will not send him, we will not go down there, because that man said to us, ‘I will not let you see me again if your younger brother is not with you.’”

Genesis 43:6

Why did you treat me so badly

“Why did you cause me so much trouble”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- afflict, affliction, distress

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- afflict, affliction, distress

ULT

⁶ Israel said, “Why did you treat me so badly by telling the man that you had another brother?”

UST

⁶ Jacob asked, “Why did you cause me to have this trouble by telling the man that you had a younger brother?”

Genesis 43:7

The man asked details

"The man asked many questions"

about us

Here "us" is exclusive and refers to the brothers who went to Egypt and spoke with "the man." (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

He said, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "He asked us directly if our father was still alive and if we had another brother." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

We answered him according to these questions

"We answered the questions he asked us"

How could we have known that he would say...down?

The sons use a question emphasize that they did not know what the man would tell them to do. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "We did not know he would say...down!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

he would say, 'Bring your brother down?'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "he would tell us to bring our brother down to Egypt." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Bring your brother down

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁷ They said, "The man asked details about us and our family. He said, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?' We answered him according to these questions. How could we have known that he would say, 'Bring your brother down?'"

UST

⁷ One of them replied, "The man asked about us and about our family. He said, 'Is your father still living? Do you have another brother?' We had to answer his questions. We could not know that he would say, 'The next time that you come down here, bring your brother with you!'"

Genesis 43:8

We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children

The phrases “we may live” and “not die” mean the same thing. Judah is emphasizing that they have to buy food in Egypt in order to survive. Alternate translation: “We will go now to Egypt and get grain so our whole family will live” (See: [Parallelism](#))

We will rise

Here “We” refers to the brothers who will travel to Egypt. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

we may live

Here “we” refers to the brothers, Israel, and the whole family. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

both we

Here “we” refers to the brothers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

we, you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

also our children

Here “our” refers to the brothers. This refers to the small children who were most likely to die during a famine. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁸ Judah said to Israel his father, “Send the boy with me. We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children.

UST

⁸ Then Judah said to his father Jacob, “Send the boy with me, and we will go immediately, in order that we and you and our children may get grain and not die from hunger.

Genesis 43:9

I will be a guarantee for him

The abstract noun “guarantee” can be stated as the verb “promise.”
Alternate translation: “I will promise to bring him back” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

You will hold me responsible

How Jacob will hold Judah responsible can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “You will make me answer to you about what happens to Benjamin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let me bear the blame

This speaks about “blame” as if it were an object that a person has to carry. Alternate translation: “you may blame me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

⁹ I will be a guarantee for him. You will hold me responsible. If I do not bring him back to you and set him before you, then let me bear the blame forever.

UST

⁹ I myself will guarantee that he will return. You can require me to do what I am promising. If I do not bring him back to you safely, you can say forever that I am to blame.

Genesis 43:10

For if we had not delayed

Judah is describing something that could have happened in the past but did not. Judah is scolding his father for waiting so long to send his sons to Egypt to get more food. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

we would have come back here a second time

“we would have returned twice”

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)

ULT

¹⁰ For if we had not delayed, surely by now we would have come back here a second time.”

UST

¹⁰ If we had not wasted so much time, by now we could have gone there and returned two times!”

Genesis 43:11

If it be so, now do this

"If this is our only choice, then do it"

Carry down

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. See how you translated this word in [Genesis 37:25](#). Alternate translation: "medicine"

spices

seasonings. See how you translated these words in [Genesis 37:25](#).

pistachio nuts

small, green tree nuts (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

almonds

tree nuts with a sweet flavor (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain offering](#)

ULT

11 Their father Israel said to them, "If it be so, now do this. Take some of the best products of the land in your bags. Carry down to the man a gift—some balm and honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds.

UST

11 Then their father Jacob said to them, "If there is no other way, do this: Put in your sacks some of the best things that are grown in this land, and take them down to the man as a gift. Take some balm and honey and spices and myrrh, some pistachio nuts, and almonds.

Genesis 43:12

Take double money in your hand

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “Take double the money with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. The phrase “that was returned” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “take back to Egypt the money someone put in your sacks” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

12 Take double money in your hand. The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand. Perhaps it was a mistake.

UST

12 Take twice as much money as you took the previous time, because you must return the silver that someone put in the tops of your sacks. Perhaps it was a mistake that it was put in your sacks.

Genesis 43:13

Take also your brother

“Take also Benjamin”

go again

“return”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration

ULT

¹³ Take also your brother. Rise and go again to the man.

UST

¹³ Take your youngest brother and go back to that man.

Genesis 43:14

May God Almighty give you mercy before the man

The abstract noun “mercy” can be stated as the adjective “kind.”
Alternate translation: “May God Almighty cause the man to be kind to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your other brother

“Simeon”

If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved

“If I lose my children, then I lose my children.” This means that Jacob knows he must accept whatever happens to his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

14 May God Almighty give you mercy before the man, so that he may release to you your other brother and Benjamin. If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved.”

UST

14 I will pray that God Almighty will cause that man to act mercifully toward you, so that he will let your other brother, as well as Benjamin, come back here with you. But as for me, if my sons are taken from me, then I will not have my sons!”

Genesis 43:15

in their hand they took

Here “hand” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “they took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

went down to Egypt

It was common to use the phrase “went down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [grain offering](#)

ULT

15 The men took this gift, and in their hand they took double the amount of money, along with Benjamin. They got up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.

UST

15 So the men took the gifts that Jacob said that they should take, and twice the amount of money that the grain would cost. They also took Benjamin. They went down quickly to Egypt, and they stood in front of Joseph.

Genesis 43:16

Benjamin with them

"Benjamin with Joseph's older brothers"

the steward of his house

The "steward" was responsible for managing Joseph's household activities.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- devour
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- devour
- house
- house

ULT

16 When Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the steward of his house, "Bring the men into the house, slaughter an animal and prepare it, for the men will eat with me at noon."

UST

16 When Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the man who was in charge of things in his house, "Take these men to my house. Slaughter an animal and prepare a meal, because I want them to eat with me at noon." He told his servant in what order they were to be seated.

Genesis 43:17

He brought the men

Here “brought” can be translated as “took.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

to Joseph’s house

“into Joseph’s house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

17 The steward did as Joseph said. He brought the men to Joseph’s house.

UST

17 The man did as Joseph said; he took them to Joseph’s house.

Genesis 43:18

The men were afraid

"Joseph's brothers were afraid"

they were brought to Joseph's house

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were going into Joseph's house" or "the steward was taking them into Joseph's house" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The steward is bringing us into the house because of the money that someone put back in our sacks" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "He is waiting for the opportunity to accuse us, so that he might arrest us"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Joseph (OT)
- silver
- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Joseph (OT)
- silver
- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

18 The men were afraid because they were brought to Joseph's house. They said, "It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in, that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us and take us as slaves, and take our donkeys."

UST

18 But they were afraid because he was taking them to Joseph's house. They were thinking, "He is taking us here because of the silver that was put in our sacks the first time that we came here. While we are eating, he will have his servants attack us and seize us and cause us to become his slaves, and also take our donkeys."

Genesis 43:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- house
- house

ULT

¹⁹ They approached the steward of Joseph's house, and they spoke to him at the door of the house,

UST

¹⁹ They went with the man who was in charge of things in Joseph's house. When they arrived at the entrance of the house,

Genesis 43:20

we came down

It is common to use the phrase “came down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

²⁰ saying, “My master, we came down the first time to buy food.

UST

²⁰ one of them said to him, “Please, sir, listen to me. We came down here previously and bought some grain.

Genesis 43:21

Connecting Statement:

The brothers continue speaking to the steward of the house.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when we reached the lodging place

“when we came to the place that we were going to stay for the night”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that the brothers were surprised by what they saw.

every man’s money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight

“each one of us found the full amount of his money in his sack”

We have brought it back in our hands

Here “hands” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “We have brought the money back with us” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

21 It came about, when we reached the lodging place, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, every man’s money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight. We have brought it back in our hands.

UST

21 But at the place where we stopped for the night as we were returning home, we opened our sacks. We were astonished to see that in the top of each of our sacks was the exact amount of silver that we had paid for the grain! So we have brought it back with us.

Genesis 43:22

Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “We have also brought more money to buy food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brought down

It common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²² Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food. We do not know who put our money in our sacks.”

UST

²² We have also brought more silver with us to buy more grain. We do not know who put the silver in our sacks.”

Genesis 43:23

Peace be to you

The abstract noun "Peace" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "Relax" or "Calm yourselves" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Your God and the God of your father

The stewards is not speaking about two different Gods. Alternate translation: "Your God, the God your father worships"

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [silver](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [silver](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)

ULT

²³ The steward said, "Peace be to you, do not fear. Your God and the God of your father must have put your money in your sacks. I received your money." The steward then brought Simeon out to them.

UST

²³ The man replied, "Relax! Do not worry about it! I received the silver that you brought. Your God, the God your father worships, must have put it in your sacks." And then he brought Simeon to them from the prison.

Genesis 43:24

washed their feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances. The full meaning of this statement may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

feed to their donkeys

“Feed” is dry food that is set aside for animals

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- Joseph (OT)
- house

Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- Joseph (OT)
- house

ULT

24 The steward took the men into Joseph's house. He gave them water, and they washed their feet. He gave feed to their donkeys.

UST

24 Then he took them into Joseph's house. He gave them water to wash their feet and gave them food for their donkeys.

Genesis 43:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- bread
- devour
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- bread
- devour
- grain offering

ULT

²⁵ They prepared the gifts for Joseph's coming at noon, for they had heard that they would eat there.

UST

²⁵ He told them that they were going to eat with Joseph at noon. So the men prepared their gifts to give to Joseph when he arrived.

Genesis 43:26

they brought the gifts which were in their hand

Here “hand” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “the brothers brought the gifts they had with them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

bowed down before him

This is a way of showing honor and respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁶ When Joseph came home, they brought the gifts which were in their hand into the house, and bowed down before him to the ground.

UST

²⁶ When Joseph came home, they presented to him the gifts that they had brought into the house. Then they bowed down to the ground in front of him.

Genesis 43:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old

ULT

²⁷ He asked them about their welfare and said, "Is your father well, the old man of whom you spoke? Is he still alive?"

UST

²⁷ He asked them if they were well, and then he asked, "How is the health of your old father, the one that you told me about? Is he still living?"

Genesis 43:28

Your servant our father

They refer to their father as “Your servant” to show respect. Alternate translation: “Our father who serves you”

They prostrated themselves and bowed down

These words basically mean the same thing. They laid down in front of the man to show him respect. Alternate translation: “They bowed down in front of him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- prostrate, worship
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- prostrate, worship
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

28 They said, “Your servant our father is well. He is still alive.” They prostrated themselves and bowed down.

UST

28 One of them replied, “Yes, your servant, our father, is still alive, and he is well.” Then again they bowed down in front of him.

Genesis 43:29

he lifted up his eyes

This means "he looked up." (See: [Idiom](#))

his mother's son, and he said

This can be translated with a new sentence. Alternate translation: "his mother's son. Joseph said"

Is this your youngest brother...me?

Possible meanings are 1) Joseph is truly asking a question to confirm that this man is Benjamin, or 2) it is a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "So this is your youngest brother...me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my son

This is a friendly way one man speaks to another man of lower rank. Alternate translation: "young man"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

29 When he lifted up his eyes he saw Benjamin his brother, his mother's son, and he said, "Is this your youngest brother of whom you spoke to me?" Then he said, "May God be gracious to you, my son."

UST

29 Then he saw his younger brother Benjamin, his own mother's other son. He asked them, "Is this your youngest brother, the one whom you told me about?" After they said "Yes," he said to Benjamin, "Young man, I pray that God will act kindly toward you."

Genesis 43:30

hurried to go out of the room

“hurried out of the room”

for he was deeply moved about his brother

The phrase “deeply moved” refers to having a strong feeling or emotion when something important happens. Alternate translation: “for he had strong feelings of compassion for his brother” or “for he had strong feelings of affection for his brother” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

³⁰ Joseph hurried to go out of the room, for he was deeply moved about his brother. He sought somewhere to weep. He went to his room and wept there.

UST

³⁰ Joseph quickly left the room. He realized that he was about to cry because he was full of emotion about his younger brother. He went into his private room and cried there.

Genesis 43:31

saying

It can be made explicit to whom Joseph is speaking. Alternate translation: "and said to his servants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Serve the food

This means to distribute the food so that people may eat.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [bread](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [bread](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

31 He washed his face and came out. He controlled himself, saying, "Serve the food."

UST

31 Then, after he washed the tears from his face, he came out, and controlling his emotions, he said to the servants, "Serve the food!"

Genesis 43:32

The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves

This means that Joseph, the brothers, and the other Egyptians are eating in three different places within the same room. Alternate translation: "The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves and the Egyptians, who were eating with him, by themselves"

The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves

These are probably other Egyptian officials who ate with Joseph, but they still sat separately from him and the Hebrew brothers.

because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians

This can be translated as a new sentence: "They did this because the Egyptians thought it was shameful to eat with the Hebrews"

could not eat bread

Here "bread" stands for food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

³² The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians.

UST

³² Now the people of Egypt thought that it was disgraceful for them to eat with Hebrews, so the servants served food to Joseph by himself, and served the other people of Egypt who ate with him by themselves, and they served Joseph's older brothers and younger brother by themselves.

Genesis 43:33

The brothers sat before him

It is implied that Joseph had arranged where each brother would sit. You can make clear the implied information. Alternate translation: "The brothers sat across from the man, according to how he arranged their places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth

The "firstborn" and the "youngest" are used together to mean all the brothers were sitting in order according to their age. (See: [Merism](#))

The men were astonished together

"The men were very surprised when they realized this"

ULT

³³ The brothers sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth. The men were astonished together.

UST

³³ His brothers were astonished to see that their seats were arranged according to their ages, from the youngest to the oldest!

Genesis 43:34

But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers

The phrase "five times" can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "But Benjamin received a portion that was much bigger than what his brothers received"

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- hand
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- hand
- face, facial

ULT

³⁴ Joseph sent portions to them from the food in front of him. But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers. They drank and were merry with him.

UST

³⁴ When their portions of food were served to them from Joseph's table, Benjamin's portion was five times as much as anyone else's portion! So they ate food and drank wine with Joseph until they became very cheerful.

Genesis 44

Genesis 44 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah's sacrifice

Judah is willing to sacrifice himself in order to save Benjamin, the favored son of Jacob. Judah's descendants will become the leaders of the Israelites and the godliest of the twelve tribes of Israel. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#) and [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Joseph's test

Joseph tests his brothers to see if they are good. They treat their brother Benjamin better than they treated Joseph and tried to protect him. (See: [test](#), [tested](#), [testing](#), [testing in the fire](#))

Genesis 44:1

General Information:

This begins a new event in the story. Most likely this is the next morning after the feast.

steward of his house

The “steward” was responsible for managing Joseph’s household activities.

every man’s money

Their money was silver coins most likely in a small bag.

in his sack’s opening

“in his sack”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹ Joseph commanded the steward of his house, saying, “Fill the men’s sacks with food, as much as they can carry, and put every man’s money in his sack’s opening.

UST

¹ When his brothers were ready to return home, Joseph said to the man who was in charge of things in his house, “Fill the sacks of those men with as much grain as they can carry on their donkeys. And put in the top of each man’s sack the silver that he paid for the grain.

Genesis 44:2

Put my cup, the silver cup

"Put my silver cup"

in the sack's opening of the youngest

The word "brother" is understood. Alternate translation: "in the youngest brother's sack" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

² Put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack's opening of the youngest, and also his money for the grain." The steward did as Joseph had said.

UST

² Then put my silver cup in the top of the youngest brother's sack, along with the silver that he paid for the grain." So the servant did what Joseph told him to do.

Genesis 44:3

The morning dawned

"The morning light shown"

the men were sent away, they and their donkeys

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they sent the men away, along with their donkeys" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule

Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule

ULT

³ The morning dawned, and the men were sent away, they and their donkeys.

UST

³ The next morning at dawn the men were allowed to leave for home with their donkeys.

Genesis 44:4

Why have you returned evil for good?

This question is used to scold the brothers. Alternate translation: "You have treated us badly, after we were good to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁴ When they were out of the city but were not yet far off, Joseph said to his steward, "Get up, follow after the men, and when you overtake them, say to them, 'Why have you returned evil for good?'"

UST

⁴ When they had not gone far from the city, Joseph said to the servant in charge of things in his house, "Pursue those men immediately. When you catch up to them, say to them, 'We did good things for you! Why have you paid us back by doing something bad to us?'"

Genesis 44:5

Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination?

This question is used to scold the brothers. Alternate translation: "You already know that this is the cup that my master uses for drinking and for fortune telling!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You have done evil, this thing that you have done

This repeats "you have done" for emphasis. Alternate translation: "What you have done is very evil" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- afflict, affliction, distress

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- afflict, affliction, distress

ULT

⁵ Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination? You have done evil, this thing that you have done."

UST

⁵ You have stolen the cup that my master drinks from! It is the cup that he uses to find out things that nobody knows! What you did was very wicked!"

Genesis 44:6

spoke these words to them

“spoke what Joseph told him to say”

ULT

⁶ The steward overtook them and spoke these words to them.

UST

⁶ When the servant caught up with them, he told them what Joseph had told him to say.

Genesis 44:7

Why does my master speak such words as these?

Here “words” stands for what was said. The brothers refer to the steward as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the second person.

Alternate translation: “Why are you saying this, my master?” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants” and “they.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority.

Alternate translation: “We would never do such a thing!” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Far be it from your servants

Something that a person would never do is spoken of as if it were an object that person wants to put very far from himself. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ They said to him, “Why does my master speak such words as these? Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.

UST

⁷ But one of them replied to him, “Sir, why do you say such things? We are your servants, and we would never do anything like that!

Genesis 44:8

Look, the money

"Listen to what we are about to say and you will see that we are speaking the truth: the money"

the money that we found in our sacks' openings

"you know the money that we found in our sacks"

we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan

"we brought back to you from Canaan"

How then could we steal out of your master's house silver or gold?

The brothers use a question to emphasize that they would not steal from the lord of Egypt. Alternate translation: "So we would never take anything from your master's house!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

silver or gold

These words are used together to mean that they would not steal anything of any value.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Canaan, Canaanite
- silver
- silver
- gold, golden
- house

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Canaan, Canaanite
- silver
- silver
- gold, golden
- house

ULT

⁸ Look, the money that we found in our sacks' openings, we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan. How then could we steal out of your master's house silver or gold?

UST

⁸ We even brought back to you from Canaan the silver that we found inside the tops of our sacks! So we certainly would not steal silver or gold from your master's house!

Genesis 44:9

With whomever of your servants it is found

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the first person. Also, “it is found” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you find that one of us has stolen the cup” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

we also will be my master’s slaves

The phrase “my master” refers to the steward. This can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “you may take us as your slaves” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁹ With whomever of your servants it is found, let him die, and we also will be my master’s slaves.”

UST

⁹ If you discover that any of us has that cup, you can execute him, and the rest of us will become your slaves.”

Genesis 44:10

Now also let it be according to your words

“Very well. I will do what you said.” Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

He with whom the cup is found will be my slave

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If I find the cup in one of your sacks, that person will be my slave” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [innocent](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

10 The steward said, “Now also let it be according to your words. He with whom the cup is found will be my slave, and you others will be innocent.”

UST

10 The man replied, “I will do what you say. But the one who has the cup will not be executed. Instead, he will become my slave, and the rest of you may return home.”

Genesis 44:11

brought his sack down

“lowered his sack”

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

11 Then each man hurried and brought his sack down to the ground, and each man opened his sack.

UST

11 Each of the men quickly lowered his sack down from the donkey to the ground and opened it.

Genesis 44:12

the oldest...the youngest

The word “brother” is understood. Alternate translation: “the oldest brother...the youngest brother” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin’s sack

This can be translated as a new sentence and in active form. Alternate translation: “youngest. The steward found the cup in Benjamin’s sack” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [consume, devour](#)

ULT

12 The steward searched. He began with the oldest and finished with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin’s sack.

UST

12 Then the servant started to search for the cup in each sack. He started with the oldest brother’s sack and ended with the youngest one’s sack. He found the cup in Benjamin’s sack and showed it to them.

Genesis 44:13

Then they tore their clothes

The word “they” refers to the brothers. Tearing clothes was a sign of great distress and sorrow. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

donkey and returned

“donkey, and they returned”

Translation Words - ULT

- [donkey, mule](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [donkey, mule](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

13 Then they tore their clothes. Each man loaded his donkey and returned to the city.

UST

13 The brothers tore their clothes because they were so dismayed. They loaded the sacks on the donkeys again and returned to the city.

Genesis 44:14

He was still there

"Joseph was still there"

they bowed before him

"they fell before him." This is a sign of the brothers wanting the lord to be merciful to them. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

14 Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house. He was still there, and they bowed before him to the ground.

UST

14 When Judah and his older and younger brothers entered Joseph's house, Joseph was still there. The servant told Joseph what had happened. Then the brothers threw themselves down on the ground in front of Joseph.

Genesis 44:15

Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?

Joseph uses a question to scold his brothers. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that a man like me can learn things by magic!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Joseph said to them, "What is this that you have done? Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?"

UST

¹⁵ He said to them, "Why did you do this? Do you not know that a man like me can find out things that nobody knows?"

Genesis 44:16

What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves?

All 3 questions mean basically the same thing. They use these questions to emphasize that there is nothing they can say to explain what happened. Alternate translation: “We have nothing to say, my master. We cannot speak anything of value. We cannot justify ourselves.” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

What can we say to my master...my master’s slaves

Here “my master” refers to Joseph. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “What can we say to you...your slaves” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

God has found out the iniquity of your servants

Here “found out” does not mean God just found out what the brothers did. It means God is now punishing them for what they did. Alternate translation: “God is punishing us for our past sins”

the iniquity of your servants

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “our iniquity” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he also in whose hand the cup was found

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. Also, “was found” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one who had your cup” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- iniquity
- Judea
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- God
- iniquity
- Judea
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

16 Judah said, “What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves? God has found out the iniquity of your servants. Look, we are my master’s slaves, both we and he also in whose hand the cup was found.”

UST

16 Judah replied, “Sir, what can we say? How can we prove that we are innocent? God has paid us back for the sins we committed many years ago. So now we will become your slaves—both we and the one in whose sack the cup was found.”

Genesis 44:17

Far be it from me that I should do so

Something that a person would never do is spoken of as if it were an object the person wants put far away from him. Alternate translation: "It is not like me to do something like that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

The man in whose hand the cup was found

Here "hand" stands for the whole person. Also, "was found" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The man who had my cup" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

17 Joseph said, "Far be it from me that I should do so. The man in whose hand the cup was found, that person will be my slave, but as for you others, go up in peace to your father."

UST

17 But Joseph replied, "No, I could never do anything like that. Only the man in whose sack the cup was found will become my slave. The rest of you can return to your father peacefully."

Genesis 44:18

came near to

“approached”

let your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “let me, your servant” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

speak a word in my master’s ears

The word “ear” is a synecdoche that stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “speak to you, my master” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in my master’s ears

Here “my master” refers to Joseph. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “to you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

do not let your anger burn against your servant

Being angry is spoke of as if it were a burning fire. Alternate translation: “please do not be angry with me, your servant” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for you are just like Pharaoh

Judah compares the master to Pharaoh to emphasize the great power that the master has. He is also implying that he does want the master to become angry and execute him. Alternate translation: “for you are as powerful as Pharaoh and could have your soldiers kill me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

18 Then Judah came near to him and said, “My master, please let your servant speak a word in my master’s ears, and do not let your anger burn against your servant, for you are just like Pharaoh.”

UST

18 Then Judah came near to Joseph and said, “Sir, please let me say something to you. You are equal to the king himself, so you could command that I be executed; but do not be angry with me for speaking to you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judea
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 44:19

My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "My master asked us if we have a father or a brother." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

My master asked his servants

Judah refers to Joseph with the words "my master" and "his." He also refers to himself and his brothers as "his servants." Alternate translation: "You, my master, asked us, your servants" or "You asked us" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

¹⁹ My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'

UST

¹⁹ You asked us, 'Is your father still living, and do you have another brother?'

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 44:20

General Information:

Judah continues to speak before Joseph

We said to my master, 'We have a father...his father loves him.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And we said to my master that we have a father...his father loves him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

his father loves him

This refers to love for a friend or family member.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old

ULT

20 We said to my master, 'We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one. But his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loves him.'

UST

20 We answered, 'Our father is alive, but he is an old man. He has a young son who was born after our father became an old man. That son had an older brother, who is now dead. So the youngest son is the only one of his mother's sons who is still alive, and his father loves him very much.'

Genesis 44:21

Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And you said to your servants that we should bring our youngest brother to you so that you may see him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Then you said to your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as "your servants." Alternate translation: "Then you said to us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Bring him down to me

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: "Bring him to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

21 Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'

UST

21 Then you said to us, 'The next time you come here, bring your younger brother down to me, so that I can see him.'

Genesis 44:22

we said to my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “we said to you, my master” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

After that, we said to my master, ‘The boy cannot... father would die.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “In response, we said to my master that the boy cannot...father would die” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

his father would die

It is implied that their father would die from sorrow. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²² After that, we said to my master, ‘The boy cannot leave his father. For if he should leave his father his father would die.’

UST

²² We said to you, ‘No, we cannot do that, because the boy cannot leave his father. If he leaves his father, his father will die because of sorrow.’

Genesis 44:23

General Information:

Judah continues his story to Joseph

Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then you said to your servants that unless our youngest brother comes with us, we would not see you again." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

²³ Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'

UST

²³ But you told us, 'If your youngest brother does not come down with you, I will not let you see me again!'

Then you said to your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as "your servants." This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: "Then you said to us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

comes down

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

you will not see my face again

Here "face" stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "you will not see me again" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 44:24

Then it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

we went up to your servant my father

It was common to use the phrase “went up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

we told him the words of my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” Alternate translation: “we told him what you said, my master” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

²⁴ Then it came about when we went up to your servant my father, we told him the words of my master.

UST

²⁴ When we returned to our father, we told him what you said.

Genesis 44:25

Our father said, 'Go again, buy us some food.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Our father told us to go again to Egypt to buy food for us and our families." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁵ Our father said, 'Go again, buy us some food.'

UST

²⁵ Months later our father said, 'Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain!'

Genesis 44:26

go down

It was common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Then we said, ‘We cannot go down. If our youngest brother...is with us.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Then we said to him that we cannot go down to Egypt. We told him that if our youngest brother is with us...is with us” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to see the man’s face

Here “face” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “to see the man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- face, facial

ULT

26 Then we said, ‘We cannot go down. If our youngest brother is with us, then will we go down, for we will not be able to see the man’s face unless our youngest brother is with us.’

UST

26 But we said, ‘We cannot go back by ourselves. We will go only if our youngest brother is with us. We will not be able to see the man who sells grain if our youngest brother is not with us.’

Genesis 44:27

General Information:

Judah continues his story to Joseph.

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a three-level quote.

said to us

Here "us" does not include Joseph. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

You know

Here "You" is plural and refers to the brothers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁷ Your servant my father said to us, 'You know that my wife bore me two sons.

UST

²⁷ Our father replied, 'You know that my wife Rachel gave birth to two sons for me.

Genesis 44:28

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quote that began in verse 27 continues.

he is torn in pieces

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a wild animal has torn him to pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

ULT

²⁸ One of them went out from me and I said, "Surely he is torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since."

UST

²⁸ One of them disappeared, and I said, "A wild animal has surely torn him to pieces." And I have not seen him since then.

Genesis 44:29

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quote that began in verse 27 ends here.

Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

The three-level quote that began with the words “Your servant...said to us, ‘You know...two sons’ in verse 27 and continued with the words “and I said, ‘Surely...since’ in verse 28 ends here. You may need to change one or more of these levels to indirect quotes. “This is what your servant my father said to us: ‘You know that my wife bore me two sons. One of them went out from me and I said that surely he had been torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since. Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.’” or “Your servant my father told us that we knew that his wife had borne him two sons. One of them went out from him, and he said that surely that son had been torn in pieces, and he has not seen him since. He then said that if we also took this one from him, and harm came to him, we would bring down his gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

harm comes to him

Something bad happening to a person is spoken of as if “harm” were something that travels and comes to a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed Sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

my gray hair

This stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “me, an old man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- face, facial

ULT

29 Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.’

UST

29 If you take this other one from me, too, and something harms him, you would cause me, an old gray-haired man, to die because of my sorrow.’

Genesis 44:30

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

therefore, when I come

Judah begins to describe to Joseph a realistic but hypothetical case of what he will expect will happen to Jacob when he returns without Benjamin. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

when I come to your servant

Here “come” can be translated as “go” or “return.”

the lad is not with us

“the boy is not with us”

since his life is bound up in the boy's life

The father saying he would die if his son died is spoken of as if their two lives were physically bound together. Alternate translation: “since he said he would die if the boy did not come back” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

30 Now, therefore, when I come to your servant my father, and the lad is not with us, since his life is bound up in the boy's life,

UST

30 So please listen. My father will remain alive only if his youngest son remains alive.

Genesis 44:31

Connecting Statement:

Judah finishes describing to Joseph the realistic but hypothetical case that began with the words “therefore, when I come” in verse 30.

sorrow to Sheol

Judah finishes describing to Joseph the realistic but hypothetical case that began with the words “therefore, when I come” in verse 30. This is what he expects will happen to Jacob when he returns without Benjamin. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

it will come about

Judah is speaking about a hypothetical case in the future as if it would certainly happen. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

ULT

31 it will come about, when he sees the boy is not with us, he will die. Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol.

UST

31 If he sees that the boy is not with us when we return to him, he will die. We will cause our gray-haired father to die because of his sorrow.

Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed Sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “And we will have caused our old father to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

Your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “And we, your servants” or “And we” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the gray hair of your servant our father

Here “gray hair” stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “our old father” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 44:32

For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father

The abstract noun “guarantee” can be stated with the verb “promised.” Alternate translation: “For I promised my father concerning the boy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

For your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” Alternate translation: “For I, your servant” or “For I” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

then I will bear the guilt to my father

Being considered guilty is spoken of as if “guilt” were something that a person carries. Alternate translation: “then my father may blame me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

³² For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father and said, ‘If I do not bring him to you, then I will bear the guilt to my father forever.’

UST

³² I guaranteed that the boy would return safely. I told him, ‘You can require me to do what I am promising. If I do not bring him back to you, you can say forever that I am to blame for not bringing him back to you.’

Genesis 44:33

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “let me, your servant” or “let me” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

to my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” Alternate translation: “to you, my master” or “to you” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

let the boy go up

It was going to use the phrase “go up” when speaking about traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

33 Now therefore, please let your servant stay instead of the boy as slave to my master, and let the boy go up with his brothers.

UST

33 So, please let me remain here as your slave instead of my youngest brother, and let the boy return home with his other older brothers.

Genesis 44:34

For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me?

Judah uses a question to emphasize the grief he would have if Benjamin did not return home. Alternate translation: "I cannot return to my father if the boy is not with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father

A person suffering terribly is spoken of as if "evil" were a thing that comes upon a person. Alternate translation: "I am afraid to see how much my father would suffer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³⁴ For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me? I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father."

UST

³⁴ I cannot return to my father if the boy is not with me! I do not want to see how miserable my father would become!"

Genesis 45

Genesis 45 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Joseph finally reveals himself to his brothers in this chapter. This chapter forms the conclusion of the story which began in chapter 43.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. It gained him great favor in the eyes of Pharaoh and helped to save his people. (See: [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning save, saved, safe, salvation](#))

Genesis 45:1**could not control himself**

This means he could not control his emotions. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “was about to start crying”

by him

“near him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹ Then Joseph could not control himself before all the servants who stood by him. He said loudly, “Everyone must leave me.” So no servant stood by him when Joseph made himself known to his brothers.

UST

¹ Joseph was not able to control his feelings any longer. He did not want to cry in front of his servants, so he said to them loudly, “All of you go outside!” After they went outside, there were no Egyptians there with Joseph when he told his brothers who he was.

Genesis 45:2

house of Pharaoh

Here “house” stands for the people in the Pharaoh’s palace. Alternate translation: “everyone in Pharaoh’s palace” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

² He wept loudly, the Egyptians heard it, and the house of Pharaoh heard of it.

UST

² He cried so loudly that even the people outside heard it, and even the people in the king’s palace heard it.

Genesis 45:3

shocked in his presence

"terrified of him"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother (2)
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- brother
- brother (2)
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³ Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph. Is my father still alive?" His brothers could not answer him, for they were shocked in his presence.

UST

³ Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph! Is our father still alive?" But his brothers were not able to reply, because they were frightened because of what he said.

Genesis 45:4

whom you sold into Egypt

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation: "whom you sold as a slave to the trader who brought me to Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

⁴ Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Come near to me, please." They came near. He said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt."

UST

⁴ Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Come close to me!" When they came closer to him, he said, "I am your brother Joseph! I am the one you sold to traders who brought me here to Egypt!"

Genesis 45:5

Do not be grieved

“do not be upset” or “do not be distressed”

that you sold me here

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation: “that you sold me as a slave and sent me here to Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to preserve life

Here “life” stands for the people that Joseph saved from dying during the famine. Alternate translation: “so I could save many lives” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

⁵ Do not be grieved or angry with yourselves that you sold me here, for God sent me ahead of you to preserve life.

UST

⁵ But now, do not be distressed, and do not be angry with yourselves for having sold me as a slave. It was God who sent me here ahead of you in order to keep you from dying in the famine.

Genesis 45:6

there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest

“there will be five more years without planting or harvesting.” Here “neither plowing nor harvest” stands for the fact that the crops still will not grow because of the famine. Alternate translation: “and the famine will last five more years” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [harvest, reap](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [harvest, reap](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

⁶ For these two years the famine has been in the land, and there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest.

UST

⁶ There has been a famine in this country for two years, and it will continue for five more years. During this time, no one will plow the ground, and there will be no crops to harvest.

Genesis 45:7

to preserve you as a remnant in the earth

“so that you and your families would not completely perish from the earth” or “to make sure your descendants would survive”

to keep you alive by a great deliverance

The abstract noun “deliverance” can be stated as “rescuing.”

Alternate translation: “to keep you alive by rescuing you in a mighty way” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [remnant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [remnant](#)

ULT

⁷ God sent me ahead of you to preserve you as a remnant in the earth, and to keep you alive by a great deliverance.

UST

⁷ God sent me here ahead of you to keep you from starving, and to make sure that your descendants would survive.

Genesis 45:8

he has made me a father to Pharaoh

Joseph advising and helping Pharaoh is spoken of as if Joseph were Pharaoh's father. Alternate translation: "he has made me a guide to Pharaoh" or "he has made me the chief adviser to Pharaoh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

of all his house

Here "house" stands for the people who live in his palace. Alternate translation: "of all his household" or "of all his palace" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ruler of all the land of Egypt

Here "land" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "ruler over all the people of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ruler

Here Joseph means that he is ruler in second place to Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. This understood information can be made clear. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

ULT

⁸ So now it was not you who sent me here but God, and he has made me a father to Pharaoh, master of all his house, and ruler of all the land of Egypt.

UST

⁸ Therefore, it was not you who sent me here; it was God who sent me here! He has caused me to become like a father to the king. I am in charge of everything in his palace and the governor of everyone in Egypt!

Genesis 45:9

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a three-level quotation.

go up to my father

It was common to use the phrase “go up” when speaking about going from Egypt to Canaan. Alternate translation: “go back to my father”

Come down to me

It was common to use the phrase “come down” when speaking about going from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: “Come here to me”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁹ Hurry and go up to my father and say to him, ‘This is what your son Joseph says, “God has made me master of all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.

UST

⁹ Now return to my father quickly and say to him, ‘This is what your son Joseph says: “God has caused me to become the governor over the whole land of Egypt. Come down to me immediately!

Genesis 45:10

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began in verse 9 continues here.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- flock, herd

ULT

10 You will live in the land of Goshen, and you will be near me, you and your children and your children's children, and your flocks and your herds, and all that you have.

UST

10 You can live in the region of Goshen. You and your children and your grandchildren, your sheep and goats and cattle, and everything that you own, will be near me.

Genesis 45:11

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began in verse 9 ends here.

I will provide...all that you have

The three-level quotation that began with the words “say to him” in verse 9 ends here. You may need to reduce the number of levels by making some levels indirect quotes. “say to him that his son Joseph says that God has made him master of all Egypt, so he must go down to Joseph and not delay. He will live in the land of Goshen, and he will be near Joseph, he and his children and his children’s children, and his flocks and his herds, and all that he has. Joseph will provide for him there, for there are still five years of famine, so that he does not come to poverty, him, his household, and all that he has.” or “say to him, ‘Your son Joseph says that God has made him master of all Egypt, so he must go down to Joseph and not delay. He will live in the land of Goshen, and he will be near Joseph, he and his children and his children’s children, and his flocks and his herds, and all that he has. Joseph will provide for him there, for there are still five years of famine, so that he does not come to poverty, him, his household, and all that he has.’”

come to poverty

This speaks about “poverty” as if it were a destination. Alternate translation: “waste away” or “starve” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [famine](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [famine](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

11 I will provide for you there, for there are still five years of famine, so that you do not come to poverty, you, your household, and all that you have.”

UST

11 Since there will be five more years of famine, I will make sure that you have food. If you do not come here, you and your family and all of your servants will starve. ”

Genesis 45:12

your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin

The word “eyes” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “All of you and Benjamin can see” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that it is my mouth that speaks to you

The word “mouth” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “that I, Joseph, am speaking to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

12 Look, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that it is my mouth that speaks to you.

UST

12 If you—and Benjamin, too—look closely at me, all of you will see that it is really I, Joseph, who am speaking to you.

Genesis 45:13

about all my honor in Egypt

"how the people in Egypt greatly honor me"

my father down here

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: "my father here to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

13 You will tell my father about all my honor in Egypt and of all that you have seen. You will hurry and bring my father down here."

UST

13 Go and tell my father about how much honor I have here in Egypt. And tell him about everything else that you have seen. Bring my father down here quickly!"

Genesis 45:14

He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck

"Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin, and they both wept"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

14 He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck.

UST

14 Then he threw his arms around his younger brother Benjamin's neck and cried. And Benjamin hugged him and cried.

Genesis 45:15

He kissed all his brothers

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

wept over them

This means Joseph was crying while he kissed them.

After that his brothers talked with him

Earlier they were too afraid to speak. Now they feel they can speak freely. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "After that his brothers talked freely with him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

15 He kissed all his brothers and wept over them. After that his brothers talked with him.

UST

15 Then he kissed his older brothers on their cheeks, and he cried. After that, his brothers started to talk with him.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother (2)

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother (2)

Genesis 45:16

The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come."

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. It may also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone in Pharaoh's palace heard that Joseph's brothers had come." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Pharaoh's house

This stands for Pharaoh's palace.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

¹⁶ The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come." It pleased Pharaoh and his servants very much.

UST

¹⁶ Someone went to the palace and told the news that Joseph's brothers had come. The king and all his officials were pleased.

Genesis 45:17

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

17 Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and go to the land of Canaan.

UST

17 The king said to Joseph, "Tell your brothers this: 'Put loads of grain on your animals and return to Canaan land.

Genesis 45:18

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 17 ends here.

Get your father...fat of the land.'

The two-level quotation that began in verse 17 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "Pharaoh told Joseph to tell his brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and go to the land of Canaan. Get your father and your households and come to me. I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'" or "Pharaoh to Joseph to tell his brothers to do this: to load their animals and go to the land of Canaan, and also to get their father and their households and go to him. Pharaoh would give them the good of the land of Egypt, and they would eat the fat of the land." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

18 Get your father and your households and come to me. I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'

UST

18 Then bring your father and your families back here. I will give you the best land in Egypt, and you will have the best food in the land to eat.'

I will give you the good of the land of Egypt

"I will give you the best land in Egypt"

you will eat the fat of the land

The best food that a land produces is spoken of as if it were the fat portion of the land. Alternate translation: "you will eat the best food in the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- devour
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Genesis 45:19

General Information:

Pharaoh continues to tell Joseph what to tell his brothers.

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

you are commanded

This can be stated in active form. You may also need to add the words “to tell them,” which the writer left out of this ellipsis. Alternate translation: “I also command you to tell them” or “also tell them” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

take carts out

“Carts” are wagons with two or four wheels. Animals pull the carts.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

19 Now you are commanded, ‘Do this, take carts out of the land of Egypt for your children and for your wives. Get your father and come.

UST

19 Also tell this to your brothers: ‘Take some carts from Egypt to carry your children and your wives, and get them and your father and come back here quickly.

Genesis 45:20

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quote that began in verse 19 ends here.

Do not be concerned about your possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours.'

The two-level quote that began in verse 19 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "Now you are commanded to tell them to take carts out of the land of Egypt for their children and for their wives, to get their father, and to come. They are not to be concerned about their possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt will be theirs." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

20 Do not be concerned about your possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours."

UST

20 Do not worry about bringing your possessions, because the best things in Egypt will be yours. Because of that, you will not need to bring things from Canaan."

Genesis 45:21

gave them provisions for the journey

“gave them what they needed for traveling”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

21 The sons of Israel did so. Joseph gave them carts, according to the command of Pharaoh, and gave them provisions for the journey.

UST

21 Jacob's sons did what the king commanded. Joseph gave them carts and food to eat along the way, as the king had ordered.

Genesis 45:22

he gave each man changes of clothing

Each man received a set of clothes except for Benjamin who received 5 sets of clothes. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

three hundred pieces

“300 pieces” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver](#)

ULT

²² To all of them he gave each man changes of clothing, but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five changes of clothing.

UST

²² To each of them he gave new clothes, but he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five sets of new clothes to Benjamin!

Genesis 45:23

ten donkeys...and ten female donkeys

The donkeys were included as part of the gift. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- donkey, mule
- bread
- wheat

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- donkey, mule
- bread
- wheat

ULT

23 For his father he sent this: ten donkeys loaded with the good things of Egypt; and ten female donkeys loaded with grain, bread, and other supplies for his father for the journey.

UST

23 This is what he sent to his father: Ten male donkeys, loaded with some of the best things that came from Egypt, and ten female donkeys loaded with grain, bread, and other food for his father's trip to Egypt.

Genesis 45:24

do not quarrel

Possible meanings include 1) "do not argue" and 2) "do not become afraid"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- tremble, stagger

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- tremble, stagger

ULT

24 So he sent his brothers away and they left. He said to them, "See that you do not quarrel on the journey."

UST

24 Then he sent his brothers on their way, saying to them "Do not quarrel along the way!"

Genesis 45:25

went up out of Egypt

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁵ They went up out of Egypt and came to the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father.

UST

²⁵ So the brothers left Egypt and came to their father Jacob in Canaan land.

Genesis 45:26

he is ruler over all the land of Egypt

Here “land of Egypt” stands for the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “he rules all the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

His heart was astonished

Here “heart” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “and he was astonished” or “he was very surprised” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he could not believe what they told him

“he did not accept that what they said was true”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- dominion
- heart
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- dominion
- heart
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁶ They told him saying “Joseph is still alive, and he is ruler over all the land of Egypt.” His heart was astonished, for he could not believe what they told him.

UST

²⁶ One of them told him, “Joseph is still alive! In fact, he is the governor over all of Egypt!” Jacob was extremely astonished; he could not believe that it was true.

Genesis 45:27

They told him

"They told Jacob"

all the words of Joseph that he had said to them

"everything that Joseph had said to them"

the spirit of Jacob their father revived

The word "spirit" stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "Jacob their father recovered" or "Jacob their father became very excited" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- spirit, spiritual
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- spirit, spiritual
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²⁷ They told him all the words of Joseph that he had said to them. When Jacob saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived.

UST

²⁷ But they told him everything that Joseph had said to them, and Jacob saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him and his family and possessions to Egypt. Then Jacob's shock ended.

Genesis 45:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- walk, walked

ULT

²⁸ Israel said, "It is enough. Joseph my son is still alive. I will go and see him before I die."

UST

²⁸ He said, "What you have said is enough to convince me! My son Joseph is still alive, and I will go and see him before I die!"

Genesis 46

Genesis 46 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Going to Egypt

Yahweh allowed Israel to go to Egypt. He was to trust in Yahweh and his covenant faithfulness. God continued to bless them in Egypt. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Shepherds

Because of the regular flooding of the Nile River, Egypt's economy revolved around farming more than raising animals. Therefore, the Egyptians despised the nomadic lifestyle of shepherds. Joseph's instructions permitted the Hebrew people to live separately from the Egyptians.

Genesis 46:1

went to Beersheba

"came to Beersheba"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹ Israel made his journey with all that he had and went to Beersheba. There he offered sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac.

UST

¹ So Jacob left, taking with him all his family and possessions. When they arrived at Beersheba, he offered sacrifices to God, the one whom his father Isaac worshiped.

Genesis 46:2

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

² God spoke to Israel in a vision at night, saying, "Jacob, Jacob." He said, "Here I am."

UST

² That night, God called to Jacob in a vision, saying, "Jacob! Jacob!" He replied, "I am here!"

Genesis 46:3

to go down to Egypt

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

I will make you a great nation

The “you” is singular and refers to Jacob. Here Jacob refers to his descendants that will become a large nation. Alternate translation: “I will give you many descendants, and they will become a great nation” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- God
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation

ULT

³ He said, “I am God, the God of your father. Do not fear to go down to Egypt, for there I will make you a great nation.

UST

³ God said, “I am God, the one your father worshiped. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, because I will give you many descendants, and they will become a great nation there.

Genesis 46:4

into Egypt

“to Egypt”

I will surely bring you up again

The promise was made to Jacob, but the promise would be fulfilled to all of Israel's descendants. Alternate translation: “I will surely bring your descendants out of Egypt again” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

bring you up again

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking about traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand

The phrase “close your eyes with his own hand” is a way of saying that Joseph will be present when Israel dies and it will be Joseph who will close Jacob's eyelids at the time of his death. Alternate translation: “Joseph will even be present with you at the time of your death” (See: [Idiom](#))

will close your eyes

It was a custom to pull down the eyelids when a person died with their eyes open. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand

ULT

⁴ I will go down with you into Egypt, and I will surely bring you up again and Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand.”

UST

⁴ I will go down to Egypt with you, and later I will bring your descendants back to Canaan again. And Joseph will be with you when you die.”

Genesis 46:5

rose up from

“set out from”

in the carts

“Carts” are wagons with two or four wheels. Animals pull the carts. See how you translated “carts” in [Genesis 45:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁵ Jacob rose up from Beersheba. The sons of Israel transported Jacob their father, their children, and their wives, in the carts that Pharaoh had sent to carry him.

UST

⁵ So Jacob left Beersheba, and his sons took their father, their wives, and their children, in the carts that the king had sent for them to travel in.

Genesis 46:6

they had accumulated

“they had acquired” or “they had gained”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- seed, semen

ULT

⁶ They took their livestock and their possessions that they had accumulated in the land of Canaan. They came into Egypt, Jacob and all his descendants with him.

UST

⁶ In this way, Jacob and all his family went to Egypt. They took with them the livestock and all the other possessions that they had acquired in Canaan.

Genesis 46:7

He brought with him

“Jacob brought with him”

his sons’ sons

“his grandsons”

his sons’ daughters

“his granddaughters”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- seed, semen

ULT

⁷ He brought with him to Egypt his sons and his sons’ sons, his daughters and his sons’ daughters, and all his descendants.

UST

⁷ Jacob went to Egypt with all his sons, his daughters, grandsons, and granddaughters—his whole family.

Genesis 46:8

These were the names

This refers to the names of the people that the author is about to list.

of the children of Israel

“of Israel’s family members”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- firstborn

ULT

⁸ These were the names of the children of Israel who came to Egypt: Jacob and his sons, Reuben, Jacob’s firstborn;

UST

⁸ This is a list of the names of the members of Jacob’s family who went with him to Egypt:

Reuben, Jacob’s oldest son;

Genesis 46:9

Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

ULT

⁹ the sons of Reuben, Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi;

UST

⁹ Reuben's sons Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi;

Genesis 46:10

Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite

ULT

¹⁰ the sons of Simeon, Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman;

UST

¹⁰ Simeon and his sons Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, who was the son of woman who came from the Canaanite people group;

Genesis 46:11

Gershon, Kohath, and Merari

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

ULT

¹¹ and the sons of Levi, Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

UST

¹¹ Levi and his sons Gershon, Kohath, and Merari;

Genesis 46:12

Er, Onan, Shelah

These were the sons of Judah by his wife, Shua. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 38:3-5](#).

Perez, and Zerah

These were the sons of Judah by his daughter-in-law, Tamar. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 38:29-30](#).

Hezron...Hamul

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

¹² The sons of Judah were Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah, (but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan). The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

UST

¹² Judah and his sons, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah (his other sons, Er, and Onan, had died in Canaan land);

the two sons of Perez: Hezron and Hamul;

Genesis 46:13

Tola, Puah, Lob...Shimron

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

¹³ The sons of Issachar were Tola, Puah, Lob, and Shimron;

UST

¹³ Issachar and his sons Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron;

Genesis 46:14

Sered, Elon...Jahleel

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁴ The sons of Zebulun were Sered, Elon, and Jahleel

UST

¹⁴ Zebulon and his sons Sered, Elon, and Jahleel

Genesis 46:15

Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 30:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three

Here "sons" and "daughters" refer to Jacob's sons, daughters, and grandchildren related to Leah. Alternate translation: "Altogether he had 33 sons, daughters, and grandchildren" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

15 These were the sons of Leah whom she bore to Jacob in Paddan Aram, along with his daughter Dinah. His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three.

UST

15 These were the sons of Jacob and Leah, who were born in Paddan Aram, in addition to Dinah his daughter. There were thirty-three sons and daughters altogether.

Genesis 46:16

Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi...Areli

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Gad

ULT

16 The sons of Gad were Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.

UST

16 Gad and his sons Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli;

Genesis 46:17

Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi...Beriah...Heber...Malkiel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Serah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)

ULT

17 The sons of Asher were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah; and Serah was their sister. The sons of Beriah were Heber and Malkiel

UST

17 Asher and his sons Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah; and their sister Serah;
Beriah's sons: Heber and Malkiel;

Genesis 46:18

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These sons she bore to Jacob—sixteen in all

This refers to 16 children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren that were related to Zilpah. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

18 These were the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban had given to Leah his daughter. These sons she bore to Jacob—sixteen in all.

UST

18 (Those were the children and grandchildren of Jacob and Zilpah, the slave woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Leah. These were sixteen people altogether.)

Genesis 46:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

¹⁹ The sons of Jacob's wife Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

UST

¹⁹ Joseph and Benjamin, the sons of Jacob's wife Rachel;

Genesis 46:20

Asenath

a woman's name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Potiphera

a man's name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was “the City of the Sun” and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

²⁰ In Egypt Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph by Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On.

UST

²⁰ (Ephraim and Manasseh were Joseph's two sons. They did not go down to Egypt because they had been born in Egypt. They were sons of Asenath, the daughter of On, who was the priest in the temple in the city of On.)

Genesis 46:21

Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

ULT

²¹ The sons of Benjamin were Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.

UST

²¹ Benjamin and his sons Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard;

Genesis 46:22

fourteen in all

This refers to the 14 sons and grandsons related to Rachel. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²² These were the sons of Rachel who were born to Jacob—fourteen in all.

UST

²² (These were the sons and grandsons of Rachel and Jacob. They were fourteen people altogether.)

Genesis 46:23

Hushim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²³ The son of Dan was Hushim.

UST

²³ Dan and his son Hushim;

Genesis 46:24

Jahziel, Guni, Jezer...Shillem

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son

Translation Words - UST

- son

ULT

²⁴ The sons of Naphtali were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.

UST

²⁴ Naphtali and his sons Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.

Genesis 46:25

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

seven in all

This refers to the 7 children and grandchildren related to Bilhah. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ These were the sons born to Jacob by Bilhah, whom Laban gave to Rachel his daughter—seven in all.

UST

²⁵ (These were the sons and grandsons of Jacob and Bilhah, the slave girl whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel. They were seven people altogether.)

Genesis 46:26

sixty-six

"66" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²⁶ All those who went to Egypt with Jacob, who were his descendants, not counting Jacob's sons' wives, were sixty-six in all.

UST

²⁶ Altogether there were sixty-six descendants of Jacob who went to Egypt with him. That number does not include his sons' wives.

Genesis 46:27

seventy

"70" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- house

ULT

²⁷ With the two sons of Joseph who were born to him in Egypt, the members of his family who went to Egypt were seventy in all.

UST

²⁷ Including Jacob and Joseph and Joseph's two sons who were born in Egypt, there were seventy members of Jacob's family when they were all there in Egypt.

Genesis 46:28

to show the way before him to Goshen

“to show them the way to Goshen”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Judea
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁸ Jacob sent Judah ahead of him to Joseph to show the way before him to Goshen, and they came to the land of Goshen.

UST

²⁸ Jacob sent Judah to go ahead of the rest of them to talk with Joseph and to ask for directions on how to travel to Goshen. Then Judah returned to the rest of his family and they all traveled to the region of Goshen. When they arrived there,

Genesis 46:29

Joseph prepared his chariot and went up

Here “Joseph” stands for his servants. Alternate translation: “Joseph’s servants prepared his chariot and Joseph went up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

went up to meet Israel

The phrase “went up” is used because Joseph is traveling to a higher elevation to meet his father. Alternate translation: “went to meet Israel”

hugged his neck, and wept on his neck a long time

“put his arms around his father, and wept for a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

²⁹ Joseph prepared his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen. He saw him, hugged his neck, and wept on his neck a long time.

UST

²⁹ Joseph got his chariot ready and went to Goshen to meet his father. When Joseph arrived, he threw his arms around his father’s neck and cried for a long time.

Genesis 46:30

Now let me die

“Now I am ready to die” or “Now I will die happy”

since I have seen your face, that you are still alive

Here “face” stands for the entire person. Jacob was expressing joy at seeing Joseph. Alternate translation: “since I have seen you alive again” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- face, facial

ULT

³⁰ Israel said to Joseph, “Now let me die, since I have seen your face, that you are still alive.”

UST

³⁰ Jacob said to Joseph, “I have seen you, and now I know that you are still alive! So I am ready to die.”

Genesis 46:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

his father's house

Here "house" stands for his family. Alternate translation: "his father's family" or "his father's household" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will go up and tell Pharaoh

It was common to use the phrase "go up" when referring to someone going to speak with someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: "I will go tell Pharaoh"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house

ULT

³¹ Joseph said to his brothers and to his father's house, "I will go up and tell Pharaoh, saying, 'My brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me."

UST

³¹ Then Joseph said to his brothers and to the rest of his father's family, "I will go to the king and say to him, 'My brothers and my father and the rest of his family, who were living in Canaan land, have all come to me."

Genesis 46:32

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 31 ends here.

The men are shepherds...all that they have

The two-level quotation that began with the words "I will go up" in verse 31 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "I will go up and tell Pharaoh and say that my brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me. I will tell him that the men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock, and that they have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd
- flock, herd

Translation Words - UST

- flock, herd
- flock, herd

ULT

³² The men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock. They have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have.'

UST

³² The men are all shepherds. They take care of their livestock, and they have brought with them their sheep, goats, and cattle, and everything else that they own.'

Genesis 46:33

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

It will come about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event that is about to happen in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out

ULT

³³ It will come about, when Pharaoh calls you and asks, 'What is your occupation?'

UST

³³ When the king summons you and asks, 'What work do you do?'

Genesis 46:34

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 33 ends here.

you should say, 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.'

The two-level quotation that began with the words "when Pharaoh... asks" in verse 33 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "when Pharaoh...asks what your occupation is, that you should say that you have been keepers of livestock from your youth until now, both you and your forefathers. Do this" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Your servants

Joseph's family are to refer to themselves as "your servants" when they speak to Pharaoh. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "We, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians

The abstract noun "abomination" can be translated with the adjective "disgusting." Alternate translation: "Egyptians think shepherds are disgusting" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

34 that you should say, 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.' Do this so that you may live in the land of Goshen, for every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians."

UST

34 answer by saying, 'From the time when we were young, we have taken care of livestock, just as our ancestors did.' If you tell him that, he will let you live in the region of Goshen." Joseph told them to say that because the people of Egypt despised shepherds.

Genesis 47

Genesis 47 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abrahamic covenant

Part of the Abrahamic covenant was that Yahweh would bless those who bless Abraham's descendants. Since Pharaoh cared for the Hebrew people, Yahweh blessed the Egyptians while the Hebrew people lived in Egypt. The Hebrew people also multiplied greatly as this covenant promised. (See: [covenant](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#) and [promise, promised](#))

Jacob was not buried in Egypt

In the ancient Near east, a person was typically buried in their hometown. Since Egypt was not the Israelites' home, Jacob did not wish to be buried in Egypt. This was a lesson to the Israelites that Canaan was their true home, the promised land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

Genesis 47:1

Joseph went in and told Pharaoh

It is not clear whether Joseph went with his father and family from Canaan to Goshen and then alone from Goshen to see the Pharaoh, back to Goshen for his five brothers, and then back to Pharaoh, as the ULT implies, or whether he brought the five brothers with him the first time he went from Goshen to Pharaoh, as the UST states. (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

¹ Then Joseph went in and told Pharaoh, "My father and my brothers, their flocks, their herds, and all that they own, have arrived from the land of Canaan. See, they are in the land of Goshen."

UST

¹⁻² Joseph chose five of his brothers to go with him to talk to the king. He introduced them to the king, and then he said, "My father and my brothers have come from Canaan land. They have brought all their sheep, goats, cattle, and everything else that they own, and they are living now in region of Goshen."

Genesis 47:2**He took five of his brothers and introduced them**

It is not clear whether Joseph went with his father and family from Canaan to Goshen and then alone from Goshen to see the Pharaoh, back to Goshen for his five brothers, and then back to Pharaoh, as the ULT implies, or whether he brought the five brothers with him the first time he went from Goshen to Pharaoh, as the UST states. (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)

ULT

² He took five of his brothers and introduced them to Pharaoh.

UST

¹⁻² Joseph chose five of his brothers to go with him to talk to the king. He introduced them to the king, and then he said, "My father and my brothers have come from Canaan land. They have brought all their sheep, goats, cattle, and everything else that they own, and they are living now in region of Goshen."

Genesis 47:3

Your servants are shepherds

"Your servants shepherd flocks"

Your servants

Joseph's brothers refer to themselves as "your servants." This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "We, your servants" or "We" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

as our ancestors

"both we and our forefathers" or "both we and our ancestors"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

³ Pharaoh said to his brothers, "What is your occupation?" They said to Pharaoh, "Your servants are shepherds, as our ancestors."

UST

³ The king asked the brothers, "What work do you do?" They replied to the king, "We are shepherds, just as our ancestors were."

Genesis 47:4

We come as temporary residents in the land

"We have come to stay for a while in Egypt"

There is no pasture

"There is no grass to eat"

now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁴ Then they said to Pharaoh, "We come as temporary residents in the land. There is no pasture for your servants' flocks, because the famine is severe in the land of Canaan. So now, please let your servants live in the land of Goshen."

UST

⁴ They also said to him, "We have come here to live for a while in this land, because the famine is very severe in Canaan, and our animals have no pasture there. So now, please let us live in the region of Goshen."

Genesis 47:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁵ Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, saying, "Your father and your brothers have come to you.

UST

⁵ The king said to Joseph, "So your father and brothers have come to you.

Genesis 47:6

The land of Egypt is before you

“The land of Egypt is open to you” or “All of the land of Egypt is available to you”

Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen

“Settle your father and your brothers in the land of Goshen, which is the best region”

If you know any capable men among them

It is implied that they are capable of taking care of animals. Alternate translation: “If you know of any men among them who have great skill taking care of animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁶ The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen. If you know any capable men among them, put them in charge of my livestock.”

UST

⁶ They can live wherever you want in all of of Egypt. Give your father and your brothers the best part of the land. They can live in Goshen. And if you know that any of them have any special ability to work with livestock, have them be in charge of my own livestock, too.”

Genesis 47:7

Jacob blessed Pharaoh

Here “blessed” means to express a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Joseph (OT)
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁷ Then Joseph brought in Jacob his father and presented him to Pharaoh. Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

UST

⁷ Then Joseph brought his father Jacob into the palace and introduced him to the king. Jacob asked God to bless the king.

Genesis 47:8

How long have you lived?

“How old are you?”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

⁸ Pharaoh said to Jacob, “How long have you lived?”

UST

⁸ Then the king asked Jacob, “How old are you?”

Genesis 47:9

The years of my travels are a hundred and thirty

The phrase “years of my travels” refers to how long he has lived on the earth traveling from one place to another. Alternate translation: “I have traveled on the earth for 130 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

The years of my life have been few...not been as long as those of my ancestors

Jacob means his life is short compared to the lives of Abraham and Isaac.

painful

Jacob has experienced much pain and trouble during his life.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁹ Jacob said to Pharaoh, “The years of my travels are a hundred and thirty. The years of my life have been few and painful. They have not been as long as those of my ancestors.”

UST

⁹ Jacob replied, “I have been traveling around for 130 years. I have not lived as long as my ancestors, but my life has been full of troubles.”

Genesis 47:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

ULT

¹⁰ Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and went out from his presence.

UST

¹⁰ Then Jacob again asked God to bless the king and left him.

Genesis 47:11

Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers

“Then Joseph took care of his father and his brothers and helped them establish where they would live”

the land of Rameses

This is another name for the land of Goshen. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

11 Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers. He gave them a territory in the land of Egypt, the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.

UST

11 That is how Joseph enabled his father and brothers to start living in Egypt. As the king had commanded, he gave them property in the best part of the land, in Goshen, which is now called Rameses.

Genesis 47:12

according to the number of their dependents

Here, the word “dependents” means the small children in the family.
Alternate translation: “according to how many small children were in their families”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- house

ULT

¹² Joseph provided food for his father, his brothers, and all his father's household, according to the number of their dependents.

UST

¹² Joseph also provided food for all his father's family. The amounts that he gave them were according to how many children each of them had.

Genesis 47:13

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan

This refers to the people living in these lands. Alternate translation: "The people of Egypt and the people of Canaan" (See: [Metonymy](#))

wasted away

"became thin and weak"

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

13 Now there was no food in all the land; for the famine was severe. The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan wasted away because of the famine.

UST

13 There was no food growing in the whole country because the famine was very severe. The people of Egypt and Canaan became weak because they did not have enough food to eat.

Genesis 47:14

Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants

"The people of Egypt and Canaan spent all of their money buying grain from Joseph"

Joseph gathered...Joseph brought

Most likely Joseph ordered his servants to gather and bring the money. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- silver
- earth, earthen, earthly
- glean, gleanings
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- silver
- earth, earthen, earthly
- glean, gleanings
- house

ULT

14 Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants. Then Joseph brought the money to Pharaoh's palace.

UST

14 Joseph received all the money that the people in Egypt and Canaan paid for the grain he sold them, and he brought it to the king's palace.

Genesis 47:15

When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent

Here “lands” stands for the people who live in the lands. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When the people of Egypt and Canaan used up all their money” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

of the lands of Egypt and Canaan

“from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan”

Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?

The people used a question to emphasize how desperate they are to buy food. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Please, do not let us die because we have used up all of our money!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- silver
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- silver
- silver
- bread

ULT

¹⁵ When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent, all the Egyptians came to Joseph saying, “Give us food! Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?”

UST

¹⁵ When the people of Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money for grain, they all kept coming to Joseph and saying, “Please give us some food! If you do not give us grain, we will die! We have used all our money to buy food, and we have no money left!”

Genesis 47:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- silver

ULT

¹⁶ Joseph said, "If your money is gone, bring your livestock and I will give you food in exchange for your livestock."

UST

¹⁶ Joseph replied, "Since your money is all gone, bring me your livestock. If you do that, I will sell you food in exchange for your livestock."

Genesis 47:17

He fed them with bread

Here “bread” stands for food in general. Alternate translation: “He gave them food” or “He provided them with food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [bread](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [bread](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

ULT

17 So they brought their livestock to Joseph. Joseph gave them food in exchange for the horses, for the flocks, for the herds, and for the donkeys. He fed them with bread in exchange for all their livestock that year.

UST

17 So they brought their livestock to Joseph. He gave them food in exchange for their horses, their sheep and goats, their cattle, and their donkeys.

Genesis 47:18

they came to him

“the people came to Joseph”

We will not hide from my master

The people refer to Joseph as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “We will not hide from you, our master” or “We will not hide from you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

There is nothing left in the sight of my master

Here “sight” stands for Joseph himself. Alternate translation: “We have nothing left to give you, our master” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- silver

ULT

18 When that year was ended, they came to him the next year and said to him, “We will not hide from my master that our money is all gone, and the herds of cattle are my master’s. There is nothing left in the sight of my master, except our bodies and our land.”

UST

18 When that year was ended, the next year they came to him and said, “We cannot hide this from you: We have no more money, and now all our cattle belong to you. We have only our bodies and our land to give to you. We have nothing else left.”

Genesis 47:19

Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land?

The word “eyes” refers to Joseph’s sight. The people use a question to emphasize how desperate they are to buy food. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Please do not just watch as we die and our land is ruined!” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why should we die...both we and our land

The land becomes useless and ruined because there is no seed to plant; thus it is spoken of as if the land would die. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

19 Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land in exchange for food, and we and our land will be servants to Pharaoh. Give us seed that we may live and not die, and that the land may not become desolate.”

UST

19 If you do not give us some food, we will die! If you do not give us seeds, our fields will become useless. Buy us and our land in exchange for food. Then we will be the king’s slaves, and he will own the land. Give us seeds so that we can plant and grow food, in order that we will not die, and in order that our land will not become like a desert.”

Genesis 47:20

In this way, the land became Pharaoh's

"So the land became Pharaoh's"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

²⁰ So Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh. For every Egyptian sold his field, because the famine was very severe. In this way, the land became Pharaoh's.

UST

²⁰ So Joseph bought all the farms in Egypt for the king. The people of Egypt each sold their land to him because the famine was very severe and they had no other way to buy food. So all the farms became the king's farms.

Genesis 47:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,

ULT

²¹ As for the people, he made them slaves from one end of Egypt's border to the other end.

UST

²¹ As a result, Joseph caused all the people from one border of the country to the other to become the king's slaves.

Genesis 47:22

It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy

“But he did not buy the land of the priests”

the priests were given an allowance

An “allowance” is an amount of money or food that someone regularly gives to another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Pharaoh gave the priests a certain amount of food each day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them

“They ate from what Pharaoh gave them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [devour](#)
- [statute](#)
- [statute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [devour](#)
- [statute](#)
- [statute](#)

ULT

²² It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy, because the priests were given an allowance. They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them. Therefore they did not sell their land.

UST

²² But he did not buy the priests' land, because they received their food from the king regularly. That is the reason they did not sell their land to him.

Genesis 47:23

and you will plant

“that you might sow”

Translation Words - ULT

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Joseph (OT)
- people, people group,
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Joseph (OT)
- people, people group,
- seed, semen

ULT

²³ Then Joseph said to the people, “See, I have bought you and your land today for Pharaoh. Now here is seed for you, and you will plant the land.

UST

²³ Joseph said to the people, “Listen to me! Today I have bought you and your land for the king. So here are seeds for you so that you can plant them in the ground.

Genesis 47:24

At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own

The word “fifth” is a fraction. Alternate translation: “At harvest time you will divide the crops into five parts. You will give one part back to Pharaoh for payment and the four parts are for your own” (See: [Fractions](#))

for food for your households and your children

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: “for food for your households and for food for your children” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)

ULT

²⁴ At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own, for seed of the field and for food for your households and your children.”

UST

²⁴ But when you harvest the crop, you must give one-fifth of the crop to the king. The rest of the crop you can keep to be seed to plant in the fields and to be food for you and your children and for everyone else in your household to eat.”

Genesis 47:25

May we find favor in your eyes

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “May you be pleased with us” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

²⁵ They said, “You have saved our lives. May we find favor in your eyes. We will be Pharaoh’s servants.”

UST

²⁵ They replied, “You have saved our lives! We want you to be pleased with us. And we will be the king’s slaves.”

Genesis 47:26

in the land of Egypt

“over the land of Egypt” or “throughout the land of Egypt”

to this day

This means to the time that the author was writing this.

one-fifth

See how you translated “a fifth” in [Genesis 47:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

ULT

²⁶ So Joseph made it a statute which is in effect in the land of Egypt to this day, that one-fifth belongs to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests did not become Pharaoh's.

UST

²⁶ So Joseph made a law about all the land in Egypt, stating that one-fifth of the crops that are harvested belongs to the king. That law still exists. Only the land that belonged to the priests did not become the king's land.

Genesis 47:27

They were fruitful and multiplied greatly

The word “multiplied” explains how they were “fruitful.” Alternate translation: “They had very many children” (See: [Doublet](#))

were fruitful

Here “fruitful” means to prosper or to have children. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

ULT

²⁷ So Israel lived in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen. His people gained possessions there. They were fruitful and multiplied greatly.

UST

²⁷ Jacob and his family started to live in Egypt, in the region of Goshen. They acquired property there. Many children were born to them there. As a result, their population increased greatly.

Genesis 47:28

seventeen years

“17 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

so the years of Jacob’s life were one hundred forty-seven years

“so Jacob lived to be 147 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelite](#), [Jacob](#) (2)

ULT

²⁸ Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, so the years of Jacob’s life were one hundred forty-seven years.

UST

²⁸ Jacob lived in Egypt seventeen years. Altogether he lived 147 years.

Genesis 47:29

When the time approached for Israel to die

This speaks about time as if it travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: "When it was almost time for Israel to die" (See:

[Metaphor](#))

If now I have found favor in your eyes

Here "eyes" is a metonym for sight, and "sight" stands for thoughts or opinions. Alternate translation: "If I have found favor with you" or "If I have pleased you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

found favor

This means that someone is approved of by someone else. (See: [Idiom](#))

put your hand under my thigh

This act is a sign of making a serious promise. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:2](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

show me faithfulness and trustworthiness

The abstract nouns "faithfulness" and "trustworthiness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "treat me in a faithful and trustworthy manner" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Please do not bury me in Egypt

The word "please" adds emphasis to this request.

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- bury, buried, burial
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- son

ULT

29 When the time approached for Israel to die, he called his son Joseph and said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, put your hand under my thigh, and show me faithfulness and trustworthiness. Please do not bury me in Egypt.

UST

29 When it was almost time for him to die, he summoned his son Joseph and said to him, "If I have pleased you, put your hand between my thighs to solemnly promise that you will be faithful to me as your father and do what I am now trusting you to do: When I die, do not bury me here in Egypt.

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- true, truth
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- bury, buried, burial
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- declare, proclaim, announce

Genesis 47:30

When I sleep with my fathers

Here “sleep” is a polite way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: “When I die and join my family members who died before me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

30 When I sleep with my fathers, you will carry me out of Egypt and bury me in my forefathers' burial place.” Joseph said, “I will do as you have said.”

UST

30 Instead, when I die and join my ancestors who have died previously, take my body out of Egypt, and bury it in Canaan where they are buried.” Joseph replied, “I will do what you have said.”

Genesis 47:31

Swear to me

"Promise me" or "Make an oath to me"

swore to him

"promised him" or "made an oath to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- prostrate, worship
- head
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- prostrate, worship
- head
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

³¹ Israel said, "Swear to me," and Joseph swore to him. Then Israel bowed down at the head of his bed.

UST

³¹ Jacob said, "Swear to me that you will do it!" So Joseph swore to do it. Then Jacob bowed down as he worshiped God, near the head of his bed.

Genesis 48

Genesis 48 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 48:15-16, and in 58:20.

Special concepts in this chapter

Blessing

The blessing of Jacob is given to Joseph, and his sons Manasseh and Ephraim. It is probably distinct from inheriting the promises Yahweh gave to Abraham because Scripture talks about all of Israel's descendants inheriting those promises. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Genesis 48:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

one said to Joseph

"someone said to Joseph"

Look, your father

"Listen, your father." Here the word "look" is used to get Joseph's attention.

So he took

"So Joseph took"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹ It came about after these things, that one said to Joseph, "Look, your father is sick." So he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.

UST

¹ Some time after this, someone told Joseph, "Your father is ill." When Joseph heard that, he took his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim, to see his father.

Genesis 48:2

When Jacob was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone told Jacob" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your son Joseph has arrived to see you

"your son Joseph has come to you"

Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed

Here the author speaks of Israel struggling to sit up in bed as if he were gathering "strength" as someone gathers actual things. Alternate translation: "Israel made a great effort to sit up in bed" or "Israel struggled as he sat up in bed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

² When Jacob was told, "Look, your son Joseph has arrived to see you," Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed.

UST

² When someone told Jacob, "Look, your son Joseph has come to see you!" Jacob, also called Israel, made an effort and sat up on the bed, even though it was difficult for him to do that.

Genesis 48:3

Luz

This is the name of a city. See how you translated the name of this city in [Genesis 28:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Canaan. He blessed me

This can be translated with the new sentence starting in a different place. Alternate translation: “in the land of Canaan, and he blessed me”

blessed

This refers to God pronouncing a formal blessing on someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

³ Jacob said to Joseph, “God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan. He blessed me

UST

³ He said to Joseph, “When I was at Luz in the land of Canaan, God Almighty appeared to me. He blessed me

Genesis 48:4

and said to me

This can be translated with the new sentence starting in a different place. Alternate translation: “And he said to me”

said to me, ‘Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “said to me that he would make me fruitful and multiply me. And, he said that he would make me an assembly of nations and he would give this land to my descendants as an everlasting possession.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Behold

God used the word “behold” here to alert Jacob to pay attention to what he was about to tell him.

I will make you fruitful, and multiply you

The phrase “multiply you” explains how God would make Jacob “fruitful.” Alternate translation: “I will give you very many descendants” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

I will make of you an assembly of nations

Here “you” refers to Jacob, but it stands for Jacob’s descendants. Alternate translation: “I will make your descendants into many nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

an everlasting possession

“a permanent possession”

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

⁴ and said to me, ‘Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.’

UST

⁴ and said to me, ‘I am going to enable you to become the father of many children. You will have many descendants, and they will become many people groups. And I will give this land to your descendants to possess forever.’

Genesis 48:5

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine

Ephraim and Manasseh each will receive a portion of land just like Joseph’s brothers.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian

ULT

⁵ Now your two sons, who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you into Egypt, they are mine. Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine.

UST

⁵ And now I will consider that your two sons, who were born to you here in Egypt before I came here, belong to me. Ephraim and Manasseh will be my sons, and they will inherit my possessions, just like my sons Reuben and Simeon and the others will.

Genesis 48:6

they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance

Possible meanings are 1)the rest of Joseph's children would inherit land as part of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh or 2) Joseph will be given separate land from Ephraim and Manasseh and Joseph's other children will inherit that land. Alternate translation: "as for their inheritance, you will list them under the names of their brothers"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother
- name

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother
- name

ULT

⁶ The children you have after them will be yours; they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance.

UST

⁶ If you later become the father of any more children, they will not be considered to be my children, but instead as my grandchildren. They will receive as part of what they inherit some of the same land that is in the territory that their brothers will inherit.

Genesis 48:7

Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem. See how you translated the name of this city in [Genesis 35:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

⁷ But as for me, when I came from Paddan, to my sorrow Rachel died in the land of Canaan on the way, while there was still some distance to go to Ephrath. I buried her there on the way to Ephrath" (that is, Bethlehem).

UST

⁷ Many years ago, as I was returning from Paddan Aram, your mother Rachel sadly died in the land of Canaan, while we were still traveling, not far from the town of Ephrath. So I buried her body there alongside the road to Ephrath" (which is now called Bethlehem).

Genesis 48:8

Whose are these?

“Whose sons are these?”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁸ When Israel saw Joseph's sons, he said, “Whose are these?”

UST

⁸ When Jacob saw Joseph's sons, he asked, “Who are these boys?”

Genesis 48:9

bless

A father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children or grandchildren.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- God
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- God
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁹ Joseph said to his father, "They are my sons, whom God has given me here." Israel said, "Bring them to me, that I may bless them."

UST

⁹ Joseph replied to his father, "They are the sons that God has given to me here in Egypt." Jacob said, "Bring them close to me so that I can bless them."

Genesis 48:10

Now Israel's eyes...could not see

The word "Now" is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Israel. (See: [Background Information](#))

he kissed them

"Israel kissed them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now Israel's eyes were failing because of his age, so he could not see. So Joseph brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them.

UST

¹⁰ Jacob was almost blind because he was very old. He could not see well. So Joseph brought his sons close to his father, and Jacob kissed them and hugged them.

Genesis 48:11

to see your face again

Here “face” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “to see you again” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- seed, semen
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- seed, semen
- face, facial

ULT

11 Israel said to Joseph, “I never expected to see your face again, but God has even allowed me to see your children.”

UST

11 Jacob said to Joseph, “I did not expect to see your face again, but look at this! God has allowed me to see you, and he has allowed me to see your children, too!”

Genesis 48:12

between Israel's knees

When Joseph placed his sons on Israel's lap or knees it was a sign that Israel was adopting them. This gave the children special inheritance rights from Jacob. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

then he bowed with his face to the earth

Joseph bowed down to show honor to his father. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

ULT

¹² Joseph brought them out from between Israel's knees, and then he bowed with his face to the earth.

UST

¹² Joseph took the boys from Jacob's knees. Then he bowed down with his face to the ground.

Genesis 48:13

Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand

Joseph places the boys so that Israel will put his right hand on Manasseh. Manasseh was the oldest brother and the right hand was the sign he would receive the greater blessing. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

13 Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand, and brought them close to him.

UST

13 Then Joseph took both of the boys, putting Ephraim on his right side toward Jacob's left hand, and putting Manasseh on his left side toward Jacob's right hand, and brought them close to Jacob.

Genesis 48:14**his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head**

Placing the right hand on Ephraim's head was the sign that he would receive the greater blessing. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

14 Israel reached out with his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head, who was the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh's head. He crossed his hands, for Manasseh was the firstborn.

UST

14 But Jacob did not do what Joseph wanted him to do. Instead, he reached out his right hand and put it on Ephraim's head, even though he was the younger son. He crossed his arms and put his left hand on Manasseh's head, even though Manasseh was the older son.

Genesis 48:15

Israel blessed Joseph

Here “Joseph” also stands for Ephraim and Manasseh. Since Joseph is the father, he is the only one mentioned here. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked

Serving God is spoken of as if it were walking before God. Alternate translation: “The God who my grandfather Abraham and father Isaac served” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who has cared for me

God has taken care of Israel like a shepherd takes care of his sheep. Alternate translation: “who has cared for me like a shepherd cares for his animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked

ULT

15 Israel blessed Joseph, saying, “The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has cared for me to this day,

UST

15 Then he blessed Joseph and his sons, saying, “My grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac conducted their lives as God desired, and to this very day God has led me and taken care of me as a shepherd leads and cares for his sheep.

Genesis 48:16

the angel

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the angel that God sent to protect Jacob or 2) this refers to God who appeared in angel form to protect Jacob.

protected me

“delivered me”

May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac

Here “name” stands for the person. The phrase “my name be named in them” is an idiom that means a person is remembered because of another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “May people remember Abraham, Isaac, and me because of Ephraim and Manasseh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

May they grow into a multitude on the earth

Here “they” refers to Ephraim and Manasseh, but it stands for their descendants. Alternate translation: “May they have many descendants who will live all over the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

16 the angel who has protected me from all harm, may he bless these boys. May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac. May they grow into a multitude on the earth.”

UST

16 The angel whom he sent has kept me from being harmed in any way. I pray that God will bless these boys. I pray that people will think about me and my ancestors, Abraham and Isaac, because of what God does for them. I pray that they will have many descendants who will live all over the earth.”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- name
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Genesis 48:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephraim, Ephraimite (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand (2)
- head
- head
- head (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephraim, Ephraimite (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand (2)
- head
- head
- head (2)

ULT

17 When Joseph saw his father place his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him. He took his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.

UST

17 When Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on Ephraim's head and not on Manasseh's head, he was distressed. So he took his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.

Genesis 48:18

Put your right hand upon his head

The right hand was the sign of the greater blessing which the oldest son was supposed to receive. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

18 Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father; for this is the firstborn. Put your right hand upon his head."

UST

18 Joseph said to him, "My father, that is not right! The one on whom you put your left hand is my older son. Put your right hand on his head."

Genesis 48:19

He also will become a people, and he also will be great

Here “He” refers to Manasseh, but it stands for his descendants.
Alternate translation: “Your older son will have many descendants, and they will become a great people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- nation
- proud, pride, prideful
- proud, pride, prideful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- nation
- proud, pride, prideful
- proud, pride, prideful
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

19 His father refused and said, “I know, my son, I know. He also will become a people, and he also will be great. Yet his younger brother will be greater than he, and his descendants will become a multitude of nations.”

UST

19 But his father refused, saying, “I know that, my son; I know what I am doing. Manasseh’s descendants will also become a people group, and they will become important. But his younger brother’s descendants will become greater than his will. His descendants will become many nations.”

Genesis 48:20

that day with these words

“that day, saying”

The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying

“The people of Israel will speak your names when they are blessing others”

by your names saying, ‘May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “by your names. They will ask God to make others like Ephraim and like Manasseh” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

like Ephraim and like Manasseh

Israel saying Ephraim’s name first is another way he indicates that Ephraim will be greater than Manasseh.

Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh

Giving Ephraim the greater blessing and making him more important than Manasseh is spoken of as if Israel physically put Ephraim in front of Manasseh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

²⁰ Israel blessed them that day with these words, “The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying, ‘May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh.’” In this way, Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh.

UST

²⁰ So he blessed them both on that day, saying, “The people in Israel will use your names when they bless people. They will say, ‘We pray that God will help you as he helped Ephraim and Manasseh.’” In that way, Jacob said that Ephraim would become more important than Manasseh.

Genesis 48:21

will be with you...bring you back...your fathers

Here “you” and “your” are plural and refer to all the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

will be with you

This is an idiom that means God will help and bless the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “God will help you” or “God will bless you” (See: [Idiom](#))

will bring you back

Here “bring” can be translated as “take.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

land of your fathers

“land of your ancestors”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

21 Israel said to Joseph, “See, I am about to die, but God will be with you, and will bring you back to the land of your fathers.

UST

21 Then Jacob said to Joseph, “I am about to die. But I know that God will help you. Some day he will take your descendants back to the land of their ancestors.

Genesis 48:22

To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope

Possible meanings are 1) Joseph having more honor and authority than his brothers is spoken of as if he were physically above them. Alternate translation: "To you, who is greater than your brothers, I give the mountain slope" or 2) Jacob means he is giving more land to Joseph than he is giving to Joseph's brothers. Alternate translation: "To you, I give one more ridge than I give your brothers. I give to you the mountain slope" (See: [Metaphor](#))

To you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Joseph. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow

Here "sword" and "bow" stands for fighting in battle. Alternate translation: "the portion of land I fought for and took from the Amorites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

²² To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow."

UST

²² It is to you, who stands above your brothers that I will give the fertile hill in the area of Shechem. I captured that land from the Amor people group, fighting them with my sword and my bow and arrows."

Genesis 49

Genesis 49 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 49:1-27.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecies

These statements made by Jacob to his sons are probably prophecies. These prophecies are concerned with the descendants of each of Jacob's sons who would become the twelve tribes of Israel. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The scepter will not depart from Judah"

This prophecy indicates Judah will be the ruling tribe of Israel. The future kings of Israel all come from the tribe of Judah. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

"I buried Leah"

Since Moses wrote the book of Genesis, this is an editorial comment he makes in the text as the narrator.

Genesis 49:1

General Information:

This begins Jacob's final blessings to his sons. This continues through [Genesis 49:27](#). Jacob's blessings are written in poetic form. (See: [Poetry](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- declare, proclaim, announce

ULT

¹ Then Jacob called for his sons, and said: "Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you what will happen to you in the future.

UST

¹ Jacob summoned all his sons and said to them,

Genesis 49:2

Assemble yourselves and listen, you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father

Both sentences say the same thing for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Come and listen carefully to your father" (See: [Parallelism](#))

you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father

Jacob is referring to himself in the third person. It can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "my sons. Listen to me, your father" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

² Assemble yourselves and listen, you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father.

UST

² "Gather around close to me in order that I can tell you what will happen in the future. My sons, come and listen to me. I am your father, Jacob.

Genesis 49:3

my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength

The phrases “my firstborn, my might” and “the beginning of my strength” mean the same thing. The words “might” and “strength” stand for Jacob’s ability to produce children. The words “firstborn” and “beginning” mean that Reuben is his first child. Alternate translation: “my first child after I became a man” (See: [Parallelism](#))

outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “You are first in honor and power” or “You surpass everyone else in honor and power”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Reuben](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

³ Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power.

UST

³ Reuben, you are my oldest son. You were born when I was young and energetic. When I became a grown man, you were my first child. You are prouder and stronger than all the rest of my sons.

Genesis 49:4

Uncontrollable as rushing water

Jacob compares Reuben to water in a strong current to emphasize that he cannot control his anger and he is not stable. (See: [Simile](#))

you will not have the preeminence

“you shall not be first among your brothers”

because you went up to your father’s bed. Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch

Here “bed” and “couch” stand for Jacob’s concubine, Bilhah. Jacob is referring to when Reuben slept with Bilhah ([Genesis 35:22](#)). Alternate translation: “because you went to my bed and slept with Bilhah my concubine. You have shamed me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you went up to your father’s bed...you went up to my couch

Both statements mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

ULT

⁴ Uncontrollable as rushing water, you will not have the preeminence, because you went up to your father’s bed. Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch.

UST

⁴ But you were as unstable as ocean waves. So now you will not be my most important son, because you climbed up onto my bed and slept with my concubine. That caused me, your father, to have great shame.

Genesis 49:5

Simeon and Levi are brothers

This does not just mean they are brothers by birth. Jacob is emphasizing that they worked together to kill the people of Shechem.

Weapons of violence are their swords

“They use their swords to hurt and to kill people”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother

Translation Words - UST

- brother

ULT

⁵ Simeon and Levi are brothers.
Weapons of violence are their swords.

UST

⁵ Simeon and Levi, you two brothers
have both acted like criminals. You use
your swords to act violently.

Genesis 49:6

O my soul...my heart

Jacob uses the words “soul” and “heart” to refer to himself and is saying that other people, and perhaps God also, honor him so much that he does not wish to join with those who make plans to do evil. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

do not come into their council; do not join in their meetings

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Jacob combines them to emphasize that he does not want to participate in their wicked plans. Alternate translation: “I certainly will not join with them to make any plans” (See: [Parallelism](#))

they hamstrung oxen

This refers to Simeon and Levi crippling oxen just for fun.

hamstrung

This refers to cutting the sinews of an animal's leg so that it cannot walk.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- glory, glorious, glorify
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- glory, glorious, glorify
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

ULT

⁶ O my soul, do not come into their council; do not join in their meetings, for my heart has too much honor for that. For in their anger they killed men. It was for pleasure that they hamstrung oxen.

UST

⁶ I do not want to be with you when you make evil plans. I am too honorable to join you in your meetings, because you killed people when you became very angry, and you hamstrung oxen just to have fun.

Genesis 49:7

May their anger be cursed, for it was fierce—and their fury, for it was cruel

God cursing Simeon and Levi is spoken of as if God were cursing their anger and fury. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Lord says, ‘I will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury’ or ‘I, the Lord, will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury’” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

May their anger be cursed

In prophecy, the prophet will often speak the words of God as if God himself were speaking. This emphasizes how closely united the prophet and God are.

their fury, for it was cruel

The words “I will curse” are understood. Alternate translation: “I will curse their fury, for it was cruel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel

The word “I” refers to God. The word “them” refers to Simeon and Levi but they are a metonym standing for their descendants. The words “Jacob” and “Israel” are a metonym standing for all people of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will divide their descendants and scatter them among all the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works

Translation Words - UST

- curse, cursed, cursing
- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works

ULT

⁷ May their anger be cursed, for it was fierce—and their fury, for it was cruel. I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel.

UST

⁷ God says, ‘I will curse them for being very angry, for acting very cruelly when they were very furious. I will scatter their descendants throughout Israel land.’

Genesis 49:8

your brothers will praise you...Your father's sons will bow down before you

These two statements mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

will praise you. Your hand

The second sentence states the reason for the first sentence. This can be made clear with "for" or "because." Alternate translation: "will praise you. For your hand" or "will praise you because your hand" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies

This is a way of saying "You will conquer your enemies." (See: [Idiom](#))

bow down

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- prostrate, worship
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- prostrate, worship
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- adversary, enemy

ULT

⁸ Judah, your brothers will praise you. Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies. Your father's sons will bow down before you.

UST

⁸ Judah, your older and younger brothers will praise you. They will bow down before you, because you will thoroughly defeat your enemies.

Genesis 49:9

Judah is a lion's cub

Jacob speaks about Judah as if he were a lion's cub. Jacob is emphasizing Judah's strength. Alternate translation: "Judah is like a young lion" (See: [Metaphor](#))

My son, you have gone up from your victims

"You, my son, have come back from eating your prey"

like a lioness

Jacob also compares Judah to a female lion. The lioness is the primary hunter and protector of her cubs. (See: [Simile](#))

Who would dare to awaken him?

Jacob uses a question to emphasize how terrifying Judah is to other people. Alternate translation: "No one wants to wake him up." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁹ Judah is a lion's cub. My son, you have gone up from your victims. He stooped down, he crouched like a lion, like a lioness. Who would dare to awaken him?

UST

⁹ Judah is like a young lion that has returned to its den satisfied after eating the animals that it has killed. He is like a lion that lies down and stretches out after eating; no one would dare to disturb it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [lion, lioness](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [lion, lioness](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Genesis 49:10

The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet

The "scepter" and the "staff" are long decorated sticks that kings carried. Here they are metonymies that stand for the power to rule. And, "Judah" stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "The power to rule will always be with the descendants of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him

Possible meanings are 1) "Shiloh" means "tribute." Alternate translation: "until the nations obey him and bring him tribute" or 2) "Shiloh" refers to the city of Shiloh. Alternate translation: "until the ruler comes to Shiloh. Then the nations will obey him" Many people consider this a prophecy about the Messiah, who is a descendant of King David. David is a descendant of Judah.

The nations will obey him

Here "nations" refer to the people. Alternate translation: "The people of the nations will obey him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

¹⁰ The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him.

UST

¹⁰ There will always be a ruler from the descendants of Judah. Each one will hold a scepter to show that he has authority as a king. He will do that until nations bring tribute to him and show that they will obey him.

Genesis 49:11

Binding his donkey...to the choice vine

Both statements mean the same thing. It is implied that the vines are so full of grapes that the master does not mind that his donkey eats some of them. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his...he

Possible meanings for all occurrences of "his" or "he" are 1) they refer to Judah's descendants. Alternate translation: "their...they" or 2) they refer to the ruler in [Genesis 49:10](#), which may refer to the Messiah.

he has washed...in the blood of grapes

Both statements mean the same thing. It implies that there are so many grapes that they can wash their clothes in the juice. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he has washed

Often in prophecy events that will happen in the future are described as something that has already happened in the past. This emphasizes that this event will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "they will wash" or "he will wash" (See: [Predictive Past](#))

the blood of grapes

This speaks about the grape juice as if it were blood. This emphasizes how red the juice is. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- robe, robed
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- grape, grapevine

Translation Words - UST

- son
- robe, robed
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- grape, grapevine

ULT

11 Binding his donkey to the vine, and his donkey's colt to the choice vine, he has washed his garments in wine, and his robe in the blood of grapes.

UST

11 The grapevines of his descendants will produce grapes very abundantly. As a result, they will not object to tying their young donkeys to the grapevines in order that they can eat the leaves of the grapevines. Wine will be very plentiful, with the result that they will wash their clothes in wine; they will wash their cloaks in wine that is as red as blood.

Genesis 49:12**His eyes will be as dark as wine**

This refers to the color of a person's eyes to the red color of wine. Possible meanings are 1) dark eyes imply healthy eyes or 2) people eyes will be red from drinking too much of wine. (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his teeth as white as milk

This compare the color of the person's teeth to the white color of milk. This implies that there will be so many healthy cows they will have much milk to drink. (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² His eyes will be as dark as wine, and his teeth as white as milk.

UST

¹² Their eyes will be red because of drinking too much wine, but their teeth will be very white because of drinking much milk from the cows.

Genesis 49:13

Zebulun will live

This refers to the descendants of Zebulun. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Zebulun will live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will be a harbor

Here “He” stands for sea towns that the people of Zebulun will inhabit or build. These cities will provide shelter for ships. (See: [Metonymy](#))

harbor

a part of the sea that is next to land and is a safe place for ships

ULT

13 Zebulun will live by the shore of the sea. He will be a harbor for ships, and his border will extend to Sidon.

UST

13 Zebulun, your descendants will live by the seashore where there will be a safe harbor for ships. Their land will extend north as far as the city of Sidon.

Genesis 49:14

Issachar is a strong donkey

Jacob speaks about Issachar and his descendants as if they are a donkey. This emphasizes that they will work very hard. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Issachar will be like a strong donkey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Issachar is

Often in prophecy events that will happen in the future are described as something that is already happening. This emphasizes that the event will certainly happen. It can be stated in the future tense. Alternate translation: "Issachar will be" or "The descendants of Issachar will be"

lying down between the sheepfolds

Possible meanings are 1) "lying down between the packs they were carrying" or 2) "lying down between two sheep pens." Either way, Jacob speaks about Issachar's descendants as if they are donkeys that have worked hard and are lying down to rest. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [donkey](#), [mule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [donkey](#), [mule](#)

ULT

14 Issachar is a strong donkey, lying down between the sheepfolds.

UST

14 Issachar, your descendants will be like strong donkeys that are lying down between two groups of sheep. so tired that they cannot get up!

Genesis 49:15

He sees...He will

These words refer to the descendants of Issachar (verse 14).
Alternate translation: "They see...They will" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a good resting place and the pleasant land

"a resting place that is good and that the land is pleasant"

He will bend his shoulder to the burden

The phrase "bend his shoulder to the burden" is a way of saying
"work very hard to carry the load" (See: [Idiom](#))

become a servant for the task

"will work for others as slaves"

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [rest](#), [rested](#), [restless](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

15 He sees a good resting place and the pleasant land. He will bend his shoulder to the burden and become a servant for the task.

UST

15 They will see that their resting place is good and that the land pleases them very much. But they will bend their backs to carry heavy loads and be forced to work for others.

Genesis 49:16

Dan will judge his people

Here “Dan” stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Dan will judge their people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his people

Possible meanings for “his people” are 1) “the people of Dan” or 2) “the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

ULT

16 Dan will judge his people as one of the tribes of Israel.

UST

16 Dan, although your tribe will be small, your leaders will rule their people just as the leaders of other tribes of Israel will rule their people.

Genesis 49:17

Dan will be a snake beside the road

Jacob speaks about Dan and his descendants as if they were snakes. Though a snake is small, it can bring down a rider off his horse. So Dan, though a small tribe, is very dangerous to its enemies. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Dan will be like a snake beside the road" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

ULT

17 Dan will be a snake beside the road, a poisonous snake in the path that bites the horse's heels, so that his rider falls backward.

UST

17 Your descendants will be like snakes at the side of a road, like poisonous snakes lying beside a path. They will strike the heels of horses that pass by, causing the riders to fall backwards as the horses rear up on their hind legs."

Genesis 49:18

I wait for your salvation, Yahweh

The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated as “save.” Alternate translation: “I wait for you, Yahweh, to save me”

I wait

The word “I” refers to Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

18 I wait for your salvation, Yahweh.

UST

18 Then Jacob prayed, “Yahweh, I am waiting for you to rescue me from my enemies.”

Genesis 49:19

Gad...attack him, but he

Here “Gad” stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Gad...attack them, but they” (See: [Metonymy](#))

at their heels

Here “heels” stands for the raiders who are running away from the descendants of Gad. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gad](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Gad](#)

ULT

19 Gad—raiders will attack him, but he will attack them at their heels.

UST

19 Then Jacob continued telling his sons what would happen in the future. He said, “Gad, your tribe will be attacked by a group of bandits, but your tribe will pursue and attack them.”

Genesis 49:20

Asher's food...and he

Here "Asher" stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "Asher's descendants' food...and they" (See: [Metonymy](#))

food will be rich

Here "rich" is a way of saying "delicious." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁰ Asher's food will be rich, and he will provide royal delicacies.

UST

²⁰ Asher, your descendants will eat good tasting food; they will produce food that is delicious enough for kings to eat.

Genesis 49:21

Naphtali is...he will

Here "Naphtali" stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Naphtali are...they will" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Naphtali is a doe let loose

Jacob speaks about the descendants of Naphtali as if they were a female deer that is free to run. This may emphasize that they will be swift messengers. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Naphtali will be like deer set free" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have beautiful fawns

A "fawn" is a baby deer. The meaning of the Hebrew word is unclear. Some versions translate it as "have beautiful words" or "speak beautiful things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

21 Naphtali is a doe let loose; he will have beautiful fawns.

UST

21 Naphtali, your descendants will be like deer that run free, deer that have beautiful fawns.

Genesis 49:22

Joseph is a fruitful bough

Here “Joseph” is a metonym that stands for his descendants. Jacob speaks about them as if they were a tree branch that produces a lot of fruit. This emphasizes that they will greatly increase in number. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Joseph are a fruitful bough” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

bough

a main branch of a tree

whose branches climb over the wall

Branches that grow and extend over a wall are spoken of as if they were climbing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

²² Joseph is a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough near a spring, whose branches climb over the wall.

UST

²² Joseph, you will have many descendants. Their children will be as many as the fruit on a vine near a spring of water, whose branches extend over a wall.

Genesis 49:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound

Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound

ULT

²³ The archers will attack him and shoot at him and harass him.

UST

²³ Their enemies will attack them fiercely, and shoot at them with bows and arrows and pursue them.

Genesis 49:24

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants.

his bow will remain steady

The person holding the bow steady is spoken of as if the bow itself will remain steady. It is implied he is holding it steady as he aims at his enemy. Alternate translation: "he will hold his bow steady as he aims at his enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his bow...his hands

Here "his" refers to Joseph who stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "their bow...their hands" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his hands will be skillful

Here the whole person is represented by the "hands" since they are used to hold the bow. Alternate translation: "his arms will remain strong as he aims his bow" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the hands of the Mighty One

The "hands" are expressing the power of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the power of the Mighty One" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because of the name of the Shepherd

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of the Shepherd" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Shepherd

Jacob speak of Yahweh as if he were a "Shepherd." This emphasizes that Yahweh guides and protects his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Rock

Jacob speaks of Yahweh as if he were a "Rock" that people can climb upon to find safety from enemies. This emphasizes that Yahweh protects his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

24 But his bow will remain steady, and his hands will be skillful because of the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob, because of the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.

UST

24 But they will hold their bows steady and their arms will remain strong, because of the power of my mighty God, because of Yahweh, who guides and provides for me, as a shepherd guides and provides for his sheep. The people of Israel will ask Yahweh to protect them, as people take refuge on top of a high rock.

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

Genesis 49:25

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants ([Genesis 49:22-23](#)).

help you...bless you

Here "you" refers to Joseph who stands for his descendants.
Alternate translation: "help your descendants...bless them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the sky

Here "sky" stands for the rain that helps the crops to grow. (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the deep that lies beneath

Here "deep" stands for the water underneath the ground that supplies rivers and wells. (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the breasts and womb

Here "breasts and womb" stand for the ability for a mother to have children and feed them milk. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing (2)
- Almighty
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing (2)
- Almighty
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²⁵ The God of your father will help you and the Almighty God will bless you with blessings of the sky above, blessings of the deep that lies beneath, and blessings of the breasts and womb.

UST

²⁵ God, the one whom I worship, will help your descendants. God Almighty will bless them by sending them rain from the sky and by giving them water from deep below the ground. He will give them many children and will nourish them.

Genesis 49:26

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants.

the ancient mountains

The meaning of the original language is not certain. Some Bible translations have "my ancestors" instead of "ancient mountains."

May they be on the head of Joseph

Here "they" refers to the blessings of his father.

upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers

Jacob desires for these blessings to be passed on to even the most important of his descendants. Alternate translation: "on the head of the most important of Joseph's descendants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

prince of his brothers

"most important of his brothers"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#) (2)
- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#) (2)
- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

26 The blessings of your father are greater than the blessings of the ancient mountains or the desirable things of the ancient hills. May they be on the head of Joseph, even upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers.

UST

26 The blessings that I want God to give you are great ones. They are greater than the blessings that come from the eternal mountains, than the ones that come from the everlasting hills. Joseph, I pray that these blessings will be given to you, because you are the leader of your brothers.

Genesis 49:27

Benjamin is a hungry wolf

Here “Benjamin” is a metonym that stands for his descendants. Jacob speaks about Benjamin’s descendants as if they were a hungry wolf. This emphasizes that they will be fierce warriors. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Benjamin will be like hungry wolves” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- devour

ULT

²⁷ Benjamin is a hungry wolf. In the morning he will devour the prey, and in the evening he will divide the plunder.”

UST

²⁷ Benjamin, your descendants will be like vicious wolves. In the morning they will kill their enemies like a wolf devours its prey, and in the evening they will divide among their warriors the spoils that they seized from their enemies.”

Genesis 49:28

These are the twelve tribes of Israel

“These” refers to the sons Jacob mentioned in 49:1-27. Each son became the leader of his own tribe.

when he blessed them

Here the word “blessed” refers to the speaking of formal blessings.

Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing

“He gave each son a fitting blessing”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

²⁸ These are the twelve tribes of Israel. This is what their father said to them when he blessed them. Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing.

UST

²⁸ Those twelve sons are the ancestors of the twelve tribes of Israel. That is what their father said to them as he blessed them, telling to each one words that were right for him.

Genesis 49:29

he instructed them

“he commanded them”

I am about to go to my people

This is a polite way of saying he is about to die. Alternate translation: “I am about to die” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

go to my people

Jacob is referring to where his inner man will go when he dies. He expects to join Abraham and Isaac in the afterlife. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Ephron the Hittite

This is the name of a man. “Hittite” means “descendent of Heth.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)

ULT

²⁹ Then he instructed them and said to them, “I am about to go to my people. Bury me with my forefathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite,

UST

²⁹ Then Jacob said to his sons, “I will soon die and join my ancestors who have already died. Bury my body where some of my ancestors are buried, in the cave that is in the field that was bought from Ephron, who belonged to the Heth people group.

Genesis 49:30

Machpelah

Machpelah was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)

ULT

³⁰ in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah, which is near Mamre in the land of Canaan, the field that Abraham bought for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite.

UST

³⁰ The field of Machpelah, was east of Mamre, in the land of Canaan. Abraham bought it from Ephron to use as a burial place.

Genesis 49:31

General Information:

Jacob continues speaking to his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial

ULT

³¹ There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there I buried Leah.

UST

³¹ That is where they buried him and his wife Sarah. That is where they buried my father Isaac and his wife Rebekah. And that is where I buried my wife Leah.

Genesis 49:32

in it were purchased

The purchase can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “in it were purchased by Abraham” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from the people of Heth

“from the Hittites”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³² The field and the cave that is in it were purchased from the people of Heth.”

UST

³² That field and the cave in it were bought from the Heth people group; so that is where I want you to bury me.”

Genesis 49:33

finished these instructions to his sons

“finished instructing his sons” or “finished commanding his sons”

he pulled his feet into the bed

Jacob was sitting on the bed. Now, Jacob turns and puts his feet in the bed so he can lie down.

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

went to his people

After Jacob died, his inner man went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

ULT

³³ When Jacob finished these instructions to his sons, he pulled his feet into the bed, breathed his last, and went to his people.

UST

³³ When Jacob finished giving those instructions to his sons, he lay down on his bed again. Then he stopped breathing and died.

Genesis 50

Genesis 50 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Embalming

Embalming was practiced in Egypt on very important people when they died. They removed the liquids from the body then wrapped it in an attempt to preserve the body from decay.

Joseph's character

Joseph's character was so upright that Pharaoh's officials went with him to Canaan to bury Jacob. This was a very large funeral procession. He also learned lessons from earlier in his life and unified his family. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Genesis 50:1

that he collapsed on the face of his father

The term “he collapsed” is an idiom for being overcome. Alternate translation: “that he fell on his father in grief” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

ULT

¹ Then Joseph was so distressed that he collapsed on the face of his father, and he wept over him, and he kissed him.

UST

¹ Joseph fell on his father's face and he cried over him and kissed him.

Genesis 50:2**his servants the physicians**

“his servants who took care of dead bodies”

to embalm his father

To “embalm” is a special way of preserving a dead body before it is buried. Alternate translation: “to prepare his father’s body for burial” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

ULT

² Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father. So the physicians embalmed Israel.

UST

² Joseph commanded his servants who prepared the dead for burial to embalm his father’s body.

Genesis 50:3

They took forty days

"They took 40 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

seventy days

"70 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³ They took forty days, for that was the full time for embalming. The Egyptians wept for him seventy days.

UST

³ It took forty days to embalm Jacob's body, because that is the amount of time that was always required for them to embalm a body. The people of Egypt cried for seventy days because of Jacob's death.

Genesis 50:4

Connecting Statement:

A three-level quotation is introduced with the words “Joseph spoke... saying.” The second level begins with the words “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying.”

days of weeping

“days of mourning him” or “days of weeping for him”

Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh

Here “house of Pharaoh” stands for the officials that make up Pharaoh’s royal court. Alternate translation: “Joseph spoke to Pharaoh’s officials” (See: [Metonymy](#))

If now I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “If I have found favor with you” or “If you are pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Joseph (OT)
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Joseph (OT)
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- house

ULT

⁴ When the days of weeping were over, Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying, “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying,

UST

⁴ When the time of mourning was finished, Joseph said to the king’s officials, “If you are pleased with me, please take this message to the king:

Genesis 50:5

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began with the words “Joseph spoke... saying” in verse 4 continues. The second level of that quotation, which began with the words “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying” in verse 4 continues.

My father made me swear, saying, “See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me.” Now let me go up...I will return.

This is the second level of the three-level quotation that begins with the words “If now I have” in verse 4. It contains a quote within it. This embedded quote can be translated as an indirect quote. “My father made me swear, saying that he was about to die and that I was to bury him in his tomb that he dug for himself in the land of Canaan. I was to bury him there. Now let me go up...I will return.” The entire second-level quotation can also be translated as an indirect quote. “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh and tell him that my father made me swear, saying that he was about to die and that I was to bury him in his tomb that he dug for himself in the land of Canaan. I was to bury him there. Now let me go up...I will return.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁵ ‘My father made me swear, saying, “See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me.” Now let me go up and bury my father, and then I will return.’”

UST

⁵ ‘When my father was about to die, he told me to solemnly promise that I would bury his body in Canaan land, in the tomb that he himself had prepared. So please let me go up to Canaan and bury my father’s body. Then I will return.’”

See, I am about to die...you will bury me

This is the third level of the three-level quotation that begins with the words “If now I have” in verse 4.

See, I am about to die

“See, I am dying”

let me go up

It was common to use the phrase “go up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bury, buried, burial
- return
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

- bury, buried, burial
- return
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Genesis 50:6

Pharaoh answered

It is implied that the members of the court spoke to Pharaoh, and now Pharaoh is replying to Joseph. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as he made you swear

“as you swore to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

⁶ Pharaoh answered, “Go and bury your father, as he made you swear.”

UST

⁶ After they gave the king the message, he replied, “Tell Joseph, ‘Go up and bury your father’s body, as you swore that you would do.’”

Genesis 50:7

Joseph went up

It was common to use the phrase “went up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

All the officials...the elders...the senior officials

All of Pharaoh’s most important leaders attended the burial procession.

the elders of his household

Here “household” refers to Pharaoh’s royal court.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

⁷ Joseph went up to bury his father. All the officials of Pharaoh went with him—the elders of his household, all the senior officials of the land of Egypt,

UST

⁷ So Joseph went up to Canaan to bury his father’s body. All of the king’s officials, all the king’s advisors, and all the elders in Egypt went with him.

Genesis 50:8

with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household

This can be translated as a new sentence: "Joseph's household, his brothers, and his father's household also went with him" (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- flock, herd
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- flock, herd
- house
- house

ULT

⁸ with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household. But their children, their flocks, and their herds were left in the land of Goshen.

UST

⁸ His family's small children and their sheep and goats and their cattle stayed in the region of Goshen. But all the rest of Joseph's family and his brothers and his father's family went with him.

Genesis 50:9

Chariots

Here this stands for the men riding in the chariots. (See: [Metonymy](#))

It was a very large group of people

“It was a very large gathering”

ULT

⁹ Chariots and horsemen also went with him. It was a very large group of people.

UST

⁹ Men riding in chariots and on horses also went along. It was a huge group.

Genesis 50:10

When they came

The word “they” refers to the participants in the burial procession.

floor of Atad

Possible meanings are 1) the word “Atad” means “thorn” and it may refer to a place where large amounts of thorns grew, or 2) it may be the name of the person who owns the threshing floor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow

“they were extremely sad and they mourned very much”

a seven-day

“a 7-day” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [thresh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [thresh](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When they came to the threshing floor of Atad on the other side of the Jordan, they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow. There Joseph made a seven-day mourning for his father.

UST

¹⁰ They went to the east side of the Jordan River and arrived at Atad. There was a place there where people threshed the grain to separate the wheat from the chaff. There they mourned loudly for Jacob for a long time. Joseph performed mourning ceremonies for his father for seven days.

Genesis 50:11

in the floor of Atad

Possible meanings are 1) “on the threshing floor that belonged to a man named Atad” or “in the threshing floor at a place called Atad” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians

“The mourning of the Egyptians is very great”

Abel Mizraim

The translator can add a footnote that says: “The name Abel Mizraim means “the mourning of Egypt.”” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jordan River](#), [Jordan](#)
- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call](#), [call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jordan River](#), [Jordan](#)
- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

ULT

11 When the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, “This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians.” That is why the place was called Abel Mizraim, which is beyond the Jordan.

UST

11 When the Canaan people group who lived there saw them mourning like that, they said, “This is a sad mourning place for the people of Egypt!” So they named the place Abel Mizraim, which sounds like the Hebrew words that mean “mourning of the Egyptians.”

Genesis 50:12

So his sons

“So Jacob’s sons”

just as he had instructed them

“just as he had directed them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹² So his sons did for Jacob just as he had instructed them.

UST

¹² Then Jacob’s sons did for him what their father had commanded.

Genesis 50:13

His sons carried him

"His sons took his body"

Machpelah

Machpela was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephron the Hittite

This is the name of a man. "Hittite" means "descendent of Heth." See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Abraham, Abram
- Hittite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- face, facial
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Abraham, Abram
- Hittite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- face, facial
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

13 His sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave in the field of Machpelah, near Mamre. Abraham had bought the cave with the field for a burial place. He had bought it from Ephron the Hittite.

UST

13 They crossed the Jordan River and carried Jacob's body into Canaan land. They buried it in the cave in the field at Machpelah, east of Mamre town. That was the field that Abraham had bought from Ephron, who was one of the Heth people group, to use as a burial place.

Genesis 50:14

Joseph returned into Egypt

"Joseph returned to Egypt"

all who had accompanied him

"all who had come with him"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bury, buried, burial
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bury, buried, burial
- return

ULT

¹⁴ After he had buried his father, Joseph returned into Egypt, he, along with his brothers, and all who had accompanied him to bury his father.

UST

¹⁴ After he had buried his father, Joseph and his brothers and all the others who had gone up to Canaan with him for the funeral returned to Egypt.

Genesis 50:15

What if Joseph holds on to anger against us

Here anger is spoken of as if it was something physical that Joseph could hold in his hands. Alternate translation: "What if Joseph is actually still angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him

Avenging oneself against someone who harmed him is spoken of as if the person were paying they other person what they are owed. Alternate translation: "wants revenge for the evil thing we did to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return

ULT

15 When Joseph's brothers saw that their father was dead, they said, "What if Joseph holds on to anger against us and wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him?"

UST

15 After Jacob died, Joseph's brothers became worried. They realized what might happen. They said, "What will happen if Joseph is carrying hatred for us and wants to take revenge on us, because of all the evil things we did to him many years ago?"

Genesis 50:16

Connecting Statement:

A three-level quotation begins with the words "Your father gave."

Your father gave instructions before he died, saying

Jacob was the father of all the brothers. Here they say "your father" to emphasize that Joseph needs to pay attention to what his father said. Alternate translation: "Before our father died he said"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

16 So they commanded the presence of Joseph, saying, "Your father gave instructions before he died, saying,

UST

16 So they sent someone to tell this to Joseph for them: "Before our father died, he told us this:

Genesis 50:17

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that begins with the words “Your father gave” in verse 16 ends here.

Tell Joseph this, “Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you.”

The three-level quotation that begins with the words “Your father gave” in verse 16 ends here. This is the second-level quotation, and it contains a third-level quotation that can be stated as an indirect quotation. “Tell Joseph to please forgive your transgression and your sin when you did evil to him.” Both the second- and third-level quotations can be translated as indirect quotations. “Your father instructed us before he died to tell you to please forgive our transgression and our sin when we did evil to you.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

and their sin when they did evil to you

“for the wicked things they did to you”

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

please forgive the servants of the God of your father

The brothers are referring to themselves as “the servants of the God of your father.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “please forgive us, the servants of the God of our father” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Joseph wept when they spoke to him

“Joseph wept when he heard this message”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

17 ‘Tell Joseph this, “Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you.”’ Now please forgive the servants of the God of your father.” Joseph wept when they spoke to him.

UST

17 ‘Say to Joseph, Please forgive your older brothers for the evil thing that they did to you, for their terrible sin against you, because what they did to you was very wrong.’ So now we, who are servants of your father’s God, ask you, please forgive us for what we did to you.” Joseph cried when he received their message.

- pray, prayer
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Genesis 50:18

lay facedown before him

They lay down with their faces toward the ground. This is a sign of humility and respect for Joseph. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

ULT

18 His brothers also went and lay facedown before him. They said, "See, we are your servants."

UST

18 Then his older brothers themselves came and threw themselves on the ground in front of Joseph, and one of them said, "Please listen. We will be your servants."

Genesis 50:19

Am I in the place of God?

Joseph uses a question to comfort his brothers. Alternate translation: "I am not in the place of God." or "I am not God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

19 But Joseph answered them, "Do not be afraid. Am I in the place of God?"

UST

19 But Joseph replied to them, "Do not be afraid! God is the one who punishes people; am I God?"

Genesis 50:20

you meant to harm me

“you intended to do evil against me”

God meant it for good

“God intended it for good”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

ULT

²⁰ As for you, you meant to harm me, but God meant it for good, to preserve the lives of many people, as you see today.

UST

²⁰ As for you, yes, you wanted to do something very evil to me. But God caused something good to come from it! He wanted to save many people from dying of hunger, and that is what happened! Today they are alive!

Genesis 50:21

So now do not be afraid

“So do not fear me”

I will provide for you and your little children

“I will always make sure you and your children have enough to eat”

He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts

Here “hearts” refers to the brothers. Alternate translation: “He comforted them by speaking kindly to them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- pray, prayer

ULT

²¹ So now do not be afraid. I will provide for you and your little children.” He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts.

UST

²¹ So I say again, do not be afraid! I will make sure that you and your children have enough to eat.” In this way he reassured them as he spoke to them.

Genesis 50:22

one hundred ten years

“110 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

ULT

²² Joseph lived in Egypt, together with his father’s family. He lived one hundred ten years.

UST

²² Joseph lived with his father’s family in Egypt until he was 110 years old.

Genesis 50:23

Ephraim's children to the third generation

"Ephraim's children and grandchildren"

Machir

This is the name of Joseph's grandson. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were placed on the knees of Joseph

This expression means that Joseph adopted these children of Machir as his own children. This means they would have special inheritance rights from Joseph. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

²³ Joseph saw Ephraim's children to the third generation. He also saw the children of Machir son of Manasseh, who were placed on the knees of Joseph.

UST

²³ He lived long enough to see Ephraim's children and grandchildren. The children of Joseph's grandson Machir, who was Manasseh's son, were born before Joseph died, and they were recognized as being his descendants.

Genesis 50:24

surely come to you

In [Genesis 50:24/26](#) the word “you” refers to Joseph’s brothers, but it also stands for their descendants. (See: [Metonymy](#))

lead you up out of this land to the land

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan. Alternate translation: “bring you out of this land and take you to the land” (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

24 Joseph said to his brothers, “I am about to die; but God will surely come to you and lead you up out of this land to the land which he swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.”

UST

24 One day Joseph said to his older brothers, “I am about to die. But God will certainly help you. Some day he will lead your descendants up out of this land and take them to Canaan, the land that he solemnly promised to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

Genesis 50:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

²⁵ Then Joseph made the people of Israel swear an oath. He said, "God will surely come to you. At that time you must carry up my bones from here."

UST

²⁵ Then Joseph said, "When God enables you to do that, you must take my body up from here to Canaan." He made his older brothers solemnly promise to do that.

Genesis 50:26

110 years

“one hundred and ten years” (See: [Numbers](#))

They embalmed him

To “embalm” is a special way of preserving a dead body before it is buried. See how you translated “embalmed” in [Genesis 50:1](#).

he was placed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they placed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in a coffin

“in a chest” or “in a case.” This is a box a dead person is placed in.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

ULT

²⁶ So Joseph died, 110 years old. They embalmed him and he was placed in a coffin in Egypt.

UST

²⁶ So Joseph died in Egypt when he was 110 years old. His body was embalmed and put in a coffin there.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[Sentence Structure](#)

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:20; 18:21; 19:13; 19:19; 21:16; 21:23; 21:30; 23:10; 23:13; 23:16; 24:12; 24:14; 24:27; 24:49; 28:4; 29:32; 30:23; 30:26; 31:42; 34:13; 35:5; 39:21; 41:19; 41:52; 42:21; 43:9; 43:14; 43:23; 44:32; 45:7; 46:34; 47:29](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:9; 2:1; 2:20; 3:17; 3:22; 4:11; 4:15; 4:24; 5:2; 6:1; 7:23; 8:2; 8:7; 8:13; 9:2; 9:14; Notes; 10:25; 11:4; 12:3; 12:13; 12:15; 14:19; 15:13; 16:5; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:27; 18:4; 18:18; 18:25; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 19:15; 19:17; 19:20; 20:16; 21:12; 22:13; 22:14; 22:18; 22:20; 24:32; 24:67; 25:8; 25:10; 25:17; 25:23; 26:4; 26:11; 26:29; 27:29; 27:42; 28:14; 29:7; 29:8; 29:21; 29:31; 29:33; 30:33; 31:15; 31:22; 31:39; 32:10; 32:12; 32:25; 32:30; 33:11; 33:13; 34:3; 34:7; 34:24; 34:30; 35:8; 35:10; 35:19; 35:29; 37:33; 37:35; 38:3; 38:13; 38:14; 38:18; 38:20; 38:23; 38:24; 38:25; 38:29; 39:1; 39:20; 40:3; 40:15; 41:6; 41:21; 41:27; 41:30; 41:32; 41:36; 41:40; 42:15; 42:16; 42:19; 42:20; 42:25; 42:28; 43:12; 43:18; 44:3; 44:9; 44:10; 44:12; 44:16; 44:17; 44:28; 45:16; 45:19; 47:15; 47:22; 48:2; 48:16; 49:7; 50:26](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever **a speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#); [3:7](#); [3:17](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:18](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [6:14](#); [7:10](#); [7:16](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:21](#); [Notes](#); [9:5](#); [10:19](#); [10:32](#); [Notes](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [Notes](#); [12:6](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:12](#); [12:17](#); [Notes](#); [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [14:3](#); [14:8](#); [14:17](#); [14:24](#); [15:14](#); [Notes](#); [16:15](#); [Notes](#); [19:10](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [Notes](#); [20:10](#); [20:18](#); [Notes](#); [21:1](#); [21:6](#); [21:9](#); [21:11](#); [21:23](#); [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:12](#); [22:16](#); [22:19](#); [Notes](#); [24:21](#); [24:49](#); [24:65](#); [Notes](#); [25:19](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:33](#); [Notes](#); [26:1](#); [26:6](#); [26:14](#); [26:17](#); [26:24](#); [26:25](#); [26:30](#); [26:34](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [27:4](#); [27:27](#); [27:28](#); [27:39](#); [27:45](#); [28:18](#); [29:7](#); [29:11](#); [29:27](#); [30:3](#); [30:28](#); [30:31](#); [30:40](#); [30:42](#); [31:15](#); [31:17](#); [31:22](#); [31:46](#); [31:54](#); [Notes](#); [32:9](#); [Notes](#); [33:1](#); [33:4](#); [33:13](#); [33:17](#); [33:18](#); [Notes](#); [34:19](#); [35:5](#); [35:9](#); [35:21](#); [35:26](#); [36:1](#); [36:6](#); [36:7](#); [36:9](#); [36:17](#); [36:30](#); [36:34](#); [36:37](#); [36:40](#); [37:13](#); [37:25](#); [37:29](#); [37:34](#); [37:35](#); [38:7](#); [38:10](#); [38:11](#); [38:14](#); [38:15](#); [38:16](#); [38:23](#); [38:29](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [39:10](#); [39:19](#); [40:6](#); [40:11](#); [40:14](#); [40:22](#); [41:22](#); [41:25](#); [41:54](#); [Notes](#); [42:4](#); [42:6](#); [42:9](#); [42:12](#); [42:20](#); [42:24](#); [42:38](#); [43:9](#); [43:24](#); [43:31](#); [43:33](#); [44:18](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [45:4](#); [45:5](#); [45:8](#); [45:15](#); [45:22](#); [45:23](#); [46:4](#); [47:6](#); [48:15](#); [Notes](#); [49:11](#); [49:12](#); [49:24](#); [49:32](#); [50:6](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:5](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [16:1](#); [16:16](#); [20:4](#); [23:10](#); [24:29](#); [25:28](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [28:6](#); [29:2](#); [29:16](#); [29:24](#); [31:24](#); [31:25](#); [31:32](#); [31:34](#); [32:32](#); [34:5](#); [37:3](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [42:6](#); [42:23](#); [48:10](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:15](#); [6:16](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheq	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters ¹, and 220 liters ² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters ³."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:6](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

"The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles.***"

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed ***2,400 kilograms.***"

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed ***5,300 pounds .***"

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)*** and ***2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).***"

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talentes and 2,400 shekels.***
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:15](#); [24:22](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences.

Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men."
Immediately they left the nets and went after him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so".

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men." **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "but" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore

whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.
And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:12](#); [24:48](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [27:6](#); [30:31](#); [49:8](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [24:7](#); [24:14](#); [24:30](#); [26:9](#); [27:7](#); [32:4](#); [32:5](#); [32:9](#); [32:12](#); [32:17](#); [32:18](#); [42:22](#); [42:31](#); [42:32](#); [43:3](#); [43:7](#); [44:19](#); [44:20](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:25](#); [44:26](#); [44:29](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [48:4](#); [48:20](#); [50:5](#); [50:17](#))

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[Sentence Structure](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

...for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, **who is ninety years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve worthless

idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for **your** righteous

judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

...for your judgments are good **because** they are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old

, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son **even when** she is ninety years old?

I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised

(2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, **because** he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, whom I love

. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. ***I love you*** and I am pleased with you.
Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[*Double Negatives*](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:14](#); [6:7](#); [8:6](#); [14:6](#); [14:12](#); [17:17](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [23:18](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[Sentence Structure](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...**in order** not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:22](#); [11:6](#); [21:23](#); [22:12](#); [22:16](#); [32:26](#); [39:6](#); [39:8](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:22](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [5:29](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:7](#); [23:1](#); [24:67](#); [25:8](#); [25:17](#); [28:3](#); [28:17](#); [35:11](#); [35:29](#); [39:6](#); [47:27](#); [48:4](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Sentence Structure](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:2](#); [18:29](#); [18:30](#); [18:31](#); [19:17](#); [21:24](#); [24:21](#); [24:25](#); [24:49](#); [33:9](#); [40:8](#); [41:7](#); [41:8](#); [41:14](#); [41:22](#); [41:24](#); [41:26](#); [42:5](#); [42:18](#); [42:32](#); [43:1](#); [44:2](#); [44:12](#); [45:19](#); [47:24](#); [49:7](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

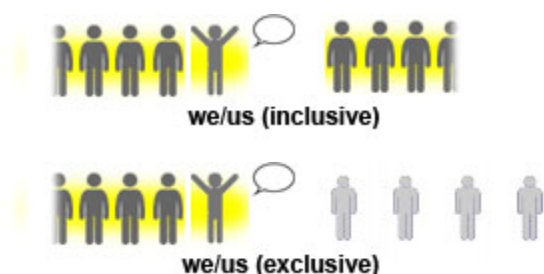
(Go back to: [Genesis 4:1; 4:17; 4:25; 11:30; 12:15; 15:15; 16:5; 17:11; 17:14; 19:5; 19:8; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:35; 20:4; 20:6; 21:7; 21:8; Notes; 25:8; 26:10; 27:45; 29:23; 29:30; 30:3; 30:4; 30:15; 30:16; 31:35; 34:2; 35:22; 35:29; 37:21; 37:22; Notes; 38:2; 38:8; 38:9; 38:18; 38:26; 39:7; 39:10; 39:12; 39:14; 39:17; 47:30; 49:29; 49:33; 50:2](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:2](#); [19:13](#); [20:9](#); [22:5](#); [24:23](#); [26:10](#); [26:20](#); [32:18](#); [34:14](#); [37:8](#); [41:11](#); [43:7](#); [43:8](#); [44:27](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[Pronouns](#)

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:27](#); [19:2](#); [19:19](#); [27:31](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [33:5](#); [33:8](#); [33:13](#); [33:14](#); [33:15](#); [35:1](#); [41:10](#); [41:12](#); [41:13](#); [41:25](#); [41:28](#); [41:33](#); [42:10](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#); [44:16](#); [44:18](#); [44:19](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:24](#); [44:31](#); [44:32](#); [44:33](#); [46:34](#); [47:3](#); [47:18](#); [49:2](#); [50:17](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:16](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:9](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [7:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [24:25](#); [24:31](#); [24:49](#); [27:28](#); [27:29](#); [31:6](#); [31:29](#); [31:30](#); [42:19](#); [42:38](#); [43:8](#); [44:27](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [48:21](#); [48:22](#))

Fractions

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:34](#); [47:24](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue.
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, **“Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:17](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:15](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [14:7](#); [24:32](#); [24:41](#); [35:27](#); [41:14](#); [42:5](#); [42:6](#); [43:17](#); [48:21](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in **the month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,
you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***
¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you **words and wisdom**... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *wise words*

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *words of wisdom*.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you are *willingly obedient*

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you *obey willingly*

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

while we look forward to receiving ***what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing*** of ***Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:12](#); [19:24](#); [34:2](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:13](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:22](#); [4:25](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:12](#); [5:15](#); [5:18](#); [5:21](#); [5:25](#); [5:29](#); [10:26](#); [11:10](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:6](#); [13:18](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [16:14](#); [19:38](#); [20:1](#); [21:22](#); [22:2](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:22](#); [22:24](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [24:10](#); [24:15](#); [25:1](#); [25:9](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:22](#); [26:26](#); [26:33](#); [26:34](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [28:19](#); [29:24](#); [29:29](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [30:12](#); [30:13](#); [30:21](#); [30:24](#); [31:47](#); [31:48](#); [31:49](#); [32:3](#); [32:22](#); [32:28](#); [32:30](#); [33:14](#); [33:17](#); [33:19](#); [33:20](#); [34:1](#); [34:2](#); [35:6](#); [35:7](#); [35:8](#); [35:18](#); [35:22](#); [35:25](#); [35:26](#); [35:27](#); [36:2](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#); [36:5](#); [36:10](#); [36:11](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:15](#); [36:16](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:20](#); [36:21](#); [36:22](#); [36:23](#); [36:24](#); [36:25](#); [36:26](#); [36:27](#); [36:28](#); [36:29](#); [36:30](#); [36:32](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [36:40](#); [36:41](#); [36:42](#); [36:43](#); [37:2](#); [37:17](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:6](#); [38:8](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:14](#); [38:20](#); [38:21](#); [38:26](#); [38:29](#); [38:30](#); [41:45](#); [41:50](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#); [46:11](#); [46:12](#); [46:13](#); [46:14](#); [46:15](#); [46:16](#); [46:17](#); [46:18](#); [46:20](#); [46:21](#); [46:23](#); [46:24](#); [46:25](#); [47:11](#); [48:3](#); [49:29](#); [49:30](#); [50:10](#); [50:11](#); [50:13](#); [50:23](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:32](#); [27:46](#); [29:31](#); [30:1](#); [31:1](#); [31:26](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! ***If the mighty deeds had been done*** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, ***they would have repented*** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that ***if*** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:8](#); [24:39](#); [24:41](#); [43:10](#); [44:30](#); [44:31](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:22; 1:28; 2:2; 2:24; 3:5; 3:17; 4:5; 4:8; 4:14; 4:16; 6:8; 8:17; 9:1; 9:7; 15:1; 15:4; 15:12; 15:14; 17:2; 17:20; 18:3; 18:25; 18:33; 19:7; 19:9; 19:17; 19:19; 19:29; 20:3; 20:15; 21:16; 21:20; 21:22; 21:23; 22:12; 23:6; 24:49; 24:50; 25:8; 25:17; 26:2; 26:11; 26:19; 27:20; 27:27; 27:46; 29:2; 29:8; 29:10; 30:3; 30:8; 30:14; 30:22; 30:27; 31:12; 31:36; 32:5; 32:10; 32:16; 33:8; 33:10; 34:5; 34:11; 35:11; 35:18; 35:29; 36:6; 36:7; 36:32; 36:35; 36:39; 37:3; 37:11; 37:14; 37:20; 37:27; 38:7; 38:10; 39:1; 39:2; 39:3; 39:4; 39:21; 39:23; 41:33; 41:35; 41:40; 41:41; 41:43; 41:52; 41:56; 42:22; 42:38; 43:29; 43:30; 44:29; 44:31; 46:4; 47:25; 47:27; 47:29; 48:4; 48:16; 48:21; 49:8; 49:15; 49:20; 49:29; 49:33; 50:1; 50:4; 50:23](#))

Imperatives - Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, “light must be”.

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

...**do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

Be clean. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

"You are now clean."
"I now cleanse you."

God said, "Let there be

light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, "**There is now light** " and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful

, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply. Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

"If you teach a child the way he should go,
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#))

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

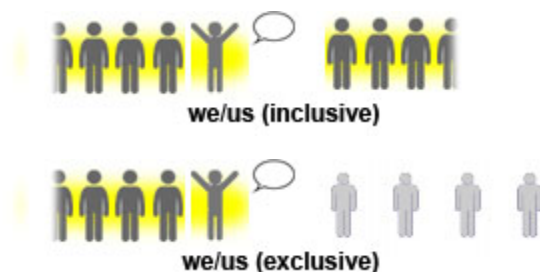
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:32](#); [31:37](#); [34:21](#); [37:7](#); [39:17](#); [43:2](#); [43:8](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:22](#); [22:1](#); [22:20](#); [38:1](#); [38:24](#); [38:27](#); [39:7](#); [39:11](#); [39:13](#); [39:15](#); [39:18](#); [39:19](#); [40:1](#); [40:20](#); [41:1](#); [41:8](#); [42:1](#); [43:2](#); [44:24](#); [48:1](#))

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now ***there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man*** came to Jesus at night time...
Jesus replied to ***him*** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. ***His wife*** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so ***she*** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh...(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement). (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

It happened when he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:29](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."*** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:20](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:27](#); [29:15](#); [31:32](#); [37:22](#); [39:9](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone".

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:5; 1:8; 1:13; 1:19; 1:23; 1:31; 2:9; 3:5; 3:22; 8:22; 19:11; 24:3; 31:24; 31:29; 43:33](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:16](#); [4:7](#); [5:22](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [15:1](#); [16:12](#); [17:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:27](#); [19:8](#); [19:11](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [20:9](#); [20:16](#); [21:19](#); [24:8](#); [24:21](#); [24:40](#); [24:41](#); [24:45](#); [24:49](#); [25:8](#); [25:27](#); [26:10](#); [26:35](#); [27:1](#); [27:12](#); [27:13](#); [27:28](#); [27:34](#); [27:35](#); [27:36](#); [27:39](#); [27:40](#); [27:45](#); [28:4](#); [28:17](#); [29:31](#); [30:2](#); [30:8](#); [30:18](#); [30:23](#); [30:27](#); [31:15](#); [31:39](#); [31:40](#); [32:5](#); [33:8](#); [33:10](#); [34:3](#); [34:11](#); [34:30](#); [35:5](#); [37:25](#); [37:26](#); [37:35](#); [39:2](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [39:8](#); [39:9](#); [39:22](#); [40:13](#); [41:29](#); [41:30](#); [41:31](#); [41:35](#); [41:37](#); [41:49](#); [41:50](#); [42:28](#); [42:37](#); [43:9](#); [44:7](#); [44:17](#); [44:18](#); [44:29](#); [44:30](#); [44:32](#); [44:34](#); [45:8](#); [45:11](#); [45:18](#); [47:19](#); [47:25](#); [47:29](#); [48:2](#); [48:15](#); [48:20](#); [48:22](#); [49:7](#); [49:9](#); [49:11](#); [49:14](#); [49:17](#); [49:21](#); [49:22](#); [49:24](#); [49:26](#); [49:27](#); [50:4](#); [50:15](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:17](#); [4:10](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:17](#); [7:15](#); [7:22](#); [9:2](#); [11:1](#); [12:2](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [15:1](#); [15:14](#); [16:13](#); [18:3](#); [19:15](#); [19:19](#); [19:24](#); [19:31](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [21:13](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [21:18](#); [21:23](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [23:11](#); [23:18](#); [24:7](#); [24:28](#); [24:45](#); [24:56](#); [24:60](#); [25:23](#); [26:9](#); [26:14](#); [26:25](#); [27:8](#); [27:13](#); [27:29](#); [27:40](#); [28:2](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [29:14](#); [29:22](#); [30:35](#); [31:27](#); [31:30](#); [31:42](#); [31:49](#); [32:5](#); [32:8](#); [32:11](#); [32:21](#); [33:10](#); [34:7](#); [34:25](#); [35:4](#); [35:5](#); [35:11](#); [36:43](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [37:27](#); [40:3](#); [40:21](#); [40:22](#); [41:13](#); [41:30](#); [41:33](#); [41:35](#); [41:36](#); [41:40](#); [41:41](#); [41:43](#); [41:44](#); [41:46](#); [41:55](#); [41:57](#); [42:3](#); [42:19](#); [42:22](#); [42:28](#); [42:33](#); [44:7](#); [45:2](#); [45:5](#); [45:6](#); [45:8](#); [45:26](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [46:29](#); [46:31](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:18](#); [47:19](#); [47:29](#); [48:4](#); [48:16](#); [48:19](#); [48:22](#); [49:4](#); [49:7](#); [49:10](#); [49:13](#); [49:15](#); [49:16](#); [49:19](#); [49:20](#); [49:21](#); [49:22](#); [49:24](#); [49:25](#); [49:27](#); [50:4](#); [50:9](#); [50:24](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

■ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

■ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:20](#); [19:31](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:24; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 5:25; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31; 6:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:13; 11:14; 11:16; 11:18; 11:20; 11:22; 11:24; 11:32; 14:14; 20:16; 21:4; 21:5; 23:1; 23:15; 24:60; 25:7; 25:16; 25:17; 25:20; 25:26; 26:12; 26:34; 31:38; 31:41; 32:6; 32:14; 32:15; 33:1; 33:19; 35:22; 35:28; 37:2; 37:9; 37:28; 41:46; 42:13; 45:22; 46:15; 46:18; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 47:9; 47:28; 50:3; 50:10; 50:22; 50:26\)](#)

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:30](#); [26:18](#); [27:24](#); [47:1](#); [47:2](#); [50:8](#); [50:24](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [22:4](#); [22:15](#); [34:25](#); [41:5](#); [42:18](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:27](#); [4:23](#); [6:22](#); [11:1](#); [19:14](#); [22:12](#); [26:5](#); [31:2](#); [31:36](#); [32:11](#); [37:8](#); [41:30](#); [41:31](#); [43:8](#); [44:5](#); [44:16](#); [49:2](#); [49:3](#); [49:4](#); [49:6](#); [49:7](#); [49:8](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:16](#); [4:7](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [Notes](#); [19:19](#); [30:33](#); [31:44](#); [31:48](#); [31:52](#); [37:7](#))

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- Parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#) and Parallelism with the Same Meaning.)
- Repetition of some or all of a line

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- Lines of similar length.

Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude. (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULT)

- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- The same sound repeated many times > “Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
 - incomplete sentences
 - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.

- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULT)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.

God is his constant **delight**
He does what God says **is right**
He thinks of it all day **and night**

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Symbolic Language](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:23; 49:1](#))

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

"For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to hand** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am handing** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:11](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself**

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [3:15](#); [5:1](#); [11:7](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[r://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:9](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, ***"He is my brother."***' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***" " " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' " (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [24:7](#); [24:14](#); [26:9](#); [27:7](#); [32:4](#); [32:5](#); [32:9](#); [32:12](#); [32:17](#); [32:18](#); [42:22](#); [42:31](#); [42:32](#); [43:3](#); [43:7](#); [44:19](#); [44:20](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:25](#); [44:26](#); [44:29](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [48:4](#); [48:20](#); [50:5](#); [50:17](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[Sentence Structure](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

■ **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

■ “If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

■ “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

■ He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

■ “**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

■ “**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

■ **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

■ **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [22:8](#); [32:21](#); [33:3](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:1; 3:11; 3:13; 4:6; 4:7; 4:9; 4:10; 12:18; 13:9; 16:13; 17:17; Notes; 18:12; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:24; 18:25; 19:20; 20:5; 20:9; 21:7; 23:15; 24:31; 25:32; 26:10; 27:36; 27:37; 27:45; 27:46; 29:15; 29:25; 30:2; 30:15; 30:30; 31:14; 31:15; 31:43; 32:29; 33:15; 34:23; 34:31; 37:8; 37:10; 37:13; 37:26; 37:30; 39:9; 40:8; 42:1; 42:22; 43:7; 43:29; 44:4; 44:5; 44:8; 44:15; 44:16; 44:34; 47:15; 47:19; 49:9; 50:19](#))

Sentence Structure

Description

The simplest sentence structure in English includes a **subject** and an **action** word:

- The boy ran.

Subject

The **subject** is who or what the sentence is about. In these examples, the subject is underlined:

- **The boy** is running.
- **He** is running.

Subjects are typically noun phrases or pronouns. (See Parts of Speech.) In the examples above, “the boy” is a noun phrase that has the noun “boy”, and “he” is a pronoun.

When the sentence is a command, in many languages it does not have a subject pronoun. People understand that the subject is “you”.

- Close the door.

Predicate

The predicate is the part of a sentence that tells something about the subject. It usually has a verb. (See Verbs.) In the sentences below, the subjects are “the man” and “he”. The predicates are underlined and the verbs are in bold.

- The man is
* strong*.
- He worked
* hard*.
- He made
* a garden*.

Compound Sentences

A sentence can be made up of more than one sentence. Each of the two lines below has a subject and a predicate and is a full sentence.

- He planted the yams.
- His wife planted the maize.

The compound sentence below contains the two sentences above. In English, compound sentences are joined with a conjunction such as “and”, “but”, or “or”.

- He planted the yams **and** his wife planted the maize.

Clauses

Sentences can also have clauses and other phrases. Clauses are like sentences because they have a subject and a predicate, but they do not normally occur by themselves. Here are some examples of clauses. The subjects are in bold, and the predicates are underlined.

- when **the maize** was ready

This page answers the question: *What are the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

- after **she picked it**
- because **it tasted so good**

Sentences can have many clauses, and so they can become long and complex. But each sentence has to have at least one **independent clause**, that is, a clause that can be a sentence all by itself. The other clauses that cannot be sentences by themselves are called the **dependent clauses**. Dependent clauses depend on the independent clause to complete their meaning. The dependent clauses are underlined in the sentences below.

- **When the maize was ready**, she picked it.
- **After she picked it**, she carried it home and cooked it.
- Then she and her husband ate it all, **because it tasted so good**.

The following phrases can each be a whole sentence. They are the independent clauses from the sentences above.

- She picked it.
- She carried it home and cooked it.
- Then she and her husband ate it all.

Relative Clauses

In some languages, clauses can be used with a noun that is part of a sentence. These are called **relative clauses**.

In the sentence below, “the corn that was ready” is part of the predicate of the whole sentence. The relative clause “that was ready” is used with the noun “corn” to tell which corn she picked.

- His wife picked **the maize that was ready**.

In the sentence below “her mother, who was very annoyed” is part of the predicate of the whole sentence. The relative clause “who was very annoyed” is used with the noun “mother” to tell how her mother felt when she did not get any maize.

- She did not give any maize to **her mother, who was very annoyed**.

Translation Issues

- Languages have different orders for the parts of a sentence. (See [Information Structure](#).)
- Some languages do not have relative clauses, or they use them in a limited way. (See [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#).)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]
[Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:5](#))

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:28](#); [22:17](#); [25:25](#); [26:4](#); [28:14](#); [31:26](#); [32:12](#); [33:10](#); [49:4](#); [49:9](#); [49:12](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:27](#); [24:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#); [24:52](#); [24:65](#); [27:29](#); [28:18](#); [31:13](#); [33:3](#); [33:6](#); [35:2](#); [35:14](#); [41:42](#); [41:43](#); [41:45](#); [42:6](#); [43:26](#); [43:28](#); [44:13](#); [44:14](#); [47:29](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:18](#); [49:8](#); [50:18](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand **seven stars**, and coming out of his mouth was **a sharp two-edged sword**...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:7](#); [23:12](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19](#); [4:11](#); [4:23](#); [5:29](#); [6:12](#); [6:17](#); [7:15](#); [7:22](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [14:10](#); [15:15](#); [19:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:30](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:17](#); [24:3](#); [24:37](#); [26:5](#); [26:18](#); [27:22](#); [27:28](#); [27:29](#); [27:40](#); [27:41](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [30:41](#); [31:10](#); [31:12](#); [33:10](#); [34:30](#); [37:2](#); [37:25](#); [38:20](#); [41:8](#); [41:48](#); [41:49](#); [41:56](#); [42:21](#); [42:24](#); [42:38](#); [43:3](#); [43:12](#); [43:15](#); [43:21](#); [43:22](#); [43:26](#); [43:32](#); [44:16](#); [44:17](#); [44:18](#); [44:23](#); [44:26](#); [44:29](#); [44:31](#); [45:12](#); [45:26](#); [45:27](#); [46:30](#); [47:17](#); [48:11](#); [48:15](#); [49:6](#); [49:19](#); [49:24](#); [50:21](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³ [Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹ She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.
¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.
 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let
 him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [¹]

[¹] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:8](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:12](#); [21:33](#); [25:34](#); [30:14](#); [30:37](#); [31:27](#); [43:11](#))

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says **‘brothers’** when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes **his** father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise man

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:28](#); [41:44](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:5](#); [17:9](#); [17:15](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#); [17:26](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:13](#); [18:19](#); [18:23](#); [18:27](#); [18:33](#); [19:27](#); [19:29](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:10](#); [20:11](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:8](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [21:22](#); [21:24](#); [21:25](#); [21:27](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [21:34](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:19](#); [22:23](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:10](#); [23:12](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#); [23:19](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:6](#); [24:9](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:27](#); [24:34](#); [24:42](#); [24:48](#); [24:52](#); [24:59](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:19](#); [26:1](#); [26:5](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [26:24](#); [28:4](#); [28:9](#); [28:13](#); [31:42](#); [31:53](#); [32:9](#); [35:27](#); [48:15](#); [48:16](#); [49:30](#); [49:31](#); [50:13](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:20](#); [22:17](#); [49:8](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:11](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [21:12](#); [31:42](#); [41:52](#); [43:6](#); [44:5](#))

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:03
- Joshua 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:8](#); [13:3](#))

alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:12](#); [17:27](#); [31:15](#))

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), power)

Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:01
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:03
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:1](#); [28:3](#); [35:11](#); [43:14](#); [48:3](#); [49:25](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:20](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [13:4](#); [13:18](#); [22:9](#); [26:25](#); [33:20](#); [35:1](#); [35:3](#); [35:7](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [14:7](#); [14:13](#); [15:16](#); [15:21](#); [48:22](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:24](#); [4:20](#); [4:21](#); [9:18](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:21](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:1](#); [15:15](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [19:31](#); [19:32](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [22:7](#); [22:21](#); [24:7](#); [24:23](#); [24:38](#); [24:40](#); [26:3](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [26:24](#); [27:6](#); [27:9](#);

27:10; 27:12; 27:14; 27:18; 27:19; 27:22; 27:26; 27:30; 27:31; 27:32; 27:34; 27:38; 27:39; 27:41; 28:2; 28:7; 28:8; 28:13; 28:21; 29:9; 29:12; 31:1; 31:3; 31:5; 31:6; 31:7; 31:9; 31:14; 31:18; 31:19; 31:29; 31:30; 31:35; 31:42; 31:53; 32:9; 33:19; 34:4; 34:6; 34:11; 34:13; 34:19; 35:18; 35:22; 35:27; 36:9; 36:24; 36:43; 37:1; 37:2; 37:4; 37:10; 37:11; 37:12; 37:22; 37:32; 37:35; 38:11; 41:51; 42:13; 42:29; 42:32; 42:35; 42:36; 42:37; 43:2; 43:7; 43:8; 43:11; 43:23; 43:27; 43:28; 44:17; 44:19; 44:20; 44:22; 44:24; 44:25; 44:27; 44:30; 44:31; 44:32; 44:34; 45:3; 45:8; 45:9; 45:13; 45:18; 45:19; 45:23; 45:25; 45:27; 46:1; 46:3; 46:5; 46:29; 46:31; 46:34; 47:1; 47:3; 47:5; 47:6; 47:7; 47:9; 47:11; 47:12; 47:30; 48:1; 48:9; 48:15; 48:16; 48:17; 48:18; 48:19; 48:21; 49:2; 49:4; 49:8; 49:25; 49:26; 49:28; 49:29; 50:1; 50:2; 50:5; 50:6; 50:7; 50:8; 50:10; 50:14; 50:15; 50:16; 50:17; 50:22)

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Genesis 18 General Notes](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:8](#); [4:15](#); [9:23](#); [13:16](#); [18:8](#); [18:22](#); [19:17](#); [19:27](#); [22:6](#); [22:9](#); [24:9](#); [24:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:47](#); [28:11](#); [28:18](#); [30:9](#); [30:36](#); [30:41](#); [31:21](#); [31:34](#); [32:12](#); [33:2](#); [37:34](#); [39:4](#); [40:4](#); [41:1](#); [41:17](#); [41:34](#); [41:42](#); [43:32](#); [44:1](#); [44:21](#); [45:1](#); [45:8](#); [45:9](#); [47:6](#); [47:26](#); [48:20](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:7](#); [29:8](#); [30:23](#); [49:1](#); [49:6](#); [49:29](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:14](#); [10:11](#); [25:18](#))

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), just, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [Genesis 4 General Notes](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [11:9](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:24](#); [6:7](#); [7:23](#); [34:23](#); [36:6](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Genesis 18 General Notes](#))

Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:18](#); [35:24](#); [42:4](#); [42:36](#); [43:14](#); [43:15](#); [43:16](#); [43:29](#); [43:34](#); [44:12](#); [45:12](#); [45:14](#); [46:19](#); [46:21](#); [49:27](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:01
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:8](#); [35:8](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), prison, [servant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:13](#); [20:3](#); [37:19](#); [49:23](#))

birthright

Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:01
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1062, G4415

(Go back to: [Genesis 25 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 1:22](#); [1:28](#); [2:3](#); [5:2](#); [9:1](#); [9:26](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [14:19](#); [14:20](#); [17:16](#); [17:20](#); [18:18](#); [Notes](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [24:1](#); [24:11](#); [24:27](#); [24:31](#); [24:35](#); [24:48](#); [24:60](#); [25:11](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:12](#); [26:24](#); [26:29](#); [Notes](#); [27:4](#); [27:7](#); [27:10](#); [27:12](#); [27:19](#); [27:23](#); [27:25](#); [27:27](#); [27:29](#); [27:31](#); [27:33](#); [27:34](#); [27:35](#); [27:36](#); [27:38](#); [27:41](#); [Notes](#); [28:1](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:6](#); [28:14](#); [30:27](#); [30:30](#); [Notes](#); [31:55](#); [Notes](#); [32:26](#); [32:29](#); [33:11](#); [Notes](#); [35:9](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [39:5](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [47:7](#); [47:10](#); [Notes](#); [48:3](#); [48:9](#); [48:15](#); [48:16](#); [48:20](#); [49:25](#); [49:26](#); [49:28](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:10](#); [4:11](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [37:22](#); [37:26](#); [42:22](#))

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G1813

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:7](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:04
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:3](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:21](#); [4:5](#); [14:10](#); [17:3](#); [17:17](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#); [24:64](#); [33:4](#); [43:28](#); [44:14](#); [45:14](#); [46:29](#); [49:9](#); [49:17](#); [50:1](#); [50:18](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19](#); [14:18](#); [18:5](#); [21:14](#); [25:34](#); [27:17](#); [28:20](#); [31:54](#); [37:25](#); [39:6](#); [41:54](#); [43:25](#); [43:31](#); [43:32](#); [45:23](#); [47:12](#); [47:13](#); [47:15](#); [47:17](#); [49:20](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:12](#); [19:14](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:22](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2; 4:8; 4:9; 4:10; 4:11; 4:21; 9:5; 9:22; 9:25; 10:21; 10:25; 12:5; 13:8; 13:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 16:12; 19:7; 20:5; 20:13; 20:16; 22:20; 22:21; 22:23; 24:15; 24:27; 24:29; 24:48; 24:53; 24:55; 25:18; 25:26; 26:31; 27:6; 27:11; 27:23; 27:29; 27:30; 27:35; 27:37; 27:40; 27:41; 27:42; 27:43; 27:44; 27:45; 28:2; 28:5; 29:4; 29:10; 29:12; 29:15; 31:23; 31:25; 31:32; 31:37; 31:46; 31:54; 32:3; 32:6; 32:11; 32:13; 32:17; 33:3; 33:9; 34:11; 34:25; 35:1; 35:7; 36:6; 37:2; 37:4; 37:5; 37:8; 37:9; 37:10; 37:11; 37:12; 37:13; 37:14; 37:16; 37:17; 37:19; 37:23; 37:26; 37:27; 37:30; 38:1; 38:8; 38:9; 38:29; 38:30; 42:3; 42:4; 42:6; 42:7; 42:8; 42:13; 42:15; 42:16; 42:19; 42:20; 42:21; 42:28; 42:32;](#)

42:33; 42:34; 42:38; 43:3; 43:4; 43:5; 43:6; 43:7; 43:13; 43:14; 43:29; 43:30; 44:14; 44:19; 44:20; 44:23; 44:26; 44:33;
45:1; 45:3; 45:4; 45:12; 45:14; 45:15; 45:16; 45:17; 45:24; 46:31; 47:1; 47:2; 47:3; 47:5; 47:6; 47:11; 47:12; 48:6; 48:19;
48:22; 49:5; 49:8; 49:26; 50:8; 50:14; 50:15; 50:17; 50:18; 50:24)

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:2](#); [18:20](#); [34:19](#); [48:10](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:20](#); [22:3](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:15](#); [23:6](#); [23:11](#); [23:15](#); [23:19](#); [25:10](#); [47:29](#); [49:29](#); [49:31](#); [50:5](#); [50:14](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:5](#); [1:10](#); [2:19](#); [2:23](#); [11:9](#); [16:14](#); [17:5](#); [17:15](#); [19:22](#); [21:12](#); [21:31](#); [24:57](#); [25:30](#); [26:18](#); [27:36](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [31:47](#); [31:48](#); [33:17](#); [35:10](#); [35:18](#); [41:52](#); [46:33](#); [48:6](#); [50:11](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:10](#); [24:14](#); [24:20](#); [24:46](#); [24:63](#); [32:15](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:18](#); [9:22](#); [9:25](#); [9:26](#); [9:27](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [11:31](#); [12:5](#); [13:12](#); [15:21](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [23:2](#); [23:19](#); [24:3](#); [24:37](#); [28:1](#); [28:6](#); [28:8](#); [31:18](#); [33:18](#); [35:6](#); [36:2](#); [36:5](#); [36:6](#); [37:1](#); [38:2](#); [42:5](#); [42:7](#); [42:13](#); [42:29](#); [42:32](#); [44:8](#); [45:17](#); [45:25](#); [46:6](#); [46:10](#); [46:12](#); [46:31](#); [47:1](#); [47:4](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [48:3](#); [48:7](#); [49:30](#); [50:5](#); [50:11](#); [50:13](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:14](#); [34:29](#))

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:01
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:28](#); [11:31](#); [15:7](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [Genesis 46:29](#))

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:12](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [33:1](#); [33:5](#); [33:13](#); [33:14](#); [37:30](#); [38:9](#))

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [Genesis 17 General Notes](#); [17:10](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:23](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [21:4](#); [Notes](#); [34:22](#); [34:24](#))

clan

Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term "clan" might also be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#), Jethro, [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:19](#); [10:5](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#); [36:40](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Genesis 7 General Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [18:4](#); [19:2](#); [43:24](#); [43:31](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:29](#); [6:7](#); [27:42](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:12; 2:16; 3:11; 3:17; 4:16; 6:22; 7:5; 7:9; 7:16; 8:7; 8:18; 11:31; 12:5; 12:20; 14:8; 14:17; 15:5; 18:19; 19:6; 19:14; 19:16; 21:1; 21:4; 24:53; 24:63; 25:25; 26:5; 26:11; 27:3; 27:8; 28:1; 28:6; 28:10; 30:16; 31:33; 32:4; 32:17; 32:19; 34:1; 34:6; 34:26; 39:5; 39:12; 39:15; 40:14; 41:45; 41:46; 42:25; 42:28; 43:23; 43:31; 44:1; 44:28; 45:19; 47:10; 47:11; 48:12; 49:29; 50:2; 50:12; 50:16; 50:24; 50:25](#))

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:07
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:6](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:35](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:16](#); [18:33](#); [24:15](#); [24:19](#); [24:22](#); [24:45](#); [27:30](#); [43:2](#); [44:12](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:18; Notes](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [14:13](#); [Notes](#); [15:18](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:19](#); [17:21](#); [Notes](#); [21:27](#); [21:32](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [26:28](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [31:44](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:19](#); [20:13](#); [24:12](#); [24:14](#); [24:27](#); [24:49](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [39:21](#); [40:14](#); [Notes](#); [47:29](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:7](#); [26:14](#); [34:28](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:10](#))

cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- The literal meaning of this term is “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, [Babylon](#), [captive](#), Persia, Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 01:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:1](#); [40:13](#); [40:21](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#); [3:14](#); [3:17](#); [4:11](#); [5:29](#); [8:21](#); [9:25](#); [12:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [27:29](#); [49:7](#))

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:11](#); [15:18](#); [17:14](#); [21:27](#); [21:32](#); [26:28](#); [31:44](#); [41:36](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:13](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:5; 1:8; 1:10; 2:20; 3:9; 3:20; 4:17; 4:25; 4:26; 5:2; 5:3; 5:29; 12:8; 12:18; 13:4; 16:11; 16:13; 16:15; 17:19; 19:5; 19:37; 19:38; 20:8; 20:9; 21:3; 21:17; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 24:58; 25:25; 25:26; 26:9; 26:18; 26:20; 26:21; 26:22; 26:25; 26:33; 27:1; 27:42; 28:1; 28:19; 29:32; 29:33; 30:8; 30:11; 30:13; 30:18; 30:20; 30:21; 30:24; 31:4; 31:47; 31:54; 32:2; 32:30; 33:20; 35:7; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:18; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:29; 38:30; 39:14; 39:15; 39:18; 41:8; 41:14; 41:43; 41:45; 41:51; 45:1; 47:29; 48:16; 49:1](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:19](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:9](#); [32:30](#); [37:21](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:12](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:7](#); [21:14](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [36:24](#); [37:22](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:16; 2:17; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:6; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:22; 6:21; 9:4; 14:24; 18:8; 19:3; 24:33; 24:54; 25:34; 26:30; 27:4; 27:7; 27:10; 27:19; 27:25; 27:31; 27:33; 31:15; 31:38; 31:40; 31:46; 31:54; 32:32; 37:20; 37:33; 39:6; 40:17; 40:19; 41:4; 41:20; 43:16; 43:25; 45:18; 47:22; 49:27](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:23](#); [4:25](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:27](#); [5:31](#); [9:29](#); [11:28](#); [11:32](#); [18:25](#); [19:19](#); [20:4](#); [23:2](#); [25:8](#); [25:17](#); [25:32](#); [26:7](#); [27:42](#); [33:13](#); [34:26](#); [35:8](#); [35:19](#); [35:29](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [37:18](#); [37:26](#); [38:7](#); [38:10](#); [38:12](#); [44:9](#); [44:22](#); [44:31](#); [46:12](#); [47:29](#); [49:6](#); [50:26](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [1:28](#); [3:16](#); [4:7](#); [37:8](#); [45:26](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:16](#); [22:3](#); [22:5](#); [24:35](#); [30:43](#); [32:5](#); [34:28](#); [36:24](#); [42:26](#); [43:18](#); [44:3](#); [44:13](#); [45:23](#); [49:14](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:5](#); [37:6](#); [37:8](#); [37:9](#); [37:10](#); [37:20](#); [40:5](#); [40:8](#); [40:9](#); [41:1](#); [41:7](#); [41:8](#); [41:11](#); [41:12](#); [41:15](#); [41:25](#); [41:26](#); [42:9](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:15; 1:17; 1:20; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:28; 1:29; 1:30; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:17; 7:3; 7:4; 7:6; 7:10; 7:12; 7:14; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 8:1; 8:3; 8:7; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 8:17; 8:19; 8:22; 9:1; 9:2; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:14; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 10:11; 10:25; 11:1; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 11:31; 12:1; 12:5; 12:7; 13:6; 13:9; 13:15; 13:16; 14:19; 14:22; 15:7; 15:18; 17:8; 18:2; 18:18; 18:25; 19:1; 19:23; 19:28; 19:31; 20:1; 20:15; 21:23; 21:32; 22:2; 22:18; 23:7; 23:12; 23:13; 23:15; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:7; 24:52; 25:6; 26:3; 26:4; 27:28; 27:39; 27:46; 28:4; 28:12; 28:13; 28:14; 29:1; 31:3; 31:13; 31:18; 32:3; 33:3; 34:1; 34:2; 34:30; 35:12; 35:16; 36:6; 36:7; 36:20; 37:10; 38:9; 41:19; 41:29; 41:30; 41:33; 41:34; 41:36; 41:41; 41:43; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:47; 41:54; 41:55; 41:56; 41:57; 42:6; 42:9; 42:12; 42:29; 42:30; 42:33; 42:34; 43:11; 43:26; 44:11; 44:14; 45:6; 45:8; 45:17; 45:18; 45:20; 45:25; 45:26; 46:28; 47:6; 47:11; 47:13; 47:14; 47:20; 48:4; 48:7; 48:12; 48:16; 48:21; 49:15; 50:7; 50:11; 50:13; 50:24\)](#)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:14](#); [13:1](#); [13:10](#); [15:18](#); [16:3](#); [21:9](#); [21:21](#); [25:12](#); [25:18](#); [26:2](#); [37:25](#); [37:28](#); [37:36](#); [39:1](#); [39:2](#); [39:5](#); [40:1](#); [40:5](#); [41:8](#); [41:19](#); [41:29](#); [41:30](#); [41:33](#); [41:34](#); [41:36](#); [41:41](#); [41:43](#); [41:44](#); [41:45](#); [41:46](#); [41:48](#); [41:53](#); [41:54](#); [41:55](#); [41:56](#); [41:57](#); [42:1](#); [42:2](#); [42:3](#); [43:2](#); [43:15](#); [43:32](#); [45:4](#); [45:8](#); [45:9](#); [45:13](#); [45:18](#); [45:19](#); [45:20](#); [45:23](#); [45:25](#); [45:26](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [46:8](#); [46:20](#); [46:26](#); [46:27](#); [47:6](#); [47:11](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:20](#); [47:21](#); [47:26](#); [47:27](#); [47:28](#); [47:29](#); [47:30](#); [48:5](#); [50:7](#); [50:14](#); [50:22](#); [50:26](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:11](#); [19:4](#); [24:2](#); [25:8](#); [35:29](#); [43:27](#); [44:20](#); [50:7](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:52](#); [46:20](#); [48:1](#); [48:5](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:20](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Edom, Isaac, [Jacob](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:05
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 09:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **07:02** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **07:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:27](#); [25:28](#); [25:29](#); [25:30](#); [25:32](#); [25:34](#); [26:34](#); [27:1](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:15](#); [27:19](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [27:24](#); [27:32](#); [27:34](#); [27:38](#); [27:41](#); [27:42](#); [28:6](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [32:3](#); [32:6](#); [32:8](#); [32:11](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [33:1](#); [33:4](#); [33:9](#); [33:15](#); [33:16](#); [35:1](#); [35:29](#); [36:1](#); [36:2](#); [36:5](#); [36:6](#); [36:8](#); [36:9](#); [36:10](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:15](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:19](#); [36:40](#); [36:43](#))

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G128

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:13](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:14](#); [15:18](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:5](#); [8:21](#); [13:13](#); [Notes](#); [19:19](#); [24:50](#); [26:29](#); [28:8](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [37:2](#); [37:20](#); [37:33](#); [38:7](#); [39:9](#); [40:7](#); [41:3](#); [41:4](#); [41:21](#); [44:4](#); [44:29](#); [48:16](#); [50:15](#); [50:17](#); [50:20](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), lamb, [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:28](#); [22:13](#); [27:9](#); [29:3](#); [29:6](#); [29:7](#); [29:8](#); [29:9](#); [30:38](#); [30:39](#); [30:40](#); [30:41](#); [30:42](#); [31:8](#); [31:10](#); [31:12](#); [32:7](#); [33:13](#); [37:14](#); [38:17](#); [47:17](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:17](#); [31:45](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:7](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:2; 1:20; 1:29; 2:6; 4:5; 4:6; 4:14; 6:1; 6:7; 7:3; 7:4; 7:18; 7:23; 8:8; 8:9; 8:13; 9:23; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 11:28; 16:12; 17:3; 17:17; 18:16; 19:13; 19:21; 19:27; 19:28; 23:3; 23:19; 25:9; 25:18; 27:30; 30:40; 31:2; 31:5; 31:21; 32:20; 32:21; 32:30; 33:10; 33:18; 38:15; 40:7; 41:56; 43:3; 43:5; 43:31; 43:34; 44:23; 44:26; 44:29; 46:30; 48:11; 49:30; 50:1; 50:13](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Genesis 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), disobey, [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:48](#); [Notes](#); [45:26](#))

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:18](#); [10:32](#); [12:3](#); [24:38](#); [24:40](#); [24:41](#); [28:14](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:10](#); [26:1](#); [41:27](#); [41:30](#); [41:36](#); [41:54](#); [45:11](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:7](#); [6:8](#); [Notes](#); [12:13](#); [12:16](#); [18:3](#); [19:19](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [30:27](#); [32:5](#); [32:12](#); [Notes](#); [33:8](#); [33:10](#); [33:15](#); [34:11](#); [Notes](#); [39:4](#); [39:21](#); [40:14](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [47:25](#); [47:29](#); [50:4](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:10](#); [15:1](#); [18:15](#); [19:30](#); [Notes](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [21:17](#); [26:7](#); [26:24](#); [28:17](#); [31:31](#); [32:7](#); [Notes](#); [35:17](#); [42:18](#); [42:35](#); [43:18](#); [43:23](#); [46:3](#); [50:19](#); [50:21](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:21](#); [18:14](#); [19:3](#); [21:2](#); [21:8](#); [26:30](#); [29:22](#); [40:20](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:7](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:17](#); [19:24](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:15](#); [22:21](#); [25:13](#); [27:19](#); [27:32](#); [35:23](#); [36:15](#); [38:6](#); [38:7](#); [46:8](#); [49:3](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:21](#); [6:3](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:17](#); [6:19](#); [7:16](#); [7:21](#); [8:17](#); [9:4](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [17:11](#); [17:14](#); [17:23](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [37:27](#); [40:19](#); [41:2](#); [41:3](#); [41:18](#); [41:19](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2](#); [4:4](#); [12:16](#); [13:5](#); [20:14](#); [21:27](#); [24:35](#); [26:14](#); [29:2](#); [29:10](#); [30:31](#); [30:32](#); [30:36](#); [30:40](#); [30:43](#); [31:4](#); [31:19](#); [31:38](#); [31:43](#); [32:5](#); [32:16](#); [34:28](#); [37:12](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#); [45:10](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [47:1](#); [47:3](#); [50:8](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

(Go back to: [Genesis 25 General Notes](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:24](#); [24:27](#); [28:15](#); [39:13](#); [50:8](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:29](#); [30:2](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Genesis 12 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:11](#); [35:26](#); [46:16](#); [49:19](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:1](#); [22:17](#); [23:10](#); [23:18](#); [24:60](#); [28:17](#); [34:20](#); [34:24](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:4](#); [5:1](#); [6:9](#); [9:12](#); [10:1](#); [11:10](#); [11:27](#); [15:16](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [25:12](#); [25:19](#); [36:1](#); [36:9](#); [37:2](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, [Reuben](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:21](#); [31:23](#); [31:25](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [Genesis 39:20](#); [40:3](#); [40:5](#); [42:16](#); [42:19](#); [49:11](#))

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#) , Ham, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- Deuteronomy 07:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [15:21](#))

glean, gleanings

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), [harvest](#), Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:46](#); [47:14](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Genesis 40 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [45:13](#); [49:6](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:27; 1:28; 1:29; 1:31; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:3; 3:5; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:25; 5:1; 5:22; 5:24; 6:2; 6:4; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:22; 7:9; 7:16; 8:1; 8:15; 9:1; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:16; 9:17; 9:26; 9:27; 17:3; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:15; 17:18; 17:19; 17:22; 17:23; 19:29; 20:3; 20:6; 20:11; 20:13; 20:17; 21:2; 21:4; 21:6; 21:12; 21:17; 21:19; 21:20; 21:22; 21:23; 22:3; 22:8; 22:9; 22:12; 23:6; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:27; 24:42; 24:48; 25:11; 26:24; 27:20; 27:28; 28:4; 28:12; 28:13; 28:17; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 30:2; 30:6; 30:8; 30:17; 30:18; 30:20; 30:22; 30:23; 31:5; 31:7; 31:9; 31:11; 31:13; 31:16; 31:24; 31:29; 31:30; 31:32; 31:42; 31:50; 31:53; 32:1; 32:2; 32:9; 32:28; 32:30; 33:5; 33:10; 33:11; 33:20; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:5; 35:7; 35:9; 35:10; 35:11; 35:13; 35:15; 39:9; 40:8; 41:16; 41:25; 41:28; 41:32; 41:38; 41:39; 41:51; 41:52; 42:18; 42:28; 43:23; 43:29; 44:16; 45:5; 45:7; 45:8; 45:9; 46:1; 46:2; 46:3; 48:9; 48:11; 48:15; 48:20; 48:21; 50:17; 50:19; 50:20; 50:24; 50:25\)](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [Genesis 24 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), honor, obey, [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: [Genesis 44 General Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:12](#); [13:2](#); [24:22](#); [24:35](#); [24:53](#); [41:42](#); [44:8](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:4](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:18](#); [1:21](#); [1:25](#); [1:31](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:22](#); [6:2](#); [15:15](#); [16:6](#); [24:10](#); [24:16](#); [24:50](#); [25:8](#); [26:7](#); [26:29](#); [27:9](#); [29:19](#); [30:20](#); [40:16](#); [41:24](#); [41:26](#); [41:35](#); [44:4](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [49:15](#); [50:20](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Genesis 36 General Notes](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering , [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [32:13](#); [32:18](#); [32:21](#); [33:10](#); [43:11](#); [43:15](#); [43:25](#); [43:26](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:28](#); [27:37](#); [42:1](#); [42:2](#); [42:19](#); [42:26](#); [44:2](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:10](#); [49:11](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:9](#); [23:20](#); [49:30](#); [50:13](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:22](#); [4:11](#); [5:29](#); [8:9](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [14:20](#); [14:22](#); [16:6](#); [16:9](#); [16:12](#); [19:10](#); [19:16](#); [20:5](#); [21:18](#); [21:30](#); [22:6](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [24:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:10](#); [24:18](#); [24:22](#); [24:30](#); [24:47](#); [25:26](#); [27:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [30:35](#); [31:29](#); [31:39](#); [31:42](#); [32:11](#); [32:13](#); [32:16](#); [32:25](#); [32:32](#); [33:10](#); [33:19](#); [34:21](#); [35:4](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [37:27](#); [38:18](#); [38:20](#); [38:28](#); [38:29](#); [38:30](#); [39:1](#); [39:3](#); [39:4](#); [39:6](#); [39:8](#); [39:12](#); [39:13](#); [39:22](#); [39:23](#); [40:11](#); [40:13](#); [40:21](#); [41:35](#); [41:42](#); [41:44](#); [42:37](#); [43:9](#); [43:12](#); [43:15](#); [43:21](#); [43:22](#); [43:26](#); [43:34](#); [44:16](#); [44:17](#); [46:4](#); [47:29](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:22](#); [49:8](#); [49:24](#))

hang, hung

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a "tree"), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by "hanging" in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:19](#); [40:22](#); [41:13](#))

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:27](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:22](#); [30:14](#); [45:6](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:10](#); [3:15](#); [8:5](#); [11:4](#); [28:12](#); [28:18](#); [40:13](#); [40:16](#); [40:17](#); [40:19](#); [40:20](#); [47:31](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:5; 6:6; 8:21; 9:4; 17:17; 18:5; 20:5; 20:6; 24:45; 27:41; 31:20; 31:26; 34:3; 42:28; 44:30; 45:26; 50:21](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:30](#); [2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [6:7](#); [6:17](#); [Notes](#); [7:3](#); [7:11](#); [7:19](#); [7:23](#); [8:2](#); [9:2](#); [11:4](#); [Notes](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [15:5](#); [19:24](#); [21:17](#); [22:11](#); [22:15](#); [22:17](#); [24:3](#); [24:7](#); [26:4](#); [27:28](#); [27:39](#); [28:12](#); [28:17](#); [49:25](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:20](#); [23:10](#); [25:9](#); [26:34](#); [36:2](#); [49:29](#); [49:30](#); [50:13](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:02
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:17](#); [34:2](#); [36:2](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Genesis 2 General Notes](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:61](#); [41:43](#); [47:17](#); [49:17](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, [descendant](#), house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:14](#); [7:1](#); [12:15](#); [12:17](#); [14:14](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [17:27](#); [18:19](#); [19:2](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [20:13](#); [20:18](#); [24:2](#); [24:7](#); [24:23](#); [24:27](#); [24:28](#); [24:31](#); [24:32](#); [24:38](#); [28:2](#); [28:17](#); [28:21](#); [28:22](#); [29:13](#); [30:30](#); [31:30](#); [31:37](#); [33:17](#); [34:19](#); [34:26](#); [34:30](#); [35:2](#); [36:6](#); [38:11](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:11](#); [39:14](#); [39:16](#); [39:20](#); [39:21](#); [39:22](#); [39:23](#); [40:3](#); [40:7](#); [40:14](#); [41:10](#); [41:40](#); [41:51](#); [42:19](#); [42:33](#); [43:16](#); [43:17](#); [43:18](#); [43:19](#); [43:24](#); [43:26](#); [44:1](#); [44:4](#); [44:8](#); [44:14](#); [45:2](#); [45:8](#); [45:11](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [46:27](#); [46:31](#); [47:12](#); [47:14](#); [50:4](#); [50:7](#); [50:8](#); [50:22](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(**Go back to:** [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [22:17](#); [24:60](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [31:14](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [48:6](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:13](#); [15:16](#); [44:16](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:41](#); [44:10](#))

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, teach)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:6](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:26](#); [25:28](#); [25:29](#); [25:30](#); [25:31](#); [25:33](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:15](#); [27:17](#); [27:19](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [27:30](#); [27:36](#); [27:41](#); [27:46](#); [28:1](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:7](#); [28:10](#); [28:16](#); [28:18](#); [28:20](#); [29:1](#); [29:4](#); [29:10](#); [29:11](#); [29:12](#); [29:13](#); [29:18](#); [29:20](#); [29:21](#); [29:28](#); [30:1](#); [30:2](#); [30:4](#); [30:16](#); [30:25](#); [30:31](#); [30:36](#); [30:37](#); [30:40](#); [30:41](#); [31:1](#); [31:2](#); [31:3](#); [31:4](#); [31:11](#); [31:17](#); [31:20](#); [31:22](#); [31:24](#); [31:25](#); [31:29](#); [31:31](#); [31:32](#); [31:33](#); [31:36](#); [31:43](#); [31:45](#); [31:46](#); [31:53](#); [31:54](#); [32:2](#); [32:3](#); [32:4](#); [32:6](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#); [32:20](#); [32:24](#); [32:25](#); [32:27](#); [32:28](#); [32:29](#); [32:30](#); [32:32](#); [33:1](#); [33:10](#); [33:18](#); [34:3](#); [34:5](#); [34:6](#); [34:7](#); [34:13](#); [34:19](#); [34:25](#); [34:27](#); [34:30](#); [35:1](#); [35:2](#); [35:4](#); [35:5](#); [35:6](#); [35:9](#); [35:10](#); [35:14](#); [35:15](#); [35:20](#); [35:22](#); [35:23](#); [35:26](#); [35:27](#);

36:6; 37:1; 37:2; 37:34; 42:1; 42:4; 42:29; 42:36; 45:25; 45:27; 46:2; 46:5; 46:6; 46:8; 46:19; 46:26; 46:27; 47:7; 47:8;
47:9; 47:10; 47:28; 48:3; 49:1; 49:2; 49:24; 49:33)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Genesis 32:28; 32:32; 33:20; 34:7; 35:10; 35:21; 35:22; 36:31; 37:13; 42:5; 43:6; 43:8; 43:11; 45:21; 45:28; 46:1; 46:2; 46:5; 46:8; 46:29; 46:30; 47:27; 47:29; 47:31; 48:2; 48:8; 48:10; 48:11; 48:13; 48:14; 48:20; 48:21; 49:2; 49:7; 49:16; 49:24; 49:28; 50:2; 50:25](#))

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

(Go back to: [Genesis 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [15:21](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:10](#); [13:11](#); [32:10](#); [50:10](#); [50:11](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:24](#); [30:25](#); [33:2](#); [33:7](#); [35:24](#); [37:2](#); [37:3](#); [37:5](#); [37:13](#); [37:17](#); [37:23](#); [37:28](#); [37:29](#); [37:31](#); [37:33](#); [39:2](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [39:7](#); [39:10](#); [39:20](#); [39:21](#); [39:22](#); [40:3](#); [40:4](#); [40:6](#); [40:8](#); [40:12](#); [40:16](#); [40:18](#); [40:22](#); [40:23](#); [41:14](#); [41:15](#); [41:16](#); [41:17](#); [41:25](#); [41:39](#); [41:41](#); [41:42](#); [41:44](#); [41:45](#); [41:46](#); [41:49](#); [41:51](#); [41:54](#); [41:55](#); [41:56](#); [41:57](#); [42:3](#); [42:4](#); [42:6](#); [42:7](#); [42:8](#); [42:9](#); [42:14](#); [42:18](#); [42:23](#); [42:25](#); [42:36](#); [43:15](#); [43:16](#); [43:17](#); [43:18](#); [43:19](#); [43:24](#); [43:25](#); [43:26](#); [43:30](#); [44:2](#); [44:14](#); [44:15](#); [45:1](#); [45:3](#); [45:4](#); [45:9](#); [45:16](#); [45:17](#); [45:21](#); [45:26](#); [45:27](#); [45:28](#); [46:19](#); [46:27](#); [46:28](#); [46:29](#); [46:30](#); [46:31](#); [47:1](#); [47:5](#); [47:7](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:16](#); [47:17](#); [47:20](#); [47:23](#); [47:26](#); [48:2](#); [48:3](#); [48:8](#); [48:9](#); [48:11](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:15](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#); [48:21](#); [49:22](#); [49:26](#); [50:1](#); [50:2](#); [50:4](#); [50:7](#); [50:8](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#); [50:16](#); [50:17](#); [50:19](#); [50:22](#); [50:23](#); [50:24](#); [50:25](#); [50:26](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:27](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:23](#); [38:24](#); [49:10](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:35](#); [37:26](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:6](#); [38:7](#); [38:8](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [38:20](#); [38:22](#); [38:23](#); [38:24](#); [38:26](#); [43:3](#); [43:8](#); [44:14](#); [44:16](#); [44:18](#); [46:12](#); [46:28](#); [49:8](#); [49:9](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Genesis 11 General Notes](#); [18:25](#); [19:9](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:5](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [17:16](#); [20:2](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [36:31](#); [39:20](#); [40:1](#); [40:5](#); [41:46](#); [49:20](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [20:9](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:24; 2:10; 3:5; 3:7; 4:1; 4:9; 4:17; 4:25; 8:7; 8:11; 8:16; 8:17; 8:19; 9:10; 9:24; 10:11; 10:14; 12:11; 14:18; 15:4; 15:7; 15:8; 15:13; 15:14; 17:6; 18:19; 18:21; 19:5; 19:8; 19:12; 19:14; 19:23; 19:33; 19:35; 20:6; 20:7; 21:26; 22:12; 24:5; 24:11; 24:13; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 24:45; 24:50; 25:26; 25:27; 27:2; 27:30; 28:16; 29:5; 30:26; 30:29; 31:6;](#)

31:13; 31:32; 33:13; 34:24; 35:11; 38:9; 38:16; 38:24; 38:25; 38:28; 38:29; 38:30; 39:6; 39:8; 41:21; 41:31; 41:39; 42:15;
42:23; 42:33; 42:34; 43:7; 43:22; 44:4; 44:15; 44:27; 45:1; 46:26; 47:6; 48:19)

Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:34](#); [34:30](#); [46:11](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:20; 1:21; 1:24; 1:28; 1:30; 2:7; 2:19; 3:20; 5:3; 5:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:10; 5:12; 5:13; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 5:19; 5:21; 5:25; 5:26; 5:28; 5:30; 6:19; 8:21; Notes; 9:3; 9:5; 9:10; 9:12; 9:15; 9:16; 9:28; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 12:12; 12:13; 17:18; 18:10; 18:14; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:32; 19:34; 20:7; 23:8; 25:6; 26:19; 27:4; 27:19; 27:25; 27:31; 27:40; 31:32; 32:30; 34:3; 34:8; 35:18; 36:6; 37:21; 42:2; 42:15; 42:16; 42:18; 42:21; 43:7; 43:8; 43:27; 43:28; 45:3; 45:26; 45:27; 45:28; 46:15; 46:18; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 46:30; 47:19; 47:25; 47:28; 49:6; 50:22](#))

light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:15](#); [1:17](#))

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:9](#))

livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), goat, [horse](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [7:21](#); [8:17](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:2; 15:8; 18:3; 18:27; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 19:2; 19:18; 20:4; 23:6; 23:11; 23:15; 24:9; 24:10; 24:12; 24:14; 24:18; 24:27; 24:35; 24:36; 24:37; 24:39; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:49; 24:51; 24:65; 31:35; 33:8; 33:13; 33:14; 33:15; 39:2; 39:3; 39:7; 39:8; 39:16; 39:19; 39:20; 40:7; 42:10; 42:30; 42:33; 43:20; 44:5; 44:7; 44:8; 44:18; 44:19; 44:20; 44:22; 44:24; 47:18; 47:25](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:2](#); [24:67](#); [25:28](#); [27:4](#); [27:9](#); [27:14](#); [29:18](#); [29:30](#); [29:32](#); [Notes](#); [34:3](#); [37:3](#); [37:4](#); [44:20](#))

Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:06
- Acts 02:09
- Daniel 05:28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:2](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [21:17](#); [22:11](#); [22:15](#); [24:7](#); [24:40](#); [28:12](#); [31:11](#); [32:1](#); [32:3](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), miracle, power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:4](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [49:3](#); [49:7](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendants of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:37](#); [36:35](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:34](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:20](#); [4:17](#); [4:19](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:29](#); [10:25](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [13:4](#); [16:11](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:5](#); [17:15](#); [17:19](#); [19:22](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [21:3](#); [21:33](#); [22:14](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:22](#); [26:25](#); [26:33](#); [27:36](#); [28:19](#); [29:16](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [30:8](#); [30:11](#); [30:13](#); [30:18](#); [30:20](#); [30:21](#); [30:24](#); [32:2](#); [32:27](#); [32:28](#); [32:29](#); [32:30](#); [33:17](#); [35:8](#); [35:10](#); [35:15](#); [35:18](#); [36:10](#); [36:40](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:29](#); [38:30](#); [41:45](#); [41:51](#); [41:52](#); [46:8](#); [48:6](#); [48:16](#); [50:11](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:5](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [12:2](#); [15:14](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:16](#); [17:20](#); [18:18](#); [21:13](#); [21:18](#); [22:18](#); [25:23](#); [26:4](#); [35:11](#); [46:3](#); [48:19](#))

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Beersheba, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:9](#); [13:1](#); [20:1](#); [24:62](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:5](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:31](#); [22:16](#); [24:3](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:37](#); [25:33](#); [26:3](#); [26:31](#); [31:53](#); [47:31](#); [50:5](#); [50:6](#); [50:24](#); [50:25](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:11](#); [28:18](#); [35:14](#))

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), enslave, [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [Genesis 32:7](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, law, ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:13](#))

oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:34](#))

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:28](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:6](#); [37:14](#); [41:16](#); [43:23](#); [43:28](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Genesis 37 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:6](#); [14:16](#); [17:16](#); [19:4](#); [23:7](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:13](#); [26:10](#); [26:11](#); [27:29](#); [28:3](#); [32:7](#); [33:15](#); [34:16](#); [34:22](#); [35:6](#); [41:40](#); [41:55](#); [42:6](#); [47:21](#); [47:23](#); [48:4](#); [48:19](#); [49:10](#); [49:16](#); [50:20](#))

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan, false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:7](#); [15:20](#))

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, [oppress](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:5; 44:4](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:14](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [26:14](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:7](#); [28:4](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:15](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:10; 4:9; 7:4; 15:1; 15:14; 16:5; 16:8; 20:6; 20:7; 20:17; 21:24; 21:26; 23:4; 24:3; 24:13; 24:24; 24:27; 24:34; 24:37; 24:42; 24:43; 25:22; 25:30; 25:32; 26:24; 27:19; 28:15; 28:20; 29:33; 30:1; 30:2; 30:3; 30:30; 31:5; 31:13; 31:38; 31:39; 32:11; 37:16; 38:17; 38:25; 43:9; 46:3; 46:4; 47:30; 48:21; 50:5; 50:17; 50:21; 50:24](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:1](#); [12:6](#); [31:21](#); [32:21](#); [32:22](#); [32:23](#); [37:28](#); [41:46](#); [50:4](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Genesis 14 General Notes](#); [14:18](#); [41:45](#); [41:50](#); [46:20](#); [47:22](#); [47:26](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, [Satan](#), Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:15](#); [21:22](#); [21:32](#); [26:26](#); [37:36](#); [39:1](#); [39:21](#); [39:22](#); [39:23](#); [40:2](#); [40:3](#); [40:4](#); [40:9](#); [40:16](#); [40:20](#); [40:21](#); [40:22](#); [40:23](#); [41:9](#); [41:10](#); [47:6](#))

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:20](#); [41:54](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Genesis 9 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 47 General Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:7](#); [Notes](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:40](#); [24:42](#); [24:56](#); [34:29](#); [39:2](#); [39:3](#); [39:23](#); [47:6](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:24](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:2](#); [19:1](#); [22:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:12](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#); [24:52](#); [27:29](#); [33:3](#); [33:6](#); [33:7](#); [37:7](#); [37:9](#); [42:6](#); [43:26](#); [43:28](#); [47:31](#); [48:12](#); [49:8](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:13](#); [26:13](#); [38:11](#); [38:14](#); [41:40](#); [48:19](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:12](#); [22:16](#); [39:9](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:2](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:4](#))

rebuke

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:20](#); [26:21](#); [31:36](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:1](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [25:10](#); [47:19](#); [47:22](#); [47:23](#); [48:16](#); [49:30](#); [50:13](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [Genesis 36:32](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: [Genesis 45:7](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:4](#); [49:15](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19](#); [8:12](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [15:16](#); [16:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:33](#); [20:7](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:8](#); [27:44](#); [27:45](#); [30:31](#); [31:3](#); [32:9](#); [37:22](#); [41:13](#); [42:28](#); [42:37](#); [43:2](#); [43:10](#); [43:12](#); [43:13](#); [44:8](#); [44:25](#); [50:15](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:3](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [14:7](#); [14:16](#); [20:14](#); [21:32](#); [22:5](#); [22:19](#); [26:18](#); [28:15](#); [28:21](#); [29:3](#); [31:13](#); [31:55](#); [32:6](#); [33:16](#); [37:14](#); [37:29](#); [37:30](#); [38:22](#); [40:13](#); [40:21](#); [42:24](#); [43:21](#); [44:13](#); [48:21](#); [50:5](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#))

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:32](#); [30:14](#); [35:22](#); [35:23](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [37:29](#); [42:22](#); [42:37](#); [46:8](#); [46:9](#); [49:3](#))

reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:15](#); [31:7](#); [31:41](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, law, obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:9](#); [7:1](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [20:4](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:11](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, humble, [mourn](#), repent, [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:34](#); [42:25](#); [42:27](#); [42:35](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:54](#); [46:1](#))

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:23](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), kingdom of God, [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** “When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering.”
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:17](#); [19:20](#); [19:22](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:29](#); [3:15](#); [4:25](#); [7:3](#); [8:22](#); [9:9](#); [13:16](#); [15:3](#); [15:5](#); [15:13](#); [16:10](#); [17:7](#); [17:10](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [22:17](#); [24:60](#); [26:4](#); [26:24](#); [28:14](#); [32:12](#); [38:8](#); [38:9](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [47:19](#); [47:23](#); [48:11](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:5](#); [25:22](#); [31:39](#); [37:15](#); [37:16](#); [42:22](#); [43:9](#); [43:30](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2; 4:12; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 12:16; 14:4; 14:15; 14:24; 15:14; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:8; 18:3; 18:5; 18:7; 19:2; 19:19; 20:8; 20:14; 21:12; 21:17; 21:18; 21:19; 21:20; 21:25; 22:3; 22:5; 22:12; 22:19; 24:2; 24:5; 24:9; 24:10; 24:14; 24:17; 24:34; 24:35; 24:52; 24:53; 24:59; 24:61; 24:65; 24:66; 25:12; 25:23; 25:27; 26:15; 26:19; 26:24; 26:25; 26:32; 27:29; 27:37; 27:40; 29:18; 29:24; 29:25; 29:27; 29:29; 30:3; 30:4; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:18; 30:26; 30:29; 30:43; 31:6; 31:41; 32:4; 32:5; 32:10; 32:16; 32:18; 32:20; 32:22; 33:1; 33:2; 33:5; 33:6; 33:14; 34:19; 35:25; 35:26; 37:2; 39:17; 39:19; 40:20; 41:10; 41:12; 41:37; 41:38; 42:10; 42:11; 42:13; 43:8; 43:18; 43:28; 44:7; 44:9; 44:10; 44:16; 44:17; 44:18; 44:19; 44:21; 44:22; 44:23; 44:24; 44:27; 44:30; 44:31; 44:32; 44:33; 45:16; 46:34; 47:3; 47:4; 47:19; 47:25; 48:16; 49:15; 50:2; 50:7; 50:17; 50:18](#))

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [2:3](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), [false god](#), humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:25](#); [30:23](#); [34:7](#); [34:14](#))

Shinar

Facts:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Babel, [Babylon](#), [Chaldea](#), Mesopotamia, patriarchs, Ur)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 14:01
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Zechariah 05:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8152

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [11:2](#); [14:1](#); [14:9](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
 - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:15](#); [9:12](#); [9:17](#); [Notes](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:2](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [17:27](#); [20:16](#); [23:9](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [24:35](#); [24:53](#); [31:15](#); [37:28](#); [42:25](#); [42:27](#); [42:28](#); [42:35](#); [43:12](#); [43:15](#); [43:18](#); [43:21](#); [43:22](#); [43:23](#); [44:1](#); [44:2](#); [44:8](#); [45:22](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:16](#); [47:18](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 3 General Notes](#); [4:7](#); [Notes](#); [18:20](#); [Notes](#); [20:9](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [31:36](#); [31:39](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [39:9](#); [40:1](#); [Notes](#); [42:22](#); [43:9](#); [44:32](#); [Notes](#); [50:17](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:31](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [5:4](#); [5:7](#); [5:10](#); [5:13](#); [5:16](#); [5:19](#); [5:22](#); [5:26](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [5:32](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:10](#); [6:18](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [9:1](#); [9:8](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:24](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:20](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:23](#); [10:25](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [11:5](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [11:25](#); [11:31](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [14:12](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:1](#); [17:12](#); [17:16](#); [17:19](#); [17:23](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [19:12](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:16](#); [22:20](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:15](#); [24:24](#); [24:36](#); [24:37](#); [24:38](#); [24:40](#); [24:44](#); [24:47](#); [24:48](#); [24:51](#); [25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:6](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:19](#); [25:20](#); [25:22](#); [25:26](#); [26:34](#); [27:1](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:8](#); [27:13](#); [27:15](#); [27:17](#); [27:18](#); [27:20](#); [27:21](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#); [27:26](#); [27:27](#); [27:29](#); [27:31](#); [27:32](#); [27:37](#); [27:42](#); [27:43](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [29:1](#); [29:5](#); [29:12](#); [29:13](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:1](#); [30:5](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:10](#); [30:12](#); [30:14](#); [30:15](#); [30:16](#); [30:17](#); [30:19](#); [30:20](#); [30:23](#); [30:24](#); [30:35](#); [31:1](#); [31:16](#); [31:17](#); [31:28](#); [31:43](#); [31:55](#); [32:11](#); [32:15](#); [32:32](#); [33:19](#); [34:2](#); [34:5](#); [34:7](#); [34:8](#); [34:13](#); [34:18](#); [34:20](#); [34:24](#); [34:25](#); [34:26](#); [34:27](#); [35:5](#); [35:17](#); [35:22](#); [35:23](#); [35:24](#); [35:25](#); [35:26](#); [35:29](#); [36:5](#); [36:6](#); [36:10](#); [36:11](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:15](#); [36:16](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:19](#); [36:20](#); [36:21](#); [36:22](#); [36:23](#); [36:24](#); [36:25](#); [36:26](#); [36:27](#); [36:28](#); [36:31](#); [36:32](#); [36:33](#); [36:35](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [37:2](#); [37:3](#); [37:32](#); [37:33](#); [37:34](#); [37:35](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:11](#); [38:26](#); [41:46](#); [41:50](#); [42:1](#); [42:5](#); [42:11](#); [42:13](#); [42:32](#); [42:37](#); [42:38](#); [43:29](#); [45:9](#); [45:10](#); [45:21](#); [45:28](#); [46:5](#); [46:7](#); [46:8](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#); [46:11](#); [46:12](#); [46:13](#); [46:14](#); [46:15](#); [46:16](#); [46:17](#); [46:18](#); [46:19](#); [46:21](#); [46:22](#); [46:23](#); [46:24](#); [46:25](#); [46:26](#); [46:27](#); [47:29](#); [48:1](#); [48:2](#); [48:5](#); [48:8](#); [48:9](#); [48:19](#); [49:1](#); [49:2](#); [49:8](#); [49:9](#); [49:11](#); [49:22](#); [49:32](#); [49:33](#); [50:12](#); [50:13](#); [50:23](#); [50:25](#); [50:26](#))

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [7:15](#); [7:22](#); [8:1](#); [26:35](#); [41:8](#); [41:38](#); [45:27](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, law, [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:19](#); [47:22](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:12](#); [31:6](#); [41:57](#); [47:20](#); [49:3](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:40](#); [31:26](#); [34:25](#); [34:26](#); [48:22](#))

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, David, [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:04
- 2 Samuel 13:02
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:6](#); [38:11](#); [38:24](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, [Babylon](#), Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:15](#); [31:14](#); [31:41](#); [34:29](#); [39:2](#); [39:5](#); [39:8](#); [39:9](#); [39:11](#); [39:20](#); [39:22](#); [40:5](#); [42:19](#); [47:24](#))

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: [Genesis 22 General Notes](#))

terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

Definition:

The term "terror" refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To "terrify" someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A "terror" is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as "terrifying." This term could be translated as, "fear-causing" or "terror-producing."
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The "terror of Yahweh" could be translated as "the terrifying presence of Yahweh" or "the dreaded judgment of Yahweh" or "when Yahweh causes great fear."
- Ways to translate "terror" could also include "extreme fear" or "deep dread."

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:09
- Mark 06:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:12](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Genesis 22 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:48](#); [31:50](#); [31:52](#); [41:16](#); [43:3](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, [grain](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [Genesis 50:10](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:21](#))

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Genesis 45:24](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:10](#); [49:16](#); [49:28](#))

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:30](#); [35:3](#); [42:21](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), obey, [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:27](#); [24:49](#); [47:29](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Genesis 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:33](#); [41:39](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:9](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:20](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:16](#))

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:12](#); [22:18](#); [26:5](#); [27:8](#); [27:13](#); [27:43](#); [30:6](#); [39:14](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:8](#); [3:14](#); [6:9](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [12:1](#); [12:9](#); [13:17](#); [14:24](#); [15:2](#); [16:8](#); [17:1](#); [18:16](#); [19:32](#); [22:5](#); [24:4](#); [24:38](#); [24:39](#); [24:40](#); [24:42](#); [24:55](#); [24:58](#); [25:32](#); [26:13](#); [26:16](#); [26:26](#); [27:9](#); [28:2](#); [28:15](#); [28:20](#); [31:19](#); [31:30](#); [31:44](#); [32:1](#); [32:6](#); [32:17](#); [35:3](#); [37:13](#); [37:14](#); [37:17](#); [37:20](#); [37:25](#); [37:27](#); [41:55](#); [42:19](#); [42:38](#); [45:28](#); [48:15](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:9](#); [17:10](#); [24:6](#); [30:31](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [37:11](#); [42:17](#); [42:19](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:14](#); [41:35](#); [41:49](#); [42:3](#); [42:25](#); [45:23](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:21](#); [14:18](#); [19:32](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [27:25](#); [49:11](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:8](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Genesis 34 General Notes](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:44](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: [Genesis 2 General Notes](#); 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:6; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:26; 5:29; 6:3; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 7:1; 7:5; 7:16; 8:20; 8:21; 9:26; 10:9; 11:5; 11:6; 11:8; 11:9; 12:1; 12:4; 12:7; 12:8; 12:17; 13:4; 13:10; 13:13; 13:14; 13:18; 14:22; 15:1; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:18; 16:2; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:13; 17:1; 18:1; 18:13; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:26; 18:33; 19:13; 19:14; 19:16; 19:24; 19:27; 20:18; 21:1; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 24:1; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:21; 24:26; 24:27; 24:31; 24:35; 24:40; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:51; 24:52; 24:56; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 26:2; 26:12; 26:22; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 27:7; 27:20; 27:27; 28:13; 28:16; 28:21; 29:31; 29:32; 29:33; 29:35; 30:24; 30:27; 30:30; 31:3; 31:49; 32:9; 38:7; 38:10; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:21; 39:23; 49:18)

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:14](#); [30:1](#); [37:11](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community